

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00058784 0

HANDBOUND  
AT THE



UNIVERSITY OF









THE  
COMPLETE WORKS  
IN  
VERSE AND PROSE  
OF  
SAMUEL DANIEL.  
VOL. IV.



THE  
COMPLETE WORKS  
IN  
VERSE AND PROSE  
OF  
SAMUEL DANIEL.

*EDITED, WITH MEMORIAL-INTRODUCTION AND A GLOSSARIAL  
INDEX EMBRACING NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.*

BY THE  
REV. ALEXANDER B. GROSART,  
D.D., LL.D. (EDIN.), F.S.A. (SCOT.).

*IN FIVE VOLUMES.*

VOL. IV.

MEMORIAL-INTRODUCTION II.—CRITICAL.

I. PREFACE AND EPISTLES BEFORE PAULUS IOVIUS. 1585.

II. A DEFENCE OF RYME. 1607.

III. THE COLLECTION OF THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND.  
1612—1618.

EPISTLES-DEDICATORY : CERTAINE ADVERTISEMENTS TO THE READER.

EARLY HISTORY.—WILLIAM I. TO HENRY II.

PRINTED FOR PRIVATE CIRCULATION ONLY.

1896.

150 copies only.]

37990  
24/9/9

COMPLETE WORKS

VOLUME 1

SAMUEL JOHNSON

PR

2241

A12

V.4

# CONTENTS,

---

	PAGE
MEMORIAL-INTRODUCTION II.—CRITICAL -	vii-lvii
I. PREFACE AND EPISTLES BEFORE PAULUS	
IOIUS. 1585* - - - - -	1-27
II. A DEFENCE OF RYME. 1607 - - - - -	29-67
III. THE COLLECTION OF THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND. 1612—1617-18 :—	
EPISTLES-DEDICATORY TO VISCOUNT ROCHESTER AND QUEEN ANNE - - - - -	75-80
CERTAINE ADVERTISEMENTS TO THE READER.	81-83
FROM WILLIAM I. TO HENRY II. - - - - -	85-299

\* In relation to Paulus Iouius, a little gathering of Devises (often lacking in the vol. of 1585) has since been found, and is reproduced at close of Vol. V.



## MEMORIAL-INTRODUCTION II.— CRITICAL.

---

I KNOW not that I can better begin the fulfilment of my promise of a second part of my 'Memorial-Introduction' (I. Biographical; II. Critical),\* than by putting in the forefront selected and representative estimates of our Worthy from contemporaries and on to the present day. Having done this, I shall return upon certain things in most of them; so that between these criticisms and our commentary, I have a hope of vindicating and restoring to him his original high place in our great Elizabethan-Jacobean literature.

I shall follow the chronological order as closely as may be, only giving the lead to—

I. EDMUND SPENSER (1594) in 'Colin Clout's Come Home Againe':

"... there is a new shepheard late upsprong  
The which doth all afore him far surpasse,  
Appearing well in that well-tunèd song  
Which late he sung unto a scornfull lasse.  
Yet doth his trembling Muse but lowly flie,  
As daring not too rashly mount to hight,  
And doth her tender plumes as yet but trie  
In love's soft laies and looser thoughts delight.

\* Vol. I., p. x.

Then rouze thy feathers quickly, DANIELL,  
 And to what course thou please thy selfe advance.  
 But most me seemes thy accent will excell  
 In tragick plaints and passionate mischance."

2. THOMAS NASHE (1592) in 'Piers Penillesse': \*

"... Some dull-headed divines deeme it no more cunnyng to write an exquisite poem than to preach pure Calvin, or distill the juice of a Commentary into a quarter poem . . . you shall finde there goes more exquisite paynes and puritie of wit, to the writing of one such rare poem as *Rosamond* then to a hundred of your dunsticall sermons."

3. DR. GABRIEL HARVEY (1592) in 'Foure Letters and Certaine Sonnets': †

"I cordially recommend to the deere louers of the Muses; and namely, to the professed sonnes of the same: Edmund Spenser . . . Thomas Watson, SAMUELL DANIELL . . . and the rest, whome I affectionately thancke for their studious endeours, commendably employed, in enriching and polishing their natiue tongue, neuer so furnished or embellished as of late."

4. THOMAS CHURCHYARD (1593) in the 'Tragedie of Shore's Wife':

"Good Madame (Lady Mount-Eagle and Compton), because *Rosimond* is excellently set forth (the actor [= auctor or author] whereof I honour) I have somewhat beautified my 'Shore's Wife.'"

In 'A Praise of Poetrie' (1595):—

"In Spenser's morall fairie Queene,  
 And Daniel's rosie mound [= Rosamond],

\* See complete Works in the *Huth Library* (6 vols.): vol. ii., pp. 59-60.

† See the same in same (3 vols.): vol. i., pp. 218-19. Cf. also ii. 290.

If they be throwly waid and seen,  
 Much matter may be found ;  
 One Barnes, that Petrarks Scholler is,  
 May march with them in ranke."

5. WILLIAM CLARKE (1595) in 'Polimanteia': \*

"Let other countries (sweet Cambridge) envie (yet admire) my Virgil, thy Petrarch, divine *Spenser*. And unlesse I erre (a thing easie in such simplicitie) deluded by dearlie beloved *Delia*, and fortunatelie fortunate *Cleopatra*, Oxford thou maist extoll thy court-deare verse-happie *Daniell*, whose sweete refined Muse, in contracted shape, were sufficient amongst men, to gaine pardon of the sinne to *Rosamond*, and euer-living praise to her loving *Delia*."

Passing JOHN WEEVER and "ZEPHERIA" and CHARLES FITZGEOFFREY with simple notices below,† we come to—

6. SIR JOHN DAVIES (1596) in 'Orchestra': ‡

"O that I could old Gefferies' Muse awake,  
 Or borrow Colin's fayre heroike stile,  
 Or smooth my rimes with *Delia's* servant's file" (st. 128).

\* See my reprint (with Introduction and Notes) in 'Unique and Rare Books.'

† John Weever (1595) in 'Epigrams' (1599) is a mere echo of Spenser. In the anonymous "Zepheria" (1594) the author addressing the "modern Laureats" speaks of "the sweete-tun'd accents of your Delian sonnetrie"; but the epithet may only be general and refer to Delos as the birthplace of Diana and Apollo. See Collier's 'Bibl. Cat.', ii. 554-5, and i., xlv. Charles Fitzgeoffrey in his poem on Sir Francis Drake (1596) and in his 'Affaniae sive Epigrammata: lib. iii. Oxon' (1601) is so utterly conventional as to be unworthy of preservation here. His 'Drake' is included in 'Unique and Rare Books,' as before.

‡ See either of my editions of Sir John Davies: (a) Complete Verse and Prose in Fuller Worthies' Library, 3 vols.; (b) Complete Poems in Chatto and Windus' 'Early English Poets,' 2 vols., 1876.

## 7. FRANCIS MERES (1596-98) in 'Palladis Tamia':

" . . . As the Greeke tongue is made famous and eloquent by Homer . . . so the English tongue is mightily enriched and gorgeously invested in rare ornaments and resplendent ablements by Sir Philip Sidney, Spenser, DANIEL. . . . And as *Horace* saith of his 'Exegi monumentum' . . . so say I severally of Sir Philip Sidney's, Spenser's, DANIEL's . . . workes. . . . As *Pindarus* . . . among the Greekes, and *Horace* and *Catullus* among the Latins, are the best Lyrick Poets: so in this faculty the best among our Poets are *Spenser* (who excelleth in all kinds), DANIEL, Drayton, Shakespeare, Breton . . . so these are the most passionate among us to bewaile and bemoane the perplexities of Loue, Henrie Howard Earle of Surrey . . . Sir Philip Sidney, Sir Walter Rawley, Sir Edward Dyer, Spenser, DANIEL, Drayton, Shakespeare. . . . As every one mourneth when hee heareth of the lamentable plangors of Thracian Orpheus for his dearest Euridice; so every one passionateth when he readeth the afflicted death of DANIEL's distressed *Rosamond*."

Meres rather paraded his own scholarship and ingenuity of comparison than showed critical acumen. I allow him to represent others kindred—*e.g.* Allot, Bodenham, Puttenham, William Camden, Richard Carew, and 'Vindex Anglicus' (1644)—who all class Daniel with Spenser and Sidney.\*

8. RICHARD BARNFIELD (1598) in 'Poems in Divers Humors': A Remembrance of some English Poets (after Spenser):—

"And DANIEL, praised for thy sweet-chaste Verse:

Whose Fame is grav'd on Rosamund's blacke Herse:

\* I find in my note-book a number of untraced encomiums, *e.g.*, "Rosamund's trumpeter, sweet as the nightingale." I should have liked to know the writer.

Still mayst thou liue ; and still be honourèd

For that rare Worke, 'The White Rose and the Red.'”\*

9. JOHN MARSTON (1598) in 'Certaine Satyres.' Bp. Hall in his 'Satires' had attacked the 'Mirror for Magistrates,' and indirectly Daniel's poems on the same (as he held) bad model. Marston handles him severely for the former, and adds :—

“Must thou needs detract

And striue to worke his antient honor's wrack ?

What, shall not *Rosamond*, or *Gaueston*

Ope their sweet lips without detraction

But must our moderne Criticks envious eye . . .”†

10. EDWARD GUILPIN (1598) :—

“DANIEL (as some holds) might mount IF HE LIST:= someone.

But others say that he's a Lucanist” :‡ ‘Skialetheia. Or a

\* See my collective edition of his complete Poems for the Roxburgh Club.

† See our 'Unique and Rare Books,' as before, for Marston's collected Poems with Memorial-Introduction ; also Mr. A. H. Bullen's edition of his Works (3 vols.) ; and same series for Bp. Hall's complete Poems.

‡ I suspect Guilpin meant that whereas he himself was the 'some one' who believed (like Spenser) that Daniel could 'mount if he list' to any height of 'divine poesy' he chose, certain others arguing (foolishly) from the 'Civil Wars' (four books of which were then published) held that he should prove no more than Lucan in his 'Pharsalia'—*i.e.* a verse-historian rather than poet. I have to thank two good literary friends who have thus written to me on the term. (a) *Professor J. W. Hales, M.A.* “There are two faults often found in Lucan : (1) that he is over-learned or at least too fond of airing his learning, and (2) that—this is Quintillian's criticism—'he was more of an orator than a poet.' So a Lucanist may be 'a pedant' or a 'rhetorician.'” (b) *Mr. Edmund Gosse.* “I do not know, but I would hazard the conjecture that Daniel is called a 'Lucanist' as resembling Lucan, of whom it was said that he 'chose the quiet life,' a phrase which has been interpreted as meaning that he refused all political office. I should think it possible that in this sense the gentle and cloistered Daniel might be called a 'Lucanist.' This seems to me more plausible than to suppose that, like Lucan, having written verse on the history of his country, he was so named.”

Shadowe of Truth in certaine Epigrams and Satyres.\* 1598 :  
Satyre iv., p. 63.

II. MICHAEL DRAYTON (I) (1599) in 'Endimion and Phœbe' (after Spenser) :—

"And thou, the sweet Musæus of these times,  
Pardon my rugged and vnfilèd rymes,  
Whose scarce invention is too meane and base,  
When Delia's glorious Muse doth come in place."

(2) 'To Henry Reynolds of Poets and Poesy' (after Spenser, Marlowe, and Shakespeare) :—

"Amongst these SAMUEL DANIEL, whom if I  
May speak of, but to censure do deny ; (= iudge)  
Only have heard some wise men him rehearse  
To be too much historian in verse ;  
His rhimes were smooth, his meeter well did close,  
But yet his manner better fitted prose."

(3) 'To Reader of Idea' (1593—1619) :—

"Many there be excelling in this kind,  
Whose well-trick'd rimes with all inuention swel :  
Let each commend as best shall be his minde,  
Some *Sidney*, *Constable*, some DANIEL.  
That thus their names familiarly I sing,  
Let none thinke them disparagèd to be ;  
Poor men with reuerence may speake of a King,  
And so may these be spoken of by mee . . . "†

\* Mr. Quiller-Couch (as onward) is unfortunate in his quotation of above couplet—the usual peril of second- or third-hand knowledge. (a) It is somewhat belated not to know the author of 'Skialetheia' (see my reproduction in 'Unique and Rare Books,' as before, with Introduction, etc., 1878). (b) Inaccurate to describe the rare book as a 'collection' of epigrams by several authors. (c) The Epigrams (70 in all) occupy only pp. 3—28, the Satyres pp. 29—68 ; and it is in the latter (not in an Epigram) the Daniel lines occur.

† See the Spenser Society edition of Drayton and Mr. J. P. Collier's volume for the Roxburgh Club.

## 12. 'THE RETURNE FROM PARNASSUS' (1601-6)\* :—

(a) "*Gull*: Pardon mee, moy mistressa, est am a gentleman, the moone in comparison of thy bright hue a meere slutt, Anthonie's Cleopatra a black-browde milkmaide, Hellen a dowdie.

*Ingen*: (Marke, Romeo and Juliet! O monstrous theft. I thinke he will runn throughe a whole booke of Samuell Daniell's!) " (Act iii., sc. 1, p. 57.)

(b) *Ibid.*:—

"Sweete hony-dropping Daniell doth wage  
Warre with the proudest big Italian,  
That melts his heart in sugred sonneting :  
Onely let him more sparingly make use  
Of others wit, and use his owne the more :  
That well may scorne base imitation."

(Act i., sc. 2, p. 85.)

## 13. BEN JONSON (1619): (1) in 'Conversations with William Drummond of Hawthornden':—

(a) "Said he had written a Discourse of Poesie, both against Campion and Daniel, especially this last, where he proves couplets to be the bravest sort of verse, especially when they are broken, like Hexameters; and that crosse rimes and stanzas (because the purpose would lead him beyond 8 lines to conclude) were all forced."

(b) "Samuel Daniel was a good honest man; had no children; but no poet."

(c) "Daniel was at jealousies with him."

(d) "Daniel wrott Civil Warres, and yet hath not one battle in all his book."

\* We are indebted to the Rev. W. D. Macray, M.A., for an admirable edition, not only of the 'Returne,' but also of its two related 'Journeys': Clarendon Press, 1866.

(2) From 'Euery Man in his Humour' (1596-98).

(e) "*Clem.*: What! all this verse? body o' me, he carries a whole realme [=ream, as realm was pronounced] a common-wealth of paper in his hose: let us see some of his subject. [Reads.

'Unto the boundless ocean of thy face,  
Runs this poor river, charged with streams of eyes.'  
How! this is stolen.

"*E. Know*: A parody! a parody! with a kind of miraculous gift, to make it absurder than it was." (Act v., sc. 1.)

(f) From 'The Silent Woman' (1609):—

"*Truewit*: Be a stateswoman, know all the news . . . or so she may censure poets, and authors, and styles, and compare them; Daniel with Spenser, Jonson with t'other youth, and so forth." (Act ii., sc. 1.)

(g) From 'The Staple of News' (1625):—

"*Wax* (Rose): When he says nothing  
But twirls it thus.

*Statute*: A moving oratory!

*Band*: Dumb rhetoric and silent eloquence!

As the fine poet says." (Act iii., sc. 1.)

(h) From 'The Forest' (1616-30)—to Elizabeth Countess of Rutland (Sidney's daughter):—

"You, and that other star, that purest light  
Of all Lucina's train, Lucy the bright;  
Than which a nobler heaven itself knows not;  
Who, though she have a better verser got,  
(Or Poet, in the Court-account), than I,  
And who doth me, though I not him envy . . ." (xii.)

14. JOHN DAVIES OF HEREFORD (1611), in  
'Scourge of Folly': \*—

\* See complete ed. of John Davies in Chertsey Worthies' Library,  
2 vols. 4to.

"To my worthily disposed friend Mr. Sam. Daniell.

"I hear thy Muse in Court doth travell now,  
 Art speed her feet, and grace there speed her plough.  
 If they come short, then gain by other drifts,  
 The more thou get'st, the more it's like thy gifts.  
 If yet too short, to add unto thy size,  
 Get one foot's length, then thy feet shall rise  
 With Pegasus, from Parnass to the skies."

I pass a foolishly encomiastic anonymous tribute of 1611—noting it below \*—and equally leave unquoted Robert Hayman's 'Quodlibets' (1628), inasmuch as his epigram consists simply of a couplet on his own epigrams addressed "to Samuel Daniel most witty poet," much as Sir John Harington (a Somersetshire man), wishful to have his friend's name in his book, similarly addressed a couplet to "My friend, Mr. Sam. Daniell"—nothing personal. I also over-pass the (poor) epigrams of John Owen—naught *quick* in any of his tributes.

15. THOMAS FREEMAN (1614), 'Rubbe and a Great Cast: Epigrams.' Epigr. 69:—

"*Ad Sam. Danielelem ut Ciuile bellum perficiat.*

"I see not (Daniel) why thou shouldst disdain  
 If I vouchsafe thy name amongst my mirth;  
 Thy *Aetas prima* † was a merry vaine,  
 Though later Muse tumultuous in her birth;

\* Thomas Park gives above in *Censura Literaria* (i. 173) without stating its source. It is tacked to a notice of Davison's 'Poetical Rhapsody' (1611), but *certainly* did not appear therein. He says: "The following encomiastic tribute to Daniel, who was termed by Headley 'the Atticus of his day,' may be welcome to some poetical readers, as an antiquarian 'novelty,'—utter trash."

† *Aetas prima* canat venereas, postrema tumultus. Master Daniel's Mott prefixed to most of his Workes. [See vol. i. 20, 21: ii. 2, 3, etc.]

Know, here I praise thee as thou wast in youth :  
 Venereous, not mutinous as now ;  
 Thy Infancie I loue, admire thy growth,  
 And wonder to what excellence 'twill grow,  
 When thou shalt end the broils thou hast begun,  
 Which none shall do, if thou shalt leaue vndone." \*

16. WILLIAM DRUMMOND OF HAWTHORNDEN  
 (1619?):

"For sweetness and rhyming second to none." †

17. WILLIAM BROWNE (1613-16) in 'Britannia's  
 Pastorals' (B. ii., song 2):

"Well-languaged Daniel."

18. EDMUND BOLTON (before 1600), 'Hypercritica': ‡

"The works of Samuel Daniel contained somewhat a flat  
 but yet withal a very pure and copious English, and words as  
 warrantable as any Man's, and fitter perhaps for Prose than  
 measure."

19. JOHN PENNY (1626), 'Anagramata Regia':

'SAMUEL DANIEL.

"Diceris egregius duplici tu nomine Vates ;  
 Quam sanctus Samuel, quam sapiens Daniel.  
 Romanum superare potes, me Judice, Vatem :  
 Non tibi lasciva est Pagina, Vita proba est." §

\* The above epigram is from the second series, entitled 'Runne and a  
 Great Cast : The Second Bowle.' There is a 17th-century MS. of Free-  
 man in 'Sloane MS.,' 1889, f. 37b. This in line 2nd reads 'amidst' for  
 'amongst.'

† See this Memorial-Introduction onward for notice of MSS. of Daniel  
 formerly belonging to Drummond.

‡ Fairly well reprinted by Joseph Haslewood in his 'Ancient Critical  
 Essays'—which include Campion and Daniel, 2 vols. 4to, 1811.

§ Cf. Collier's 'Bibliogr. Cat.,' i. 21, 22.

[Translation by Canon Richard Wilton, M.A., of Londesborough Rectory :

“A noble bard art thou in twofold guise :  
As SAMUEL holy and as DANIEL wise ;  
The Roman bard, methinks thou dost outshine ;  
Thy life is pure, no wanton page is thine.” \*

20. DR. THOMAS FULLER (1662), ‘Worthies’ :—

“Samuel Daniel was born not far from Taunton in this county [of Somerset] : [his father John] whose faculty was a master of music ; and his harmonious mind made an impression on his son’s genius, who proved an exquisite poet. He carried in his Christian and surname two holy prophets, his monitors, so to qualify his raptures, that he abhorred all profaneness.

“He was also a judicious historian : witness his ‘Lives of our English Kings since the Conquest until King Edward the Third’ ; wherein he hath the happiness to reconcile brevity with clearness, qualities of great distance in other authors ; a work since commendably continued (but not with equal judgment) by Mr. Trussell.

“He was a servant in ordinary to Queen Anne, who allowed him a fair salary. As the tortoise burieth himself all the winter in the ground, so Mr. Daniell would lie hid at his garden-house in Old Street, nigh London, for some months together (the more retiredly to enjoy the company of the Muses) ; and then would appear in public, to converse with his friends, whereof Dr. Cowel and Mr. Camden were principal. Some tax him to smack of the old cask, as resenting of the Romish religion, but they have a quicker palate than I, who can make any such

\* The text has ‘Regina’—an evident misprint for ‘Pagina,’ the pentameter requiring the second syllable of the word to be short, *Pagīna* not *Regīna*. Probably Horace rather than Virgil was intended : or query Ovid ? My ‘brother beloved’ was good enough to similarly translate Owen, Fitzgeoffrey, and others ; but, as stated elsewhere, the originals are sapless and valueless.

discovery.\* In his old age he turned husbandman, and rented a farm in Wiltshire nigh the Devises. I can give no account how he thrived thereupon; for though he was well versed in Virgil, his fellow husbandman poet, yet there is more required to make a rich farmer, than only to say his Georgics by heart; and I question whether his Italian will fit our English husbandry. Besides, I suspect that Mr. Daniel's fancy was too fine and sublimated, to be wrought down to his private profit. However, he had neither a *bank of wealth* or *lack of want*, being in competent condition. By Justina his wife he had no child. . . ."

21. GERARD LANGBAINE (1691), 'Dramatick Poets.' In quoting the following couplet from 'Choice Drollery' (1656)—

"The pithy Daniel, whose salt lines afford

A weighty sentence in each little word" ('Time Poets')—

Langbaine says: "I have never seen any copies made on the old poets, but Mr. Daniel is therein mention'd with honor" (p. 105). Again: "One whose memory will ever be fresh in the minds of those who favour history or poetry. . . . But however his genius was qualified for Poetry, I take his History of England to be the crown of all his Works." †

Once more leaving unquoted as of no critical value

\* See Glossarial-Index under 'Roman Catholic' for exposure of this absurdity.

† For those who care to consult it, I give the reference to Hallam's account of the 'History'—viz., vol. iii., pp. 149, 150. I simply note that he is wholly wrong in stating that Daniel had recourse 'only to common authorities.' His margins show that he had the whole available literature of his History at his command, and he promised an Appendix of original MS. documents by aid of Sir Robert Cotton, Camden, etc. Alas! that his death robbed us of this.

whatever Henry Headley (1787), 'Select Beauties of Ancient English Poets'—Sir Egerton Brydges (1815) in 'Censura Literaria,' 'Restituta,' etc.—Dr. Nathan Drake (1817) in 'Shakespeare and his Times' (with all its limitations a not despicable book)—as I shall in like manner not load my pages with anything from the almost always wooden and second-hand Henry Hallam, and Professor G. L. Craik—only a little less superficial and jejune than Hallam—we have now reached men of higher *calibre* and insight.

## 22. WILLIAM WORDSWORTH (1814):

“ . . . the wise

Have still the keeping of their proper peace ;

Are guardians of their own tranquillity ;

They act, or they recede, observe, and feel ;

“ Knowing the heart of man is set to be

The centre of this world, about the which

Those revolutions of disturbances

Still roll ; where all the aspects of misery

Predominate ; whose strong effects are such

As he must bear, being powerless to redress ;

*And that unless above himself he can*

*Erect himself, how poor a thing is man ! ”*

( ' The Excursion, ' Book IV., ll. 320-31. )

“ The passage quoted from Daniel is taken from a poem addressed to the Lady Margaret, Countess of Cumberland, and the two last lines, printed in italics, are by him translated from Seneca. The whole poem is very beautiful. I will transcribe four stanzas from it, as they contain an admirable picture of the state of a wise man's mind in a time of public commotion.”

[Vol. i., pp. 204-5, ll. 36—67.] WORDSWORTH.

[See Glossarial-Index under Wordsworth for a note.]

23. ROBERT SOUTHEY, (1831), in (1) 'Select Works of the British Poets from Chaucer to Jonson': "Daniel frequently wrote below his subject and his strength, but always in a strain of tender feeling, and in language as easy and natural as it is pure. For his diction alone he would deserve to be studied by all students or lovers of poetry, even if his works did not abound with passages of singular beauty. Thoughtful, grateful [*sic*: query graceful? or pleasing?], right-minded and gentle-hearted, there is no poet in our language of whom it may be affirmed with more certainty, from his writings, that he was an amiable and wise and good man." (2) From 'The Doctor' (ed. 1848, p. 121): "One of the sweetest and tenderest of English poets." And again: "The tenderest of all tender poets."

24. SAMUEL TAYLOR COLERIDGE (*b.* 1772, *d.* 1834).

(1) 'Table Talk' (ed. 1851).

"Read Daniel—the admirable Daniel—in his 'Civil Wars' and 'Triumph of Hymen.' The style and language are just such as any very pure and manly writer of the present day—Wordsworth, for example—would use; it seems quite modern in comparison with the style of Shakespeare" (p. 311).

(2) 'Biographia Literaria' on Prose *v.* Verse (ed. 1847, ii. 82-4).

". . . The sense shall be good and weighty, the language correct and dignified, the subject interesting and treated with feeling; and yet the style shall, notwithstanding all these merits, be justly blamable as prosaic, and solely because the words and the order of the words would find their appropriate place in prose, but are not suitable to metrical composition. The 'Civil Warres' of Daniel is an instructive, and even interesting

work : but take the following stanzas, (and from the hundred instances which abound I might probably have selected others far more striking : [Book I., st. vii.—ix.] Will it be contended, on the one side, that these lines are mean and senseless? Or, on the other, that they are not prosaic, and for *that* reason unpoetic? This poet's well-merited epithet is that of the 'well-languaged Daniel'; but likewise, and by the consent of his contemporaries no less than of all succeeding critics, the 'prosaic Daniel.' Yet those who thus designate this wise and amiable writer, from the frequent incorespondency of his diction to his metre in the majority of his compositions, not only deem them valuable and interesting on other accounts, but willingly admit that there are to be found throughout his poems, and especially in his Epistles and in his 'Hymen's Triumph,' many and exquisite specimens of that style which, as the *neutral ground* of prose and verse, is common to both. A fine and almost faultless extract, eminent as for other beauties so for its perfection in this species of diction, may be seen in Lamb's Dramatic Specimens [noted by us elsewhere in this Introduction . . .]

(3) Two letters to Lamb (Hazlitt's 'Johnson's Lives Completed' (i. 177-8 : 1854) written on the fly-leaf of Lamb's copy of Daniel's 'Works' :—

"DEAR CHARLES,—I think more highly [of Daniel], far more than you seemed to do (on Monday night, Feb. 9, 1808). The verse does not *teaze* me ; and all the while I am reading it, I cannot but fancy a plain England-loving English country gentleman, with only some dozen books in his whole library, and at a time when a *Mercury* or *Intelligencer* was seen by him once in a month or two, making this his newspaper and political Bible at the same time, and reading it so often as to store his memory with its aphorisms. Conceive a good man of that kind, diffident and passive, yet *rather* inclined to Jacobitism,

seeing the reasons of the revolutionary party, yet, by disposition and old principles, leaning, in quiet nods and sighs, at his own parlour fire, to the hereditary right (and of these characters there must have been many), and then read this poem, assuming in your heart his character,—conceive how proud he would look, and what pleasure there would be, what unconscious, harmless, humble self-conceit, self-compliment in his gravity ; how wise he would feel himself, yet, after all, how forbearing ; how much calmed by that most calming reflection (when it is really the mind's own reflection),—Ay, it was just so in King Henry the Sixth's time. Always the same passions at work."

And again—

Second Letter (five hours after the first).

"DEAR CHARLES,—You must read over these *Civil Wars* again. We both know what a *mood* is ; and the genial mood will—it shall—come for my sober-minded Daniel. He was a tutor and a sort of steward in a noble family, in which form was religiously observed, and religion formally ; and yet there was much warm blood and mighty muscle of substance in them that the moulding-irons did not disturb, though they stiffened the vital man in them. Daniel caught and communicated the spirit of the great Countess of Pembroke, the glory of the North ; he formed her mind, and her mind inspirited him. Gravely sober on all ordinary affairs, and not easily excited by any, yet there is one on which his blood boils—whenever he speaks of English valour exerted against a foreign enemy. Do read over,—but some evening when I am quite comfortable at your fireside,—and, oh, when shall I ever be if I am not so there !—that is the last altar at the horns of which my old feelings hang ; but, alas, listen and tremble—nonsense !—well, I will read to you and Mary the 205, 206, and 207 pages—above all that 93 stanza ! What is there in description superior even in Shakespeare ? only that

Shakespeare would have given one of his *glows* to the first line, and flattered the mountain top with his sovran eye, instead of this poor 'a marvellous advantage of his yeares.' But this, however, is Daniel, and he must not be read piecemeal;—even by leaving off and looking at a stanza by itself, I find the loss.

"S. T. COLERIDGE."

Then a P.S. to notice of 93rd stanza (*ut supra*):

"And in a different style, the 98th stanza, page 208. What an image in 107, page 211! Thousands even of educated men would become more sensible, fitter to be members of parliament, or ministers, by reading Daniel; and even those few who, *quoad intellectum*, only gain refreshment of notions already their own, must become better Englishmen. Oh, if it be not too late, write a kind note about him.

"S. T. COLERIDGE."

[The edition of Daniel quoted from has not been recorded by either Coleridge's or Lamb's editors; but most probably the stanzas indicated all belong to Book VI. of the 'Civil Wars': specifically stanzas 93, 98 and 107.] I glean the following additions from Hartley Coleridge's 'Marginalia,'—for a Coleridge's dust is dust of gold.

Poem of the Lady Margaret—"A noble poem in all respects."—S. T. C. Then Hartley Coleridge on the Devonshire 'Funeral Poem':—

"If strong sense and high morality, expressed in pure, weighty and considerate language, be enough to constitute poetry, this memorial is a noble poem, notwithstanding the dead march of the verse, which might have been composed to the knell of muffled bells, the slow rumble of a heavy hearse, and the monotony of a funeral sermon. It is a perfect

contrast to Ford's essay on the same occasion, which is the dullest string of conceits, the finest specimen of 'the furious tame,' that ever issued from the pen of an undoubted genius. Daniel's allusion to his patron's connection with Lady Rich is manly and delicate. Ford thinks to bully over the matter." (i., pp. 12, 13.)

25. JAMES RUSSELL LOWELL in Essay on Spenser. After Drayton.

"Daniel was in all respects a man of finer mould. He did indeed refine our tongue, and deserved the praise his contemporaries concur in giving him of being 'well-languaged.'\* Writing two hundred and fifty years ago, he stands in no need of a glossary, and I have noted scarce a dozen words, and not more turns of phrase, in his works, that have become obsolete. This certainly indicates both remarkable taste and equally remarkable judgment. There is a conscious dignity in his thought and sentiment such as we rarely meet. His best poems always remind me of a table-land, where, because all is so level, we are apt to forget on how lofty a plane we are standing. I think his 'Musophilus' the best poem of its kind in the language. The reflections are natural, the expression condensed, the thought weighty, and the language worthy of it. But he also wasted himself on an historical poem, in which the characters were incapable of that remoteness from ordinary associations which is essential to the ideal. Not that we can escape into the ideal by *merely* emigrating into the past or the unfamiliar. As in the German legend, the little black Kobald of prose that haunts us in the present will seat himself

\* Edmund Bolton in his *Hypercritica* says: "The works of Sam. Daniel contained somewhat a flat, yet withal a very pure and copious English, and words as warrantable as any man's, and *fitter perhaps for prose than rhyming*." (See Haslewood's *Ancient Crit. Essays*, vol. ii.) I have italicised his second thought, which chimes curiously with the feeling Daniel leaves in the mind. Wordsworth, an excellent judge, much admired Daniel's poem to the Countess of Cumberland.

on the first load of furniture when we undertake our flitting, if the magician be not there to exorcise him. No man can jump off his own shadow, nor, for that matter, off his own age, and it is very likely that Daniel had only the thinking and languaging parts of a poet's outfit, without the higher creative gift which alone could endow his conceptions with enduring life and with an interest which transcends the parish limits of his generation. In the prologue to his 'Masque at Court' he has unconsciously defined his own poetry :—

“ ‘Wherein no wild, no rude, no antic sport,  
But tender passions, motions soft and graue,  
The still spectator must expect to haue.”

And indeed his verse does not snatch you away from ordinary associations and hurry you along with it, as is the wont of the higher kinds of poetry, but leaves you, as it were, upon the bank watching the peaceful current and lulled by its somewhat monotonous murmur. His best-known poem, blunderingly misprinted in all the collections, is that addressed to the Countess of Cumberland. It is an amplification of Horace's *Integer Vitæ*, and when we compare it with the original we miss the point, the compactness, and above all the urbane tone of the original. It is very fine English, but it is the English of diplomacy somehow, and is never downright this or that, but always has the heart to be so or so, with sentiments of the highest consideration. Yet the praise of *well-linguaged*, since it implies that good writing then as now demanded choice and forethought, is not without interest for those who would classify the elements of a style that will wear and hold its colours well. His diction, if wanting in the more hardy evidences of muscle, has a suppleness and spring that give proof of training and endurance. His 'Defence of Rhyme,' written in prose (a more difficult test than verse) has a passionate eloquence that reminds one of Burke, and is more light-armed and modern than the prose of Milton, fifty years later." ('Works,' vol. iv., pp. 280-82.)

26. PROFESSOR WILLIAM MINTO (1885) in 'Characteristics of English Poets from Chaucer to Shirley':—

"Had Daniel lived in the present day, his destiny probably would have been to write scholarly and elegant articles in the magazines, ripe fruits of learned study, cultivated taste, and easy command of polite English. His was not one of the stormy irregular natures that laid the foundation and raised the structure of the English drama: the elements of his being were softly blended, and wrought together mildly and harmoniously. In the prologue to 'Hymen's Triumph' he declares that he has no rude sport to offer—

" 'But tender passions, motions soft and grave,  
The still spectators must expect to have.'

He wrote for Cynthia, and therefore his play—

" 'Must be gentle, like to her  
Whose sweet affections mildly move and stir.'

He might have said the same about all his poetry. He was no master of strong passions: he never felt them, and he could not paint them. Between his Cleopatra and Shakespeare's there is a wide gulf. But he is most exquisite and delicate in pencilling 'tender passions, motions soft and grave.' Without being strikingly original, Daniel has a way and a vein of his own. He fills his mind with ideas and forms from extraneous sources, and with quietly operating plasticity reshapes them in accordance with the bent of his own modes of thought and feeling. He had not the Shakespearean lightning quickness in adaptation and extension; the process in him was more peaceable and easy. The diction of his poems is choice; the versification easy and flowing. He often puts things with felicitous terseness and vigour, and his words almost invariably come together happily and harmoniously." Then of the Sonnets: 'They have all Daniel's smoothness and felicity of phrase, and are pervaded by exceedingly sweet and soft sentiment. Though they rouse no strong feelings, they may be

dwelt upon by a sympathetic reader with lively enjoyment." Further: "Daniel's genius is best shown in the expression of bereaved love in the 'Complaint of Rosamond' and in 'Hymen's Triumph'—as Spenser said, 'in tragic complaints and passionate mischance.' In the expression of courtship love, his imagination is cold and acts artificially and mechanically; but when the beloved object is taken away, he is moved to the depths, and pours forth his strains with genuine warmth. The passion has still a certain softness in it; his lovers have not the inconsolable fierce distraction of Shakespeare's forsaken lover, 'tearing of papers, breaking rings atwain': they do not shriek undistinguished woe; but they sigh deeply, and their voices are richly laden with impassioned remembrance. The plaintive sorrow of Thyrsis is sweet and profound. But nothing that Daniel has written flows with surer instinct and more natural impulse than the agonised endearments of Henry over the body of Rosamond. Wholly different in character from the frantic doting of Venus over her lost Adon, these verses are hardly less perfect as the utterance of a milder and less fiercely fond passion. The deep heart's sorrow of the bereaved lover makes itself felt in every line" (pp. 191-5).\*

27. PROFESSOR GEORGE SAINTSBURY, in his 'Elizabethan Literature':—

"The poetical value of Daniel may almost be summed up in two words—sweetness and dignity. He is decidedly wanting in strength, and despite *Delia*, can hardly be said to have had a spark of passion. Even in his own day it was doubted whether he had not overweighted himself with his choice of historical subjects, though the epithet of 'well-languaged,' given to him at the time, evinces a real comprehension of one of his best claims to attention. No writer of the period has such a command of pure English, unadulterated by xenomania and unweakened by purism, as Daniel. Whatever unfavourable things have been said of him from time to time

have been chiefly based on the fact that his chaste and correct style lacks the fiery quaintness, the irregular and audacious attraction of his contemporaries. Nor was he less a master of versification than of vocabulary. His *Defence of Rhyme* shows that he possessed the theory: all his poetical works show that he was a master of the practice. He rarely attempted and probably would not have excelled in the lighter lyrical measures. But in the grave music of the various elaborate stanzas in which the Elizabethan poets delighted, and of which the Spenserian, though the crown and flower, is only the most perfect, he was a great proficient, and his couplets and blank verse are not inferior. Some of his single lines have already been quoted, and many more might be excerpted from his work of the best Elizabethan brand in the quieter kind. Quiet, indeed, is the over-mastering characteristic of Daniel. It was this, no doubt, which made him prefer the stately style of his Senecan tragedies, and the hardly more disturbed structure of pastoral comedies and tragi-comedies, like the *Queen's Arcadia* and *Hymen's Triumph*, to the boisterous revels of the stage proper in his time. He had something of the schoolmaster in his nature as well as in his history. Nothing is more agreeable to him than to moralise, not indeed in any dull or crabbed manner, but in a mellifluous and at the same time weighty fashion, of which very few other poets have the secret. It is perhaps by his scrupulous propriety, by his anxious decency (to use the word not in its modern and restricted sense, but in its proper meaning of the generally becoming), that Daniel brought upon himself the rather hard saying that he had a manner 'better suiting prose.' The sentence will scarcely be echoed by any one who has his best things before him, however much a reader of some of the duller parts of the historical poems proper may feel inclined to echo it. . . . The passage from *Hymen's Triumph*, 'Ah, I remember well, and how can I,' shows the sweetness without namby-pambyness which Daniel had at constant command. Something of the same

contrast may be found between the whole of *Hymen's Triumph* and the *Queen's Arcadia* on the one side, and *Cleopatra* and *Philotas* on the other. All are written in mixed blank and rhymed verse, and interlaced and 'enjambéd.' The best of the historical poems is by common consent *Rosamond*, which is instinct with a most remarkable pathos; nor are fine passages by any means to seek in the greater length and less poetical subject of *The Civil Wars of York and Lancaster*. The fault of this is that the too conscientious historian is constantly versifying what must be called mere expletive matter. This must always make any one who speaks with critical impartiality admit that much of Daniel is hard reading; but the soft places (to use the adjective in no ill sense) are frequent enough, and when the reader comes to them he must have little appreciation of poetry if he does not rejoice in the foliage and the streams of the poetical oasis which has rewarded him after his pilgrimage across a rather arid wilderness" (pp. 135-9).

28. A. T. QUILLER-COUCH (1894) from 'Adventures in Criticism' (1896):—

"The writings of Samuel Daniel and the circumstances of his life are of course well enough known to all serious students of English poetry. And, though I cannot speak on this point with any certainty, I imagine that our younger singers hold to the tradition of all their fathers, and that Daniel still *renidet in angulo* of their affections, as one who in his day did very much, though quietly, to train the growth of English verse; and proved himself, in everything he wrote, an artist to the bottom of his conscience. As certainly as Spenser, he was a 'poets' poet' while he lived. A couple of pages might be filled almost off-hand with the genuine compliments of his contemporaries, and he will probably remain a 'poets' poet' as long as poets write in English. But the average reader of culture—the person who is honestly moved by good poetry, and goes from time to time to his bookshelves for an antidote

to the common cares and trivialities of this life—seems to neglect him almost utterly.”

Then follows this lamentation, bew<sup>r</sup>aying unacquaintance with our edition of his complete Verse (Vols. I. to III., 1885):—

“I judge from the wretched insufficiency of his editions. It is very hard to obtain anything beyond the two small volumes published in 1718 (an imperfect collection), and a volume of ‘Selections’ edited by Mr. John Morris and published by a Bath bookseller in 1855; and even these are only to be picked up here and there.” Further: “I find it significant, too, that in Mr. Palgrave’s *Golden Treasury*, Daniel is represented by one sonnet only, and that by no means his best. This neglect will appear the more singular to any one who has observed how apt is the person whom I have called the ‘average reader of culture’ to be drawn to the perusal of an author’s works by some attractive idiosyncrasy in the author’s private life or character. Lamb is a staring instance of this attraction. How we all love Lamb, to be sure! Though he rejected it and called out upon it, ‘gentle’ remains Lamb’s constant epithet. And, curiously enough, in the gentleness and dignified melancholy of his life, Daniel stands nearer to Lamb than any other English writer, with the possible exception of Scott. His circumstances were less gloomily picturesque. But I defy any feeling man to read the scanty narrative of Daniel’s life and think of him thereafter without sympathy and respect.”

Finally—passing over facts of the life and notes thereon already anticipated:—

“I said just now that Daniel had done much, though quietly, to train the growth of English verse. He not only stood up successfully for its natural development at a time when the clever but less largely informed Champion and others threatened it with fantastic changes. He probably did as much

as Waller to introduce polish of line into our poetry. Turn to the famous 'Ulysses and the Siren,' and read [Vol. I., pp. 270-72]. Can any one tell me of English verses that run more smoothly off the tongue, or with a more temperate grace? To speak familiarly, this is as easy as an old shoe. To speak yet more familiarly, it looks as if any fool could turn off lines like these. Let the fool try. And yet to how many anthologies do we not turn in vain for 'Ulysses and the Siren'; or for the exquisite Spring song, beginning—

' Now each creature joys the other,  
Passing happy days and hours ;  
One bird reports unto another,  
In the fall of silver showers. . . .' (I., 259-60) ;

or for that lofty thing, the 'Epistle to the Countess of Cumberland.' . . . Certainly, if ever a critic shall arise to deny poetry the virtue we so commonly claim for her, of fortifying men's souls against calamity, this noble Epistle will be all but the last post from which he will extrude her defenders" (pp. 50—60).

And now—as announced in beginning these selected and representative estimates—in returning upon certain things in most of them, it must be permitted me to accentuate that a literary critic writes himself down—ass (and plain speech is demanded) who in the teeth of such a Century of Praise (and beyond) rests satisfied with merely dipping here and there, and thereupon pronouncing as fatuously as Lord Jeffrey, "This will never do."

Take EDMUND SPENSER'S greeting. It is not to read into it more than was meant, but to rightly read what was meant, to find in this opening tribute a call upon him to let himself go, on the ground that he was capable of high success in "whatever course he

pleased to advance himself." No doubt this was over-praise; for Daniel had rigid limitations. None the less it avouches the "poet of poets'" lofty conception of the possibilities and potentialities of his friend's genius. More than that. Let the reader go back on the closing couplet, and mark how unerringly and presciently Spenser puts his finger on what was undoubtedly the central quality of Daniel—viz., pathos and tenderness, "tragicke plaints and passionate mischance." The greatest 'Curiosity of Literature' is that this should have been misread into a summons to the Poet to write 'play-tragedies.' Even so level-headed a critic as Mr. A. H. Bullen, in his life of Daniel in the 'Dictionary of National Biography' (*s.n.*), has continued the prevalent misinterpretation. He says, "Spenser then addressing the poet by name, advises him to attempt tragedy." Not at all. The mere printing of "Tragick" with a capital letter—capitals abounding in Spenser as in all Elizabethans—gave no warrant for transmogrifying "tragic plaints" into "Tragedy Plays." \* Whereas, read as I am reading, Spenser practically tells the Poet to go on and work the vein revealed in the 'Complaint of Rosamond.' Clearly 'Rosamond' rather than the "soft laies and looser thoughts" of 'Delia' went to Spenser's heart, and made him recognise in

\* It is an ungracious duty to note that in the same Memoir Mr. Bullen misspells as Hayward, Hayman; mistakes Richard Carew for Thomas Carew—the latter having no mention of Daniel; mis-assigns to Bastard an epigram on him that is non-existent, and otherwise has been badly served by his note-book. Need I say that these small matters do not at all affect my very high estimate of the fine enthusiasm, the rare vigilance, the sufficient scholarship, and as a whole the accuracy of his reprints, albeit (*e.g.* in Marlowe) blotted by too many misprints?

the "new shepherd" one who had command of the  
"fount of tears."

It is the more honourable to Spenser that he should thus and thus early have welcomed Daniel, in that in one of the 'Delia' sonnets there was a hardly mistakable gird at his "aged accents" and allegorising:—

"Let others sing of Knights and Palladines,  
In aged accents and untimely words;  
Paint shadowes in imaginary lines,  
Which well the reach of their high wits records."  
(IV. i. 73.)

Perchance the laudatory "high wits" softened the implied censure; and doubtless—as with Sidney's dispraise of the antique words of the 'Shepherd's Calendar'—just as doubtless Guilpin's "grandam words" (p. 63) were but motes in the sunshine of his praise—and he credited Daniel with love for the "pure well of English undefiled," or direct and simple English-born speech. It must likewise be remembered that later Daniel turned aside (so to say) to pay fine tribute to Spenser (See vol. iii., pp. 26-7).\*

THOMAS NASHE'S praise of the "exquisite paynes" required for the production of so "rare a poem as *Rosamond*" lies like a rose above its thorns in his fierce denunciations of the "dunstical sectaries." It is exceptionally valuable.

\* I suppose it may be assumed that Spenser saw Nashe's 1592 surreptitious ed. of 27 of the 'Delia' sonnets appended to 'Astrophel and Stella.' But no doubt the Author's own edition of 1594 complete, and with the 'Complaint of Rosamond' added, also reached him. 'Colin Clout's Come Home Again' is dated 1591 at end of the Epistle, but while an early draft may have been among his papers, 1594 was its real year-date of issue.

DR. GABRIEL HARVEY'S 'praise' could have been done without. That literary ghou! stinks in the nostrils of all honest men. Yet it *is* noticeable that long before WILLIAM BROWNE he recognised the fine English of our Poet.

THOMAS CHURCHYARD and WILLIAM CLARKE bear witness to the honour in which Daniel was held by the best judges.

SIR JOHN DAVIES'S golden praise of our Poet, precious in itself, is still more precious as enabling us to correct a too long and indolently accepted misapplication of two of his Epigrams to Daniel. Unfortunately Dyce—name never to be mentioned without honour and gratitude, spite of his limitations and lack of imagination—in his MARLOWE thus annotates No. 45 :—

"I am sorry to believe that by Dacus (who is spoken of with great contempt in Epigram 30) our author means Samuel Daniel; but the following lines in that very pleasing writer's *Complaint of Rosamond* (which was first printed in 1592) certainly would seem to be alluded to here :

" Ah, beauty syren, faire enchanting good,  
Sweet, silent rhetorique of perswading eyes,  
*Dumb eloquence*, whose power doth move the blood,  
More than the words or wisdom of the wise," etc. (1611, p. 39).

What a pity this laborious editor did not look an inch or two beyond his own nose and study Epigram 30! Here it is :—

" *In Dacum* 30.

" Amongst the poets Dacus numbred is,  
Yet could he never make an English rime ;  
But some prose speeches I have heard of his,  
Which have been spoken many an hundreth time ;

The man that keeps the Elephant hath one,  
 Wherein he tells the wonders of the beast ;  
 Another Banks pronouncèd long agon  
 When he his curtailes' qualities exprest.  
 He first taught him that keeps the monuments  
 At Westminster, his farewell tale to say ;  
 And who him which Puppets represents,  
 And who him which with the ape doth play :  
     Though all his Poetry be like to this,  
     Amongst the Poets Dacus numbred is."

Be it noted that, independent of the absurdity of supposing that Sir John Davies could possibly affirm of Daniel, "he never could make an English rhyme," the "prose speeches" assigned to the same Dacus do not in any single instance belong to Daniel.

Nor is even this all. Let us read Epigr. 45.

*"In Dacum 45.*

"Dacus with some good colour and pretence,  
 Tearmes his love's beauty 'silent eloquence';  
 For she doth lay more colour on her face  
 Than ever Tully us'd his speech to grace."

(Dacus, Davies' works, as before, ii. 42.)

"Silent eloquence" is not identical with "dumbe eloquence," and Daniel was not addressing his Mistress ("love's beauty"), but Rosamond the King (Henry).

Therefore there is not jot or tittle to prove that by Dacus Samuel Daniel was intended. The truth is that the phrase of "dumbe eloquence"—a beautiful and pathetic fancy, reminding us of the murdered queen lying in her stillness, and (if I may illustrate) of the wayside Irish beggar who simply exposed his sores and rags and left them to appeal for him—passed

into common speech (from Daniel probably) and grew to be one of the aped phrases of the gallants and poetasters of the time. Finally, by rare good fortune, John Davies of Hereford, who was Daniel's friend—in his 'Scourge of Folly'—paints for us the real 'Dacus,' and more cannot be necessary to wipe off for ever this stain on alike Daniel's good name and Sir John Davies's.

*"Against Dacus the pott-Poet: Epigr. 2.*

"Dacus keepes company and they keepe him ;  
And yet he scornes to bee so kept by any :  
But each where he in Helicon doth swim,  
And for that floud he cannot pay a penny :  
For when the reckning's giu'n, and he would say  
Here's mine ; that floud doth carry mine away :  
So when the shott's requir'd, he (out of season)  
Reads currant rimes, but giues none other reason."

How grotesquely inapplicable is all this to Samuel Daniel! Evidently some red-nosed tavern rhymester (like Elderton) was hit at by both the Davieses.\* It is deplorable that Mr. A. H. Bullen follows in Dyce's footsteps without question.

RICHARD BARNFIELD—a true singer—seems to place the 'Complaint of Rosamond' and the 'Civil Wars' on an equality. Even acerb JOHN MARSTON does not suffer Bishop Hall to escape for his "envious eye" on Rosamond. EDWARD GUILPIN'S I value next to Spenser's invitation.

MICHAEL DRAYTON has perhaps been pressed too far—like Edmund Bolton earlier, whose idle talk possibly

\* The late Dr. Brinsley Nicholson first set me on the right scent. See Glossarial-Index under 'Dacus' for a note.

Drayton caught up. I am disposed to think that by "his manner better fitted prose" he simply meant that much of the 'Civil Wars' had 'better' have been written in, *e.g.*, the dulcet prose of the 'History.' But somehow Drayton, as one gets nearer glimpses of him, does not come out well. He has written imperishable things, but seems to have been of an atrabilious and suspicious nature, not without spice of malignant taking up of 'evil reports.' I must give one deplorable evidence from his Address to the Reader in the second part of 'Polyolbion,' where he thus addresses those who had not welcomed the first part very enthusiastically,—“I wish their folly may be hereditary from them to their posteritie, that their children may be [reduced to] beg for foode to the fifth generation, until it may be beyond the memory of man to know that there was any other of their families.”

The 'Returne from Parnassus' probably Daniel never saw or heard of. But the charge of "making use of others' wit" is a wholly unsupported one. Perhaps he was (wisely) counselled to give up his model of the Senecan tragedies, *e.g.* *Philotas* and *Cleopatra*. Be this as it may, our Poet is definite and unmistakable in his claim, that what he wrote was all his own, as he self-respectingly declares—

“What I haue done, it is mine owne, I may  
Do whatsoeuer therewithall I will.”\*

\* Cf. i. 12: and pp. 13-15. Dates clash, so that the 'Queen's Arcadia,' which was not presented to Her Majesty and her Ladies of the University of Oxford (Christ Church) until August 1605, could hardly have been pointed at (unless a later interpolation) in the 'Returne.' But Langbaine thus writes of it: "Whether the scene between Carinus and Amintas, the lovers of Cloris, be borrowed from any ancient poet, I know not; but sure

Arrived now at BEN JONSON, I reckon Gifford's elaborate and passionate vindications of him, in so far as Shakespeare is concerned, as uncalled for in the light of glory of the splendid homage prefixed to the folio of 1623. But abundant evidence remains that the traditional bricklayer had a loose and reckless tongue, and spared none who really or imaginarily crossed his path or refused to yield to his autocracy. An authentic anecdote—verifying all this and more—of the Cavalier poet Thomas Carew and Jonson, is preserved in a letter from James Howell to Sir Thomas Hauk, April 5th, 1636. I reproduce it here :—

“I was invited yesternight to a solemn supper by B[en] J[onson], where you were deeply remembered : there was good Company, excellent Cheere, choice Wines, and jovial welcome. One thing intervened, which almost spoiled the relish of the rest, that B[en] Jonson] began to engross all the Discourse, to vapour extremely of himself, and by vilifying others to magnify his

I am that in Monsieur Quinault's *La Comedie sans Comedie* there is a scene betwixt *Filence* and *Daphnis* in a manner the same (Act ii., sc. 4), as the two next scenes between the shepherds and their mistress Clomire exactly resemble the scene (Act ii., sc. 7) betwixt the swains Damon and Alexis, and the inconstant nymph Lauranda, in Randolph's ‘*Amyntas*’ (s.n.). Mr. Bullen says of the ‘*Returne*’ that it is “a sneer that seems ill justified” ; but I would scarcely call it a ‘sneer,’ accompanied as it is with such high praise of Daniel's native capacity. We could spare the whole of the ‘*Queen's Arcadia*’—a mere Inigo Jones spectacle—without sensible loss. And it does not touch the Poet's claim, “what I have done is mine own.” I do not like the duty, but it is again needful to state that Mr. Quiller-Couch's neat little theory of the ‘imitativeness’ of all great poets is pure assumption in the case of Daniel. One asks, Whom did he imitate ? What did he imitate ? Reminiscences of the Senecan tragedies, albeit these are shadowy, is one thing, and this imaginary imitativeness another and different thing. The ‘*Returne of Parnassus*’ has no reference whatever to the latter. Yet by itself the warbled poetic prose in the places is excellent (pp. 56 and 246-56), but to be read *cum grano salis*.

own Muse. T. Ca[rew] buzzed me in the ear, that though *Ben* had barrelled up a great deal of knowledge, yet it seems he had not read the *Etheques*, which among other Precepts of Morality, forbid Self-Condernnation," \*—with more, severer.

William Drummond of Hawthornden, in his 'Notes of Conversations,' tells us much the same thing—not spitefully or falsely, but in integrity. So finished a gentleman self-evidently was not 'taken' by his rough guest, notwithstanding his genius:—

"January 16 $\frac{19}{20}$ : He [Ben Jonson] is a great lover and praiser of himself; a contemner and scorner of others; given rather to lose a friend than a jest; jealous of every word and action of those about him (especially after drink, which is one of the elements in which he liveth). . . ."†

These two independent witnesses may well be left to discount Ben's repudiation of 'jealousy.' Not only so, but there can be no question (I think) that Daniel's place at Court as "licenser" of Masques and other entertainments stood in Jonson's way as he elbowed to the front.‡ Conceded that Jonson's "Masques" were an immeasurable advance on all others—only *Hymen's Triumph* holds its own—it is just possible that Daniel showed a sense of soreness against his pushing

\* Jacobs' edition of the famous 'Letters,' 2 vols. (1892), pp. 403-4.

† Cunningham's Gifford's Jonson *in loco*.

‡ On 31st January, 1603-4, Kirkham and others were licensed to form a company of "children of the revels to the Queen," with this proviso that "all plays" must be first "allowed by Sam. Danyell"; and again on 10th July, 1615, George Buck, Master of the Revels, wrote that "the king has been pleased at the mediation of the queen on behalf of Sam. Danyell, to appoint a company of youths to perform comedies and tragedies at Bristol under the name of the Youths of Her Majesty's Royal Chamber of Bristol"—Daniel then residing in the neighbourhood of Bristol. In 1618 the same post was conferred on John Daniel, the Poet's brother.

antagonist thereby. But it was ineffably mean on "rare Ben's" part to traduce our 'gentle poet' to his patron-friend the Countess of Rutland. Faults on both sides must perhaps be our verdict; but the greater with Jonson. Specifically he cannot really have read the "Civil Wars." For (as our quotation shows) he thus preposterously spoke of the poem: "Daniell wrott Civill Warres, and yet hath not one battle in all his book." The simple fact is that 'battles' abound, and in none of all the eight books do we need long to read to come on them. On this onward.

Nor was it less unrighteous in Jonson to parody and spoil the fine opening of 'Delia' (Sonnet 1)—

"Unto the boundlesse Ocean of thy beautie

Runnes this poor riuier, charged with streames of zeale,"

into

"Unto the boundless ocean of thy face

. . . . . with streams of eyes."

'Face' for 'beauty' and 'eyes' for 'zeal' was damnable.\*

WILLIAM BROWNE'S "well-languaged Daniel" I do not for one moment question was meant for noble praise. But unluckily it has been taken up as a kind of cuckoo note, and an exaggerated value placed on his mere wording. Even Professor Saintsbury pronounces it to have been an unusually penetrative discernment.

EDMUND BOLTON, I believe with Drayton, simply intended, by "fitter perhaps for Prose than measure,"

\* I half suspect that Daniel had Jonson in his thought when he wrote—

"So had I not beene tax'd for wishing well,  
Nor now mistaken by *the censuring stage*."

(Epistle, vol. iii., p. 102, ll. 104-5).

the too great literal historicity of much of the 'Civil Wars.' Otherwise his prior words, "a very pure and copious English," sound very like nonsense.

DR. THOMAS FULLER and JOHN PENNY come well together as mutually playing on the Poet's two names, 'Samuel' and 'Daniel.'

WORDSWORTH'S working into 'The Excursion' the noticeable lines from the 'Epistle to the Countess of Cumberland' and related note, I regard as one of the most precious recognitions of Daniel. The great Poet of our century was chary in taking anything from others, even the highest. Hence this placing of elect lines from Daniel in his 'Excursion' is the more memorable.\*

Leaving SOUTHEY to be re-read quietly by those who do not fall in with the depreciation of that good man, and in some respects man of genius, I hope every Reader will surrender himself to the kindling enthusiasm of the great COLERIDGE, and make it a point to turn up the references he makes. Far and away Coleridge is in my judgment the most sane, the most seeing, the most luminous of literary critics.

I am tempted to dwell on Lowell, Minto, Saintsbury, and Quiller-Couch, but each is so appreciative and whole-hearted that one may safely leave minor mistakes to be corrected (where not already done) by the student of Daniel. I content myself with a very few words on each.

*a.* JAMES RUSSELL LOWELL. As our Glossarial-Index abundantly evidences, it was too strong to put

\* With reference to Wordsworth's note, he is certainly mistaken in saying that Daniel found the italicised couplet in Seneca. There is nothing whatever in any manner of way resembling it in all the Senecan Plays. See more on this onward.

it, "Writing two hundred and fifty years ago, he stands in no need of a glossary, and I have noted scarce a dozen words, and not more turns of phrase, in his works that have become obsolete." Then, no one who knows will agree that in the 'Epistle to the Countess of Cumberland' he took for model Horace's *Integer Vitæ*. They differ *toto cælo*; and DERWENT COLERIDGE admirably meets such type of over-ingenuous scholarship by his remark on Hartley Coleridge's contrast between *the* Milton and his brother Sir Christopher—"Where there is no competition there ought not to be comparison" ("Marginalia," as before).\*

I think too that the general application (misapplication) of his quotation from the 'Masque at Court' will be recognised as uncritical. I for one like to find a jet of humour in his phrasing of—

"The *still* spectator must expect to have."

Was ever the decorum—the stiff propriety of a Court-audience better hit off? But the fault of faults by omission in Lowell's criticism is a revelation of how very superficial and second-hand was this somewhat omniscient critic's knowledge of his Author. I refer to the fact that he actually has not a syllable on perhaps the greatest elegiac lament in our tongue—for Stella's Devonshire. But much must be forgiven to the man who so unstintedly proclaimed the "imperishable stuff" of 'Rosamond,' 'Musophilus,' and the 'Defence of

\* Daniel himself in the 1603 folio title-page expressly announces that the "Certaine Epistles" are "after the manner of Horace" and not *Integer Vitæ* (Odes, b. i. 22), but Epistle (b. i., x) may possibly have been in his mind, albeit in the most shadowy way. Sir Theodore Martin in his Horace gives close parallels from Milton, Cowper, and Robert Burns, with *Integer Vitæ*, but Daniel yields none.

Rhyme.' With reference to the last, let the Reader who doubts slowly study the 'Defence,' and he will agree with every word of the eulogy. Nor would I forget to accentuate the basis of fact on which the splendid metaphor of the 'table-land' rests. Daniel does ascend and 'mount' and lift.

b. PROFESSOR MINTO. Like Lowell, this critic generalises from a chance quotation from a Masque. He shows slender knowledge of the emotion—the passion—the genuine feeling that informed the blood and warmed the imagination of Daniel. It is to me simply astounding how any man could read 'Delia' without recognising the lava-tide of emotion that beat in his now 'disdained' and now 'favoured' heart; while the 'Complaint of Rosamond' in its sweet pathos, and his 'Epistles' and incidents in the 'Civil Wars' reduce to grotesqueness such a dictum as this: "He was no master of strong passions; he never felt them, and he could not paint them." Comparison of Daniel's 'Cleopatra' with Shakespeare's is singularly inept; and how earless to miss the music of his lyrics 'Ulysses and the Siren' (Vol. I., pp. 270-72), and the delicious Spring Song or Ode, "Now each creature joys the other" (Vol. I., pp. 259-60)!

Neither our love for the winsome memory of Minto or gratitude for his actual literary achievements, or the inestimable value of his "other words" on Daniel, must blind us to his imperfect acquaintance with Daniel's Poetry. He passes over 'Musophilus' and the Devonshire Lament. No man who could do that—even a Lowell or a Minto—had real first-hand knowledge or insight or an ear.

c. PROFESSOR SAINTSBURY. I cannot but rejoice that my edition of the Verse of Daniel won from Professor Saintsbury such painstaking study, and drew from him in "picked and packed words" (if somewhat floreated) a verdict that is substantively sound and charmingly sympathetic. I owe him likewise an admirable examination of the Senecan Plays of Daniel\*—only I must add that therein he strangely forgot the 'Mirror for Magistrates,' Samuel Brandon, and Fulke Greville, Lord Brooke, the "Anthony" of the Countess of Pembroke—largely original as well as translated. These all belong to the same category.

There are four points in my good friend's criticism that I must notice:—

1. How could he overlook—like Lowell and Minto—the Devonshire Lament?

2. He recurringly speaks of Daniel's "lack of strength." This seems to me exceptionally uncritical. There is strength *and* strength. There is the tumid and turgid 'strength' say of *Festus*, and there is the disciplined and subtle 'strength' say of *Samson Agonistes*. Let the places indicated by Coleridge and

\* Vol. III., pp. vii-xi. I hope it is not ungracious to say that it seems to me very doubtful, after reading critically the whole of the Plays ascribed to Seneca, that Seneca really was his model in either *Cleopatra* or *Philotas*. *Certes*, no single thought or image is traceable to any one of them, albeit, oddly enough, in Thomas Newton's "Tenne Tragedies translated into Englysh" (1581), by Jasper Heywood, Studley, Nuce, young Nevyle, and Newton—one haps on occasional lines that must have been read by Daniel—*e.g.*, a Chorus in *Hercules Furens* recalls the Epistle to the Countess of Cumberland. It must also be remembered that Daniel himself expressly states in his Apology that *Philotas* was fashioned after the "ancient forme of a Tragedy," a phrasing that makes one think not of the debased and degenerate plays of Seneca, but of the Greek masterpieces. (Vol. III., p. 179.) See Glossarial-Index under 'Seneca' for a note.

by myself onward, be turned to and thought out, and it will soon be found that one special quality of Samuel Daniel is the inevitableness with which he rises when any 'strong' appeal is made to either his imagination or his patriotism. The simple 'strength' with which he works out a great metaphor is something wonderful, as Coleridge saw. Not only so, but intellectual strength characterises all through the thought, the emotion, the utterance of the Epistles, *e.g.*, to the Countess of Cumberland—Earl of Southampton—and the immortal Devonshire Lament. There is the pliant strength of a shirt of mail in all these and many others.

3. Like Professor Minto, he actually says "he can hardly be said to have had a spark of passion." My answer to the one professor must stand for answer to the other. On fit occasion Daniel throbbed and burned with 'passion.'

4. His observation "he rarely attempted, and probably would not have excelled in the lighter lyrical measures." Let the priceless 'Ulysses and the Sirens,' and the 'Spring Ode' already named, bear witness to the contrary.

*d.* QUILLER-BOUCH—the immortal 'Q.' It was a great joy to me to come on this *causerie*. In former footnotes and in Glossarial-Index I have felt conscience-bound to put right certain unexpected blunderings. But the criticism is to me—and I feel sure will be to all lovers of Daniel—of priceless worth for its tenderness and happy, however discursive, phrasing. I could hardly have wished a better closing of my 'testimonies.'

Having thus placed before my readers, actually and by references, a 'Century of Praise'—applying

Dr. Ingleby's title of his famous Shakespeare collection—of earlier on to later critics, and made such corrective and explanatory comments as seemed called for, I claim now for Samuel Daniel a high and sure place in our great Elizabethan-Jacobean literature on these SEVEN grounds:—

1. For his '*Delia*' sonnets, as being exquisitely wrought, and as having historically led Shakespeare to his Sonnet-form. I find more than art in '*Delia*'—I find a genuine record of the lights and shadows of a real passion.\* But for their art alone these sonnets were epoch-making. That they 'sing' only of love, never passing into the grandeurs of the Sonnet as it became in the hands of Milton and of Wordsworth, is not to be made a fault. It shows lack of a historical sense to think otherwise. As well complain that gas was not burnt in the days of candles. It was not till long after '*Delia*' that the Sonnet burst its narrow bounds and 'intermeddled' with every possible experience. Love, and only love, was its theme, save in merely laudatory and dedicatory Sonnets—e.g., Spenser, with the *Fairy Queen*, and Daniel's own commendatory Sonnets.

2. For his '*Complaint of Rosamond*.' This must ever abide unsurpassed for its pathos and delicacy and daintiness of workmanship.

3. For his already frequently designated Lament for the Earl of Devonshire and most of the 'Epistles.'

4. For 'brave translunary things' in every book of the 'Civil Wars.'

5. For 'Hymen's Triumph,' as melodious and

\* See Glossarial-Index under 'Love' for proofs.

gracious and equal to anything contemporary of the kind.\*

6. For his 'Defence of Rhyme.' Had he done no more than smashed Campion and Harvey's preposterous hexameter themes and vagaries, our national literature had been his debtor. Very fine too is his gracious and graceful early recognition of Campion's genius (apart from his verse-heresies).

7. For his choice English all through—Verse and Prose. There can be no question that he largely shaped and coloured our English tongue in its making. No writer of the period, or of any period, was so fastidious and painstaking in his composition and revision. Even his shorter poems invariably prove to have been retouched in different editions.†

Surely these Seven things do not go beyond Daniel's rightful claims. Surely our national literature had been poorer without any one of them. And surely, this being so, his memory is to be held in grateful affection, and his Works deserving of closer and sympathetic study?

At this point I am not unwilling to make an admission. I will concede that you need to have love and enthusiasm in your heart to carry you through the Works of Daniel. I have explained (I think) correctly all that was meant by Edmund Bolton and Michael Drayton. I recognise that the 'Civil Wars' as a whole

\* See Appendix to this 'Memorial-Introduction' for MS. various readings.

† It is stated *in loco* (i. 294) that there is an autograph MS. of the verse-address to Bp. Montague, in H.M. Public Record Office, London, but collation yields (except different spelling occasionally) only these two various readings: l. 7, 'can' for 'may,' and l. 63, 'with' for 'which.'

was more fit for Prose than measure. But with every concession along this line I protest against the merely incidental 'prosaic' in Daniel being taken as typical of his genius. So far from this being the case, the 'prosaic' in even the 'Civil Wars' is the merest tithe over-against the singing and ringing verse. Nay, more—just as in Wordsworth, who greatly admired Daniel, and, as we have seen, has worked in lines from him—by the very 'prosaic' nature of much of his blank verse and other poems, the more strikingly appears his inspiration when he is his true self, and girt about with his "singing robes"; so, in a sense, 'prosaic' may be allowed of a small proportion of Daniel's verse—ininitely less than in Wordsworth—but that leaves untouched the true poet's soul, his God-given dower of genius and song. *He is a Maker. He is a Singer.*

I hope this collection of the Works of Daniel will fall into the possession only of those who are willing to take pains to master a true Poet. Accordingly I place here pencil-markings in my own copy of the several volumes. I shall be disappointed if in any single instance the references given be not found rewarding, and a verification of all I have claimed for Daniel.

Vol. I.: pp. 35, 37, 40 (= v.), 42 (= viii.), 44 (= xii.), 46 (= xv.), 48 (= xvii.), 49 (= xx.), 52 (= xxiii.), 62 (= xxxviii.), 63 (= xxxix.), 64 (= xli.), 72 (= liii., copied many times), 75 (= lviii.), 76 (= lix.), 87, 88, 90, 96, 97, 104, 110, 111, 130, 162, 169 to 188, 198 to 202, 203 to 207, 209 to 212, 213 to 216, 217 to 219, 221 to 256.

Vol. II. : pp. 17, 22, 25, 28, 32, 37, 39, 44, 46, 47, 49, 53, 57, 59, 71, 73, 79, 80, 83, 85, 87, 90, 91, 97, 98, 101, 104, 109, 122, 124, 125, 134, 137, 149, 156, 177, 186, 191, 198, 199, 219, 223, 237, 249, 253, 266, 267, 268, 270, 271, 273, 284, 308, 318, 319, 322, 328. Some of the battles (with reference to Ben Jonson), 152, 156, 242, 248.

Vol. III. : pp. 26, 46, 47, 58, 59, 61, 62, 65, 67, 77, 78, 84, 86, 87, 90, 110, 112, 113, 119, 123, 134, 138, 143, 148, 151, 174, 202, 204, 232, 293, 298, 333, 338, 344, 352, 355, 373, 376, 385, 397.

Even these relatively full references are merely selective, or what have arrested myself in reading and re-reading. Doubtless others will be struck with different places. But if these be followed up and held in a firm grasp, no further plea will be needed to gain for Samuel Daniel love and homage as a born Poet.

In turning now to the Prose, my own verdict would be a mixed one. 'Well-linguaged' still holds of his vocabulary, and as a whole the narrative is well-wrought, often terse and memorable, while throughout there is a sense for literature very distinctive of Daniel's slightest work. But oftener than one would wish, the sentence-making is formless and merely cumulative clauses. I refer here to his 'History' alone; for his 'Defence of Ryme' is a piece of splendid English.

The merit of the 'History' is that he took pains and went to all available sources—not limiting himself, as Hallam with characteristic blundering says, "to the common authorities," but searching out primary MSS.,

and drawing on the rich resources of Sir Robert Cotton and William Camden and other of his scholar-friends.\* So that we have all along conscientious search and research for the truths of fact and facts of truth. His own claim is an extremely modest one, as follows :—  
 “For the Worke itselfe, I can challenge nothing therein but onely the sewing it together, and the observation of those necessary circumstances and inferences which the History naturally ministers.”† There is infinitely more than ‘sewing together.’ There is wide observation, penetrative pondering, sagacious insight of springs of action, acute and shrewd detection of motives and impulses, and a rare soundness of judgment amid conflicting opinions. I must also emphasise that the additional words, “the observation of these necessary circumstances and inferences which the History naturally ministers,” hardly prepares us for his statesmanly verdicts on men and things; his sagacious political teaching by events and characters; his innumerable axiomatic summaries; his wise aphorisms and sound common sense; his half-sarcastic, half-pitiful reflections on the doings of kings and nobles, with hard hits; nor for his thousand-and-one anecdotes, scattered from commencement to close, that yielded so many tit-bits, *e.g.*, to the quaint and learned Puritan commentator, John Trapp, M.A., who is never weary of citing ‘Mr. Daniel’s History.’

Shakespeare himself was not more proud of “this England” than Samuel Daniel.‡

\* See Glossarial-Index under Cotton; and iv. 75-6, etc., etc.

† Vol. IV., p. 83.

‡ See Vol. II., pp. 9, 10, 48, 54, 132, 195, 203, 222.

One characteristic of Daniel must be accentuated—that when the tidal wave of a great national event, or personality, or action that appealed to patriotism rolls in, he rises with it, is never submerged by it. Again and again I have found myself stirred in my blood (as with Michael Drayton's 'Agincourt') as I came on eloquent defences of the liberties of the people, and denunciations of however high-placed wrong-doers. As a Scot I honour Daniel supremely for his conception and estimate of Sir William Wallace and Robert Bruce and other national heroes, where everything tended to becloud the Historian's vision and prejudice him.\*

Now, having given my margin-jottings on the Verse, I place here the like on the Prose. I do not think any Reader is likely to regret giving the time required to turn to these references.

Vol. IV.: pp. 29 to 67, 79, 80, 81 to 83, 86, 87, 88, 89, 91, 92, 93, 95, 96, 97, 99, 101, 106, 108, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 122, 129, 132, 137, 140, 156, 160, 166, 167, 168, 176, 177, 181, 183, 194, 203, 212, 215, 223, 258, 259, 260, 263, 264, 266, 267, 268, 270, 271, 273.

Vol. V.: pp. 1, 7, 9, 10, 11, 14, 25, 28, 29, 31, 33, 35, 36, 37, 43, 44, 46, 67, 72, 75, 76, 79, 90, 95, 98, 100, 104, 105, 108, 112, 117, 118, 119, 120, 122, 124, 134, 139, 140, 142, 144, 148, 152, 153, 155, 157, 158, 161, 162, 163, 164, 166, 168, 170, 172, 174, 176.

\* See Glossarial-Index under 'Wallace' and 'Bruce,' and also under 'Wales.'

It will round off what I have thus far said and submitted, similarly to give references to Daniel's quiet but assured sense of his permanent after-fame wherever our English speech went. Some of the places will reward reflection on them: Vol. I., pp. 3, 4 to 7, 9, 10, 11, 12 to 15, 35.\*

I hope I have fulfilled my engagement of a 'Critical' second part to this 'Memorial-Introduction' sufficiently to be of some little help to those willing and wishful to be helped. I am not conscious of Macaulay's Boswellism. But I am free to confess that the more I have turned to and returned on these now completed Works, I have been the more drawn to Samuel Daniel. I venture also to assume that I have rendered some service to our national literature by being the first thus to collect and worthily present his Works, as it has been my privilege to have done with many others—*e.g.*, Fulke Greville, Lord Brooke (4 vols.), Richard Crashaw (2 vols.), George Herbert and Christopher Harvey (4 vols.), Andrew Marvell (4 vols.), Sir Philip Sidney (2 vols.), Phineas Fletcher (4 vols.), Sir John Davies (3 vols.), Henry Vaughan (4 vols.), Robert Greene

\* The following from 'Delia' are to be specially noted for the unmistakableness wherewith he assures his lady-love that she would owe her immortality to his Muse. One would have thought that so odd, not to say ungallant, a reminder none other would care to repeat. But those familiar with Elizabethan-Jacobean poetic literature know that it is not at all exceptional. Even Spenser so far forgot himself as to employ the like. But the queerest appropriation of the idea was by Thomas Carew: 48, 65, 66, 74, 75. I add pp. 112, 113; 187, 226, and vol. iii., pp. 24, 25, 26, 27. Cf. Carew (Ebsworth's ed., 1893), "In grateful beauty threatened" (p. 15); "A pastoral Dialogue" (p. 41). The following places beyond all question bewray reading of 'Delia,' pp. 3, 4, 5, 7, 21—not at all to Carew's dishonour.

(15 vols.), Thomas Nashe (6 vols.), Thomas Dekker (5 vols.), Dr. Gabriel Harvey (3 vols.), Nicholas Breton (2 vols.), Francis Quarles (3 vols.), John Davies of Hereford (2 vols.), Dr. Joseph Beaumont (2 vols.), Henry More (1 vol.), Abraham Cowley (2 vols.), Joshua Sylvester (2 vols.), and the long series of 'Unique and Rare Books,' etc., etc.

Anything else promised in 'Memorial-Introduction' (I. Biographical, II. Critical) or called for, will be found in the Glossarial-Index. I expressed a hope of adding somewhat to the facts of the Biography.\* But only one letter additional has turned up—at Hatfield. By the kindness of the Marquis of Salisbury I print here this letter, which it will be seen is almost parallel with that already given (I. xxii-iii) addressed to the Earl of Devonshire, and wherein he speaks of having "fully satisfied my L. of Cranborne."

"TO LORD VISCOUNT CRANBOURNE, 1605.

"Right honorable my good L:

"My necessitie I confess hath driven me to doo a thing unworthy of mee, and much against my harte, in making the stage the speaker of my lynes; w<sup>ch</sup> never heretofore had any other theater then the universall dominions of England w<sup>ch</sup> so long as it shall keepe the tongue it hath, will keepe my name & travayles from perishing. And for this tragedie of Philotas, wherein I sought to reduce the stage from idlenes to those grave presentments of antiquitie used by the wisest nations, I protest I have taken no other forme in personating the Actors that performd it then the very Idea of those tymes as they appeared unto mee both by the cast of the storie and the universall notions of the affayres of men; w<sup>ch</sup> in all ages

beare the same resemblances, and are measured by one and the same foote of understanding. No tyme but brought forth the like concurrencies, the like interstriving for place and dignitie, the like supplantations, rysings & overthrowes, so that there is nothing new under the sonne, nothing in theas tymes that is not in bookes, nor in bookes that is not in theas tymes. And therefore, good my Lord, let no misapplying wronge my innocent writing, w<sup>ch</sup> in respect of myne owne reputation, undertaking such a subject, I must not make frivolous, or unlike my stile, understanding the world & the probable course of those tymes. But yf it shall seeme skandalous to any by misconceiveing it, and your ho: be so pleased, I will finde the meanes to let it fall of it self, by withdrawing the booke & mee to my poore home, pretending some other occasion, so that the suppressing it by authoritie might not make the world to ymagin other matters in it then there is. Onely I would beseech my L: of Northampton & your ho: (seeing the tyme will yeald me no grace nor comfort & that my studies, my faculties are unnecessarie compliments of the season) to bestow some small viaticum to carry me from the world, where I may bury my self, & my writings out of the way of envie, & live in some other kind, more agreeing to my harte & the nature of my studies, and where yf you will doo me good I will labour to doo you all the honour & service I may, and be most faythfully

“Your honours in all humilitie,

“SAMUEL DANYEL.”

Addressed: “To the right honorable my worthy good L: “the Lord Vicont Cramborne” [*sic*].

Endorsed: “Mr. Samuel Daniel to my Lord, 1605.”

“1 p.”

[Hatfield] Cecil Papers, 191 / 123.

The Hist. MSS. Commission (pp. 163, 202), by Mr. Horwood, reports that at Longleat there is a letter

from Daniel to "Mr. Kirton, the Earl of Hertford's steward, dated 1608." But the Marquis of Bath and G. F. Warner, Esq. (head of the MSS. Department of the British Museum, who has all the Hertford Papers at present in his custody), informs me that no such letter exists at Longleat, and that Mr. Horwood must somehow have misread his note-book, mistaking a letter of a George Denham.

Somerset still owes the debt of a statue to her eminent son Samuel Daniel—cordially acknowledged to me by the late Mr. Kinglake the Historian (a Somersetshire man); and her Antiquaries might surely do something more to elucidate his life. "My withers are unwrung." I have done my level best.

ALEXANDER B. GROSART.

DUBLIN.

---

## APPENDIX.

*Drummond MS. of "Hymen's Triumph"*  
(III., pp. 325-98).

Among the Drummond of Hawthornden books is an Author's MS. of 'Hymen's Triumph.' I am deeply indebted to the learned librarian of Edinburgh University (H. A. Webster, Esq., M.A.) for the following little additions in Daniel's autograph, and which have never before been printed.

*"To the right noble Ladie, the Ladie of Roxborough.*

"That this small piece was (noble Ladie) borne  
 To be among those rites w<sup>ch</sup> did adorne  
 Y<sup>r</sup> worthy nuptialls, I rejoyce ; as one  
 Who ever long'd to have his wishes showne  
 In anything that might y<sup>r</sup> hono<sup>r</sup> sound,  
 For that great goodness I haue ever found ;  
 And, Madame, this much I would haue you know  
 That I must evermore confess to owe  
 All gratitude unto your nobleness ;  
 Who always haue been readie to express  
 Y<sup>r</sup> love to vertue & so doo me grace  
 W<sup>th</sup> all sincere proceeding, in your place.  
 W<sup>ch</sup> that the world from me may understand  
 Here, madame, I subscribe it w<sup>th</sup> my hand.

'SAMUEL DANYEL.'

The Song of the first Chorus (vol. iii., pp. 349-50) is likewise in Daniel's own hand, but has only two small various readings: in l. 456 'that' for 'a,' and l. 457 'Nor' for 'Not.'

These lines do not appear in the printed copy:—

"From the temple to the borde,  
 From the borde unto the bed ;  
 We conduct y<sup>r</sup> maydenhead :  
 Wishing Hymen to afford  
 All the pleasures y<sup>r</sup> he can,  
 'Twixt a woman & a man.  
 So merily we pass along  
 W<sup>th</sup> the ioyfull bridall song."

For a full account of the chequered life of Sir Robert Kerr, first Earl of Ancrum, whose first Nuptials 'Hymen's Triumph' celebrated, see the 'Dictionary

of National Biography,' *s.n.* Born 1578; died 1654. He was the eldest son of William Kerr of Ancrum, by Margaret, d. of Dundas of Fingask. He died in abject poverty in exile at Amsterdam. His dead body was arrested for debt, but Cromwell interfered and the funeral proceeded. The 'Letters' of this brilliant but unfortunate nobleman have been recently published. He had also a vein of poetry. The Lady of 'Hymen's Triumph' was his first wife—Elizabeth, d. of Sir John Murray of Blackbarony.

A. B. G.



I.  
PREFACE AND EPISTLES  
BEFORE  
PAULUS IOVIUS.

1585.

## NOTE.

Notwithstanding the title-page's designation of Paulus Jovius's treatise as "the worthy tract," it has long passed into oblivion and has no living interest. Hence we do not reproduce the treatise itself, as we must have done had it been Daniel's own original composition. But in our Memorial-Introduction II.—Critical, in the present volume, I give representative quotations to show its quality, and Daniel's usual excellent English even thus early. All still *quick* are (1) Daniel's Epistle-dedicatory to Sir Edward Dimmock; (2) N. W.'s Epistle to Daniel; and (3) Daniel's Essay by way of preface. These are inevitably included in his Prose. Below is the original title-page. Our exemplar is a fine one of the original and only edition (a duodecimo of 72 leaves = 144 pages).

A. B. G.

THE  
Worthy tract of  
Paulus Iovius, contayning a  
Discourse of rare inuentions, both  
Militarie and Amorous  
*called Imprese.*

*VVhereunto is added a Preface contay-*  
ning the Arte of composing them, with  
*many other notable deuises.*

*By Samuell Daniell late Student*  
in Oxenforde.



AT LONDON,  
Printed for Simon Waterfon.

1585.



# TO THE RIGHT

WORSHIPFUL SIR EDWARD

Dimmock, Champion to her Maiestie,

SAMVEL DANIEL wisheth

happie health with increafe

of Worship.




*He vnskilfull Statuarie  
wanting the twoo prin-  
cipall instruments of his  
science, iudgement, and  
art: hauing rudely fash-  
ioned the forme of either  
some Apollo or Cupid,  
& waighing therewithal,  
the basenes of his simple  
worke: by good aduise  
erecteth the same on the  
sommitie of some high  
Piller, to the end that  
both the errors therein*

*committed, may escape the narrow vewe of the captious,  
& likewise shadow all imperfections which might dislike  
the curious, both which he auoydeth by the distance of*

his loftie mounted statue, escaping thereby the staine of reproofe. In like maner right worshipfull, haue I aduē-  
 tured to place these my vnpolished labors on the Piller  
 of your worthines, craving the supportance of your fauor-  
 able protection. Whose / worthy name and Martial title  
 being enstamped in their forehead, shal adorne them with  
 a sufficiēt ornamēt to passe the vewe without reprehension.  
 And if herein I shall any way satisfie the delight of the  
 studious Gentlemen, you alone are to receiue the guerdon  
 of their fauorable voyces, whose offered courtesie hath  
 enforced me to vndertake the tillage of so hard a soyle,  
 to make you a present of the first fruites thereof: which  
 if they are not such as your vertues deserue or my affection  
 desires, yet spring they from the ground of a willing  
 minde. Solon ordayned that the Sacrifices offered to  
 the Goddes, should bee of as little cost as might bee, to  
 the ende that great expences might not hinder religion,  
 saying: the Goddes did onely accept the willing heart  
 respecting the pietie of the giuer, without waighing the  
 largenesse of the gift. And I hope my small Sacrifice,  
 proceeding from deuotion, shall be accepted on  
 the Aulter of your courtesie. To whom  
 he wisheth all happie felicitie, who  
 remayneth alwaies yours at  
 commaunde.

Samuel Daniell./



# TO HIS GOOD

FREND SAMVEL DANIEL,

N. W. Wisbeth health.



Knowe not whether to excuse your nature (good M. DANIEL) or blame your shamefastnesse, which so much laboreth (as the vtter enemy of your good name) to defraude your labors of their deserued Lawrell, & in despight of arte to deprive vs of so delicate inuētions, which the best wits in *Europe* haue dedicated to posteritie: wherein surely, you

iniurie your countrey men publicly, vnnaturally your friends, and vnaduisedly your selfe. But what can you pretend? The feueritie of Censors, the nice delicatenes of Courtiers, or the grauetie of Philosophers? What Philosophy taught you that? That which is currant may abyde the touch, the yong *Æglets* dare looke

vpon the Sunne, and that which is eloquently polished may abyde the presse. Why then may not your *Iouius* looke any man in the face, hauing arte to direct him, authoritie to defend him, all humanitie to pleade for him? If you misdoubt his grace in the Vniuersitie, the / Muses will giue him their voyces, if the suffrages of the holy virgins in the Courte, they are *Graces* themselves. If onely the multitude *Odi profanum vulgus & arceo*. For I suppose you remember the olde proverbs: that it is great trouble to make a Couche for a dogge, for that turning himselfe so variably, no man knoweth where to place the Pillowe: and so mutable and vnconstant is the multitude, that it is not for a wise man to indeuour to feede their humour or fit their fancies. Yet doe not thinke that euery prudent reader is like to wanton Mistresse *Æmilia*, who would ordinarily flout the first line she read: or to curious *Gonzaga*, surnamed the Carper, who no sooner heard a pretie inuention, but would recompence it with his gentell girkes: Or to *Theodorus* scollers, which receiued euery thing with their left hand, which their master gaue with the right, or to the *Hidropicus*, who hauing no iudgement of tastes, yet neuer liketh any sawce, and cõdemneth all Cookes. Therefore I would wish you as your frende, neuer to smother so sweete inuentions, for feare of Censors, who in words perhaps will debase it, which in deede they conceiue not, and controll that they cannot amende, neyther following the counsell of the wise, nor the example of the vertuous.

There is another point in your last letter, wherein you seeme to marre al that you haue made, / and dash that which so cunningly was deuised. For sooth you

blush to open another mans shop, and sell *Italian* wares as though you were a Bankrupt in philosophie, and could not afforde any pritie conceipt without borrowing or embefelling. I pray you Syr, shal *Castilio* be more reuerenced for his courtier, then *D. Clarke* admired for inuesting him with so courtlie robes? shall *Menander* be eternized for his *Comedies*, and *Terence* forgot who gaue them credit: Shall *Lambin*, *Cardan*, and *Scaliger*, and the most excellent Secretaries of nature, *Plinie*, *Matthiolus* & *Tolet*, shall they be lesse reuerēced, for perfecting knowledge, thē the old Philosophers for a shadowed inuention? shal the witte and capacitie of antiquitie sit in her throne, and disposition & iudgement of posteritie keepe the dore: no reason, the one deuifed, the other disposed. *Iouius* therefore is bound vnto you, both for absoluting and blazing his inuētions abroad in this famous Iland, and wee are beholding vnto you for reuealing them to vs: wherein truely both arte in translating, & knowledge in iudging, iustly may chalēge their fees. You cannot forget that which *Nolanus* (that man of infinite titles among other phantastically toys) truely noted by chaunce in our Schooles, that by the helpe of translations, al Sciences had their offspring: and in my iudgement it is true. The *Hebrewes* hatched knowledge, *Greece* / did nourish it, *Italie* clothed and beautified it, & the artes which were left as wards in their minoritie to the people of *Rome*, by Translators as most carefull Gardiners, are now deduced to perfect age and ripenesse. Cōcerning the nakednes of your stile (which troubleth you, without the colours or flourish of *Rhetorique*) *Tullie* commendeth it, al Translators approue it: and no man maketh so much accōpt of

the glosse as of the substance : of the gay Iuie bush as of the wine : Neither could it preiudice you at all (if it were naked as in deede it is pure) because you haue not done it as the *Sybaritæ*, that bad their guesstes a whole yere before the feast, to make some expectation of a sumptuous banket. A toye would require all brauerie : Vanitie all ornaments, and an Affe had neede of all his trappings. But your argument is such as can both moue and delight, tickle the eare and satisfie the minde. And our time also hath learned to lothe that od riming vaine, and to persecute the letter is cleane out of fashion, which begon by a bad portraiture of wit, and is ended by a ripe direction of iudgement. But why doe I rather aunswere the capcious, then satisfie the graue and modest, who at the first vewe (I dare presume vpon their wisedome) will subscribe to the supremacie of the wit of your newe Science. For if Courtiers are inwardly rauished in vewing the Picture of *Fia / metta* which *Boccace* limned. If Ladies entertaine *Bandel* or *Ariosto* in their Closets. If Louers imbrace their Phisition *Ouid* in extremitie of their passion : then will Gentlemen of all tribes, much rather honor your *Impresa*, as a most rare Iewell, and delicate *Enchiridion*. For here is not published a florish vpon fancie, or *Tarletons* toyes, or the sillie Enterlude of *Diogenes* : You professe not *Artem iocandi* or *Potãdi* : You discourse not of *Apuleius* Affe : You trifle not as *Cornelius* the *Brabantine*, who published (Anno 1582) an *Encomion* of *Tuftmockados* : But you present vs an order to frame *Deuises*, in shew glorious, in forme plain, in title straunge : the which is so much the more to bee esteemed, being deriued frõ the most pure springs *Lucas Contile*, and

*Ruscelli*, whom I cannot name without some Preface to their commendation. What should I recount *Dominicus* and *Alciat*, with whom you seeme to haue beene very familiarly acquainted, which addeth much credite to your worke, and notably hath giuen light to your studies. But concerning the arte of *Imprese*, I neede not draw the petigree of it, sith it is knowne that it descended from the auncient *Ægyptians*, and *Chaldeans*, in the Schoole of *Memphis*: who deuised meanes before Charecters were founde out, to vtter their conceiptes by formes of Beastes, Starres, Hearbes, (as you haue declared) and these notes were called *ιερογλυμφικα* / *i. sacræ notæ*. This Philosophie was increased by *Orus Niliacus*, and *Pythagoras*: & was more plainely reuealed by *Clemens*, *Pausanias*, *Atheneus*: & in this last age reuiued by *Pierius Valerian*. But to what end serued this? to shadow suerly their purposes and intents by figures. So counsayled *Plato*: So practised the first parents of Philosophie. As by the picture of a Stork they signified *Αντιπελαργία*. By a Serpent pollicie. By an Oliue peace. By a Gote lust: drawing these Charecters frō the world, as from a volume wherein was written the wonders of nature. Thus was the first foundations layd of *Imprese*: From hence were deriued by succession of pregnant wittes *Stemmata* Coates of Armes, *Insignia* Ensignes, and the olde Images which the *Romaines* vsed as witnessses of their Auncestors, *Emblemes* and *Deuises*. Then what was the intēt of these Ensignes and *Deuises*? What cause can bee pretended for them? What did they import? *Iamblicus* saith that they were conceiptes, by an externall forme representing an inward purpose: So *Fergusus* the first Scottishe King

did beare in his Standard a *Lion geules*, to bewray his courage, testifie his stomacke, and dismaie his aduersarie, which being well marshalled, is borne for the atchiuement of the Kinges euer since. So did the *Athenians* beare their Owle: the *Thebans* their *Sphinx*: the *Switzers* their Beare. But among all inuentions, surpasses for witt & art your *Imprese*: neither lesse renowned then the *Infignes*, nor lesse heroicall then the Armes called by *Paradin Symbola Heroica*, by *Simeon deuises illustres*. *Minoes*, a man otherwise excellently qualified in all humanitie, semeth neither perfectly to define *Impreses*, nor artificially to distinguish them from *Emblemes*. The sole worde *Symbolum* euery way is to large and generall a terme for them, ἐξ θυ ἐστιν καὶ μᾶς συμβαλλαν καὶ γνῶμαι, that note by which we know or cā cōjecture any thing, is *Symbolum*. Now in this scope and generallitie, how is it restrayned, how doth he measure and fit that word for *Imprese*? *Sumitur hic Symbolum pro argumento seu nota qua quod piam occultatur, sed doctis auribus intelligendum proponitur*. There is great ods (my good freend) betwixt this adumbration and your substantial definition. If we respect the forme it is lame, and why so? because there is no proper difference to supporte it. And this is an infallible ground: for seeing it comprehendeth all the former, *Standards*, *Liurees* & *Armes*, it is rather an vniuersall note then a speciall *Idea*: if we regarde the circumstances, it is very superficiall: if the final ende, confused. Now to come to the difference of *Emblemes*, and *Impreses*, what subtiltie doth he shewe in it? *Symbolum est genus, Emblema species*: This motion is to vniuersall, rather tending to deuide the *genus* then

to define the *species*: but the / difference must bee borrowed, from the properties: and because this is a case worthie to be demurred, let vs consult more curiously with our artistes, let vs conferre with our professor, what distinction maketh *Iouius*? I must excuse him as *Traian* did a certain Poet, *Plus est in arte quam in artifice*. For as *Minoes* iudgeth of him, *Artem hanc inchoauit potius quam perfecit*. But in deed these two conceipts are allied by so greate affinitie, their intents and pictures so vniforme, and cōsonant: that without sharpe insight wee cannot discypher their difference. *Emblema* is deriued of ἐμβάλλω. *interponere, inferere*: *quicquid interseritur ornatus gratia*, whether the inuention bee embrodered in garmentes, grauen in stone, enchased in golde, wrought in Arras: and in my opinion there is great *imparitie* betweene them, both in body and soule. They are disseuered by fondrie Cognifances, established by reason and confirmed by reading, and may bee authorisid by experience. The mot of an *Impresa* may not exceede three wordes. *Emblems* are interpreted by many verses. An *Impresa* is not garnished with many different Images, *Emblemes* are not limited. In *Deuises* it is enacted that the figure without the mot or the mot without the figure should not interpret the Authors meaning. In *Emblems* is more libertie and fewer lawes. *Impreses* manifest the special purpose of Gentlemen in warlike combats or chamber tournaments. *Emblems* are generall conceiptes rather of moral matters then perticulare deliberations: rather to giue credit to the wit, then to reueale the secretes of the minde. What should I say more? This *Impresa*, is that perfect *Symbolum*: for antiquitie

to bee reuerenced: for worthineſſe admired: for pleaſure embraced. Pardon me (I pray you) if I rainge a little & chaſe a diſcourſe in this ſo wide a Forreſt: let me recorde ſome monument of the olde Regiſters of *Greece*.

*Agamemnon* Soueraigne at the ſeige of *Troy*, bare in his ſheild a *Lion* ſaliant, with this mot οὗτος μὲν φόβος ἐστί βροτῶν. *Amphitruo* being encamped againſt the *Thebans*, cauſed to be portrayed vpon his *Target*, *Cum quadrigis ſol exoriens*, and breathed life into that body by this ſoule, *In arduo laurus*. *Artemeſia* to teſtifie her ſelfe a loyall wife to her Lorde and King wore in her *Tablet* an *Eliotropium*, riſing and falling with the *Sunne*, adding this mot, *Perſoluet vota pietas*, which was verified, for ſhe entered the aſhes of her ſlain huſband, in no other *Tombe* then in her owne body, ſo that death could ſcarſe diuorſe them. But let vs come nigher hande. *Vaſcus Gama* being diſwaded from the *Indian* voyage (neuer before attempted) erected a globe elumined with *Starres*, vpon a pillar of golde, with this ſentence *Vndique par: reſpe* / cting the auncient verſe, *Vndique ad ſuperos tantundem eſt viæ*. Haue not our *Printers* alſo of late honored this profeſſion? Haue they not bene at emulation for ingenious *Deuiſes*? *Stephen* glorieth in his tree, and moderateth thoſe (that loue to moũt by loftie witts) with this Poſie: *Noli altum ſapere*. (The tree of good and ill.) *Plantin* beareth a compaſſe in a hande ſtretched out of the cloudes which meaſureth all, *Constantia & labore*. I will omit *Griphius Episcopuſ*: I will forget all artificers, who commonly buy ſuch inuentions at the ſecond hand. I will not meddle with *Courtiers*, I will paſſe ouer the knowen *Impreſes* of *Moore* and *Cromwell*, a payre royall

of nobles. And now I will bring you to Church. A certain English Prelate, deuised a Lambe in a thorne bush, pitifully inflamed, yet casting his eyes cherefully vppon the Sunne with this mot. *Ne cede*. Tell me how you like this *Heroycall Impresa* of *Curtius Gonzaga*. *Tu ne cede malis sed contra auresius*. An *Egle* flying on high against the Sunne, with this word *pur che*, a parte of that verse of *Petrarche*. *Pur che ne godan gli orchì, ardan le piume*. For that which delighteth my eyes burneth my fethers. A frend of mine, whom you know, M. P. climbing for an *Egles* nest, but defeated by the *mallalent* of fortune, limned in his studie a *Pine* tree striken with lightning, carying this mot, *Il mio sperar*, which was borrowed also from *Petrarch*. *Allor che fulminato e morto giaacque il mio sperar che / tropp' alto mintana*. (*My hopes*.) Yet in despight of fortune he deuised also a Pinnacle or small Barke, tossed with tempestious stormes, and in the faile was written *expectanda dies*, hoping as I think for one Sunne shine day to recompence so many glomy and winter monethes. Therefore now to conclude, seeing your argument is plausible, the arte a noueltie, your first fruites ripe, what reason is there, why you should priuatly bestowe them of some one gentleman: especially cōsidering that you can please him no way better, then to pleasure his countrey mē. For who doth not know M. *Dimmock*, to be a gentleman by famely worshipfull, by loyaltie vnspotted, by office the Princes Champion: so also by curtesie worthy the Chronicle? what neede you thē to feare the mallice of the weakest enemy that may bee a carping tongue, hauing him for the Champiō of your booke, whom her Maiestie hath vouchsafed the Champion

of her person, or why feare you least our old *Academicks* improue your art for a toy, seeing that wisdome is not incorporated to Nightcaps, neither must wee depend vpon the verdite of some conceled Philosophers.

Thus am I bold to animate and encourage you to your credite, which if I haue done to long, so vppon occasion did *Tullio, Plato, Seneca*: if rudely, ascribe it to simplicitie, if sleightly to the rarenes of your arte: if to copiously / to a feruent desire: for seeing that *in verbis est aliquod præmium*, I had rather shewe my selfe to prodigall to my frends, then a snudge: which when you haue read, fier it.

From Oxenford the xx. of  
Nouember.

*Yours, N W.*

TO

TO THE FRIEND-  
LY READER.



*Thought it good (right worshipfull and curteous gentlemen) to communicate with you this delightful tract of strange deuises, barely clothed in an English habite, voyde of al such ornaments as are due vnto the worthines thereof: presuming vpon your wisdomes, who had rather gather a pleasant flower springing amongst the sharpe thornes, for the sweet sauour, then a gay colored weede for all the fayre semblance: esteeming the value of the precious treasure not by the outward shewe, but the inward substance, sith often we finde by triall meliora latere, and faire shewes to proue often fond shadowes. The tree Caliestephenon in Palestine, hath a corrupt barke, but a pure body: And well may a gallant blossome fit the humour of a delicate eye, when the gaynfull fruite shall satisfie the sauour of a discreet taste. But the Diamant hath ingendred a naturall forme, so that it neede no artificiall frame, a gay glosse may better beseeme a course / Kersey, then a fine Skarlet. My weake commendations of these notable and rare inuentions, may rather eclipse their credit, then purchase their fame, therefore I referre them to the censure of your considerate readers, for whose better vnderstand of the Imprese of Paulus Iouius (who*

*in many places haue erred from the common receiued precepts) I haue gathered into a certayne order the way of framing and composing all such kindes of deuises both militarie and amorous vsed at this day of the noble gentlemen of Europe, in adorning their glorious triumphes, or declaring their inward pretended purposes and enterprizes, not by speach or any apparent maner, but shadowed vnder a certayne vayle of formes or figures in such sort as shall hereafter be declared. And although that to signifie our intentions by these formes or figures of creatures, be not a thing more notable then speech or writing; which perfectly doe manifest any operation, whereas the other doth doubtfully discouer our pretences. Yet I say, that to represent vnto the sence of sight the forme or figure of any thing, is more natural in act, & more cōmon to all creatures then is hearing, and thereupon sayth Aristotle, that we loue the sence of seeing, for that by it we are taught and made to learne more then by any other of our senses: whereby we see that all men naturally take delight in pictures, and euen litle children as soone as they can vse their hands at libertie, goe with a Cole to the wall, induoring to drawe the forme of this thing or that. This naturall disposition hath | raigned generally euen from the beginning when the worlde was but yet new, and induced nations first to figure beasts, plants, trees, celestially signes, and such like, obseruing the nature and qualitie of euery creature represented by their figures, whereby in time they became able to shewe their intent to their frends and others vayled vnder the forme of these creatures, in which facultie the Ægyptians were most singulare as the first authors of this Hieroglyphicall art: as well do witnesse their sacred Colomnes dedicated to*

Mercurie, whereon were diuers formes and pictures wrought and engrauen, contayning great knowledge, which they called Hieroglyphi, To the which pillers Plato is sayde to haue gone and retourned with great profit. Yet notwithstanding, in my opinion their deuise was vnperfect, by reason of the diuersitie of the natures of beastes and other things which they figured. Whereupon they who drewe more neere vnto our time seemeth to haue brought this art to perfection, by adding mots or posies to their figures, whereby they couertly disclose their intent by a more perfect order. Moreouer besides the figuring of things corporall and of visible forme, men haue also represented things incorporal, which they could not doe more fitly then by colours, as representing sorowe by blacke, desire to shed bloud by red, puritie by white, &c. And now sith time hath brought to perfection many notable deuises, which rude antiquitie could not discerne: Let vs consider by howe many wayes we may discouer our secret intentions by | colours and figures, as first by Liurees, secondly by Ensignes, thirdly by mots, and lastly by Imprese, of which foure kindes of Deuises, I purpose to set downe distinctly in fewe words their significations and properties, according to the opinion of the best authors which euer haue written of this matter.

This worde Liuree is borrowed of the Spanishe, which they write with b, librea, but pronounce it as written with v. Some say it had his Etemologiè of Libro, for that Liurees are as an opè booke where a man may reade the intent of him which weareth them. Some also will haue it deriued of Libero, and that for two reasons, the one, in that from the beginning it hath beene a profession onely of Gentlemen, and noble personages: and although

*that seruants do commonly weare these Liurees, yet are they not said to be their owne but their patrones. For Plutarch in the life of Solon saith, that seruantes were forbidden any free exercise. The other reason may bee, for that the Authors setting them to the common view, being not altogether apparent, commit them libero iudicio, to the free iudgement of the Interpreter. Some will haue it brought from the Latin, Liber eram, for that the principall purpose of Liurees haue been to shew some amorous seruice, and for this onely intent were they first inuented at the beginning, to shew that they which did weare them, were no more free of them selues but subiect seruantes to their Mistrisses: as who should say, Liber eram, I was free, but now bound: according to that of Virgil, / fuimus Troes.*

*It is said that Liurees of only colours, had their originall after this manner: that the Gentlemen which loued or rather (to speake after the Spanish or Neapolitan manner) which serued any Lady, with that amorous kinde of seruice, which is vsed in those places, were accustomed, to marke with what coloured robe their Mistrisse was inuested, to the end to decke them selues with apparell of the same colour & cut. But some supposing that to be to great a presumptiō, thought rather to addresse themselves in a habite of the same colour, as did the domesticall seruantes of their Ladie, to denouate humilitie, and shew them selues readie for any seruice commaunded by her souerantie: Yet now, for diuers respects, in this our time the discrete Gentlemen bound to the performance of this strict Obligation of faith and secrecie, haue deuised a closer couert for their amorous conceiptes, by colours and figures in their Liurees, which are now*

more commonly called Deuises, in all the most flourishing Countries of Christendome : which also is not forgottē of Ariosto, in these verses following, recounting the Deuise of Bradamante, whereby she expressed her dispayre, and desire to die.

*Era la soprauesta del colore  
Di ch' esser suol la foglia, che s'imbianca,  
Quando dal ramo è tolta, è che l'humore  
Che facea uiuo l'arbore, le manca :  
Ricamata à tronconi, era di fuore  
Di / cipresso, che mai non si rin franca  
Poi ch' ha sentito la dura bipenne  
L' habito al suo dolor molto conuenne.*

*Thus in effect in English.*

Her vpper robe of such like colour was,  
As is the fading leafe of palish hew  
Whē from the bowe the liuely sap doth passe  
Which nourish did the stock whereon it grew  
Embrodered al with braunches thick aboue,  
And fading bowes of dolefull Cipresse tree :  
Which cut with deadly axe doth neuer proue  
This habit with her grieve did well agree.

*There are first, diligently to be obserued in these Deuises or Liurees three things : The time when : The place where : and the maner how they are to be used. Concerning the time : they are neuer worne but either in true or fained warre, or at Iusts, Turneis, Maskes, or at such like extrauagant shewes. The place fit for them, are on armed men or Maskers, worne in such place as*

they best like about their persons : albeit the Helmet, the Shielde, the Bardes, the borders of the garment, or the breast, are the fittest places appointed for them. The maner of using them is diuers, according to their species : but first generally you are to obserue this, that they bee not too intricate, in greate number, nor so confused that they neede some Apollo to resoluē them. Peticularly it behoueth to note the deuision of | their species which are of al kindes of Deuises or Liurees fixe. The first consisteth altogether of colours : The second of colours and figures : The third of colours and letters : The fourth of colours, figures and letters : The fifth of figures onely : The sixth of figures and letters. Concerning the first, colours alone, are now seldome used but of Mourners, or such like. As for example, a certaine Gentleman on a time, hauing ill successe in his amorous seruice, and spending his time in dolor and grieve, was aduertised that the wife of a certaine freende of his was departed this life, whereupon it behoued him to put on mourning apparell : and hauing occasion to shewe himselfe at a feast, he clothed him in blacke Grogran drawne out with Taffatie, & both cut on blacke Damaske, in such sorte that the Damaske was best seene to bee blackest : which mourning habite was no soner seene of such as knewe the historie of his loue, but they perceiued what it signified, as well as if he himselfe had declared it : and greatly did they commend the inuention. For with the vppermost blacke he represented sorowe for the dead : with that vnderneath he mourned for his freend, but his owne blacke appeared more and signified some greater grieve, and that of his frend seemed lesse, and represented lesse in effect. For in his opinion lesse grieve was it to bee

deprived of a wife, sith she is called to the heavens, then to stand secluded from the fauour of a proude disdainefull dame, whilest an other enioyes the fruite of his deserued affections. But to retorne to our purpose, Liurees of / onely colours, and also with colours and figures are wont to serue in effect, but for the shewe of one day, either at Iusts, Maskes, or other solemne festiuall sportinges, where are commonly assembled a great multitude of people: and to the end that Gentlemen and Gentlewomen (which giue the vew but as they passe by, among so great a companie) may not stande to muse about the intention of the subiect, there is vsed a mot to declare the meaning, & these kinde of mots pertayning to Liurees, are to bee composed in the same language which is there vsed where they are presented: and it is requisite they bee shorte so that they exceede not two of our verses: very rarely are they made of foure, yet so they may be if neede require. These mots so composed serue for colours alone, or els for colours accompanied with figures, or with figures alone: and when they shalbe ioyned with colours alone, yet are they called Liurees, when with colours, figures and the mot, which shall exceede three wordes being manifest of it selfe and seruing for no other purpose but to declare the signification of the colours and figures, they are likewise then called Liurees or Insegnes, and as I haue before sayd, they serue only for one day. These last properties rehearsed, that the mot may passe three wordes, and that it must be plaine and manifest, seruing onely to disclose the meaning of the colours and figures: note well, for therein consisteth the difference betweene Liurees and Imprefes, which are altogether diuers. The ignoraunce of which distinction deceiued many in the / composing of

Imprefes. And also Iouius him self in his discourses following was greatly ouersene in putting no difference betweene Imprefes, Liurees, and Insegnes, as you may plainely perceiue. This worde Insegne is taken from the Latin, by the which is signified Standards, Banners, and also the Helmets of the chiefe Souldiers and Captaines, as may appeare in this verse of Virgil.

*Danaumque insignia nobis.*

Aptemus Clypeos, but chiefly it is now taken for Standards or Banners, which are capable of all such properties mentioned before in Liurees, as either of colours alone, as when they are all red, all white, all blacke, &c. Or when they are of seuerall colours, as white and red, or in like maner of any other. To them also may bee added mots, as many notable men haue vsed of late time : & also colours with figures, or figures alone : all in such maner as hath bene shewne in Deuises or Liurees. The Ensigne is also fit for Imprefes, of the which I am hereafter to speake, and many therein set the Armes of their house : whereof to recite examples this shorte Preface will not afforde, sith ech of them seuerally require a whole volume : only suffice it, briefly that we touch them, to the end we may the better vnderstande the forme of Imprefes : which before I come to hädle, it is necessary that I say somewhat of Mots, which truely are of great excellencie if they bee gallantly composed. And first this word mot signifieth as much as Gnome, a shorte sentence or Posie, whose places are diuers. Some vse | to set them on gates, as that which (according to the fiction of the Poet) was set on Hell gate. *Lasciate ogni speranza voi chi intrate.* Lay aside all hope, all you which enter in.

A ridiculous mot or posie is not to be vsed but in some

occasion of maskes, or to quip an enemy, as for example, a certaine Cardinal in Rome for some offence being imprisoned, and after put to death, it was bruted abroade, that the Pope had done it to pleasure two of his Nephewes with his liuings, wherupon one liuely pictured the Iayd Cardinall on the Crosse, and the two yong Cardinals preferred to his liuings, at his feet beholding him with this Posie in their hands, Crucifixus etiã pro nobis. But the mots which are chiefly used, are either amorous or graue, & they beare a great grace if they be perfectly cōposed with their circūstances & properties, so that they be short, & excede not if it be possible a verse in any tongue. Yet Latin & Greek verses of six feete are to long to be used whole, wherefore of thẽ it is better to take a part, as nullū scelus error habebat. And better are they esteemed being takẽ out of some famous author. As out of Ouid, Horace, Catullus and other Latin Poets, out of Homer, Hesiodus, Callimachus, or any good author of the Greekes out of Petrarch, Deuine Ariosto, Dãte Bembo, and other famous in the Italian tōgue, & aboue all, if it be possible, let them leaue some scruple whereon to meditate, to him who either readeth or heares them: and it is lawfull to vse them without figures, although that Paulus Iouius vainly termeth | them so used, soules without bodies.

There is also another kind of Deuise called in Italian, Cifre celate, which many haue heretofore used being ignorant of Imprese: which inuention is onely for youth, and very vnfit for men of grauitie, seruing thẽ but to sport with their Ladies, by cōuaying their names into some Posie or figure, which they ware in tokẽ of their seruice: of this kind you shal find fit examples in Paulus

*Iouius, which I haue noted in the Margent. The inuention is altogether barraine, and utterly disliked of the wise.*

*Thus hauing briefly touched the principall points of the former Deuises, it resteth that I say somewhat of Impreses, which is the most notable, ingenious and perfect king of all other. And first to declare the signification of the worde, with the diffinition, I say, that Impresa is vsed of the Italians for an enterprise, takē in hand with a firme & constāt intēt to bring the same to effect. As if a Prince or Captaine taking in hand some enterprise of war, or any other perticulare affaire, desirous by some figure & mot to manifest to the world his intēt, this figure & mot together is called an Impresa, made to signifie an enterprise, wherat a noble mind leueling with the aime of a deepe desire, striues with a stedy intēt to gaine the prise of his purpose. For the valiāt & hautie gentlemen, disdayning to cōioine with the vile and base Plebeians in any rustique inuention, haue procured to thēselues this one most singulare, which time hath now at length persited and rought into a more regulare order. And the chiefe places whereon | they vse to weare these their Impreses are their Standards, Shields, Helmets, Brooches, Tablets or such like. The time when, is either in Warres, Iusts, or amorous seruices. And you are to note, that Impreses are not Hereditarie, as are Armes, for the sonne may not vse the Impresa of father, nor the successors of their ancestors, and it behoueth that they be of no other colours, saue onely blacke and white, vnlesse it be rather to adorne them, then for any necessitie, and chiefly in the composing of them, are to be noted these fve properties. First, that they haue not many kinds of*

different formes, for at the most there can be but three, in a perfect Impresa, vnlesse they be parts of the whole : as the Sunne, Moone and Starres represent onely the heauens, which may be the intent of the Impresa : or as many trees, flowers and herbs, represent onely a Garden. As for example, a certayne gentleman figured a garden with Palmes, Bayes, Marigolds and Roses, with this mot, *Tu hæc omnia*, to signifie that his mistresse deserued the Palme for her beautie, & that she was free frõ the assalt of Loue as is the Lawrell frõ the wrath of the heauens, that she drewe the eyes of his mind after her, as doth the Sunne the Marigolde, and that by the vertue of her comfortable lookes she reuiued his heart, as doe the ioyful beames the blowming Rose. But now in any other case diuers formes are not to be used.

Secondly, the mot or posie of an Impresa may not exceede three words, vnlesse it be composed of some / of these. *Dum. Nec. Et. Non. In. Per. Aut. si. Cum. Vt.* and then may it haue foure, as *Nec spe nec metu*.

Thirdly, that the mot be taken out of some famous author. This precept is good, but not alwayes necessarie.

Fourthly, that it be not altogether manifest nor too too obscure, neither yet triuiall or common.

Fifthly, that the figure without the mot, or the mot without the figure signifie nothing, in respect of the intent of the author, and this precept is of great importance, for many ignorant hereof, haue composed Imprese altogether vayne and voyde of all inuention. As when the figure of it selfe or the mot of it selfe, suffice to declare the meaning : wherfore either the one or the other is superfluous. As he which figured a Harte in the midst of fire, with this mot, *Il cuore ho in fuoco*, I haue my Harte in fire, or

as he which depainted a Cupid, with his Bowe & shafts, & thereunto this verse, A gli strali d' amor son fatto segno. To Cupids shafts I am ordayned the Butte. Or not vnlike to that of him in Iouius, which figured a Chimney with a great fire and smoke, with this mot. Doue è gran fuoco è gran fumo, Where there is great fire, there is great smoke, in all which the mot without the figure, or the figure without the mot, might haue serued the purpose as well. But if vnto the fire & smoke had bene added this mot, Vtrūq; simul, the Impresa had beene most perfect. The like / defect had that of Borgia, which likewise Iouius doth mention, which was the mountayne Acroceraunii, wherunto, if in stede of feriunt summos fulgura montes had bene added Humiliora minus, or humiliora nunquam, therein had wanted no perfection. Iouius also addeth for a precept in the rules of Imprese, that in them there ought to be no humayne forme: which precept is most true, if it be in the ordinarie and simple forme of a man, for that rarenes is rather delightfom: but yet when the humaine forme shalbe in a strange & vnaccustomed maner, it beareth a great grace. As did that of Sinior Bernabo Adorno, being inamored of a noble and vertuous Lady, who often certified him both by speach and writing, that the arrowes of loue could not enter or passe farther then her gowne. Whereupon the Gentleman composed an Impresa which was a Cupid, holding in one hand the vaile of his eyes, and in the other hand an Arcobuze settled to his brest, as if he were readie to discharge it, and thereunto this mot, Hoc peraget. To signifie that he had omitted no seruice, deuotion, or loyaltie in his pursute, which are the onely maynshotte of Loue, and are

*able to batter the bulwarke of a rigorous breast, and make the most flintie heart to yeeld.*

*Thus haue I in fewe words (gentlemen) declared the properties of a perfect Impresa, to the end your choyce therein may be currant, sith many deceiue themselves with a counterfeit. And so wishing the happie successe of all your vertuous Impreses and godly | pretences, I referre you to the reading of Paulus Iouius, till time my studies shall yeeld you a better present of the like subiect.*

*S. D.*

NOTE.—Throughout, the spelling and punctuation, etc., of Daniel is adhered to. For the (relatively) few words and names needing explanation, see Glossarial Index, in Vol. V., s. v.

A. B. G.



The first of these was the discovery of gold in California in 1848. This discovery led to a great influx of people to California, and the state became a great source of wealth for the United States. The second was the discovery of oil in Texas in 1859. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Texas, and the state became a great source of wealth for the United States. The third was the discovery of silver in Nevada in 1859. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Nevada, and the state became a great source of wealth for the United States.

The fourth was the discovery of copper in Arizona in 1851. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Arizona, and the state became a great source of wealth for the United States. The fifth was the discovery of gold in Colorado in 1859. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Colorado, and the state became a great source of wealth for the United States. The sixth was the discovery of silver in Idaho in 1860. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Idaho, and the state became a great source of wealth for the United States.

The seventh was the discovery of gold in Montana in 1862. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Montana, and the state became a great source of wealth for the United States. The eighth was the discovery of silver in Utah in 1863. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Utah, and the state became a great source of wealth for the United States. The ninth was the discovery of gold in Wyoming in 1869. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Wyoming, and the state became a great source of wealth for the United States.

II.

A DEFENCE OF RYME.

1607.

#### NOTE.

For our exemplar of the 'Defence of Ryme' (distinct from that in the 'Small Workes' of 1607) I am indebted to the British Museum (C. 34. a. 2). The title-page is given opposite. See on it and Hazlewood's reprint, our Memorial-Introduction II.—Critical, in the present volume.

A. B. G.

A  
D E F E N C E  
O F R Y M E,

Against a Pamphlet  
entituled :

*Obferuations in the  
Art of Englifh  
Poefie :*

Wherein is demonftratiuely  
prooued, that *Ryme* is the  
fiteft harmonie of words  
that comports with our  
language.

By  
SAMVEL DANIEL.



L O N D O N :  
Printed by *Melch. Bradwood*,  
for *Edward Blount*.

1607.

(18<sup>mo</sup>)

A  
DEED  
OF HOMES

IN THE  
COUNTY OF  
SHERBORN  
IN THE  
STATE OF MASSACHUSETTS

BEFORE ME, the undersigned authority, on this day personally appeared  
the within and acknowledged to me that he was the lawful owner of the within and that he executed the within for the purposes and consideration therein expressed.

WITNESSED my hand and seal of office this day of 189



NOTARY PUBLIC,  
STATE OF MASSACHUSETTS.

189

189



To all the Worthy *Louers*, and  
*learned Professors* of Ryme, within  
his Maiesties Dominions.

S. D.



*WORTHY* Gentlemen, about a yeere since,  
upon the great reproach giuen to the  
*Professours* of Ryme, and the vse  
thereof, I wrote a priuate Letter, as  
a defence of mine owne vndertakings  
in that kinde, to a learned Gentleman,  
a great friend of mine, then in Court. Which I did,  
rather to confirme my selfe in mine owne courses, and  
to hold him from being wonne from vs, then with any  
desire to publish the same to the world.

But now, seeing the times to promise a more regard to  
the present condition of our writings, in respect of our  
Souereigns happie inclination this way; whereby we are  
rather to expect an incouragement to goe on with that  
we doe, then that any innouation should checke vs, with  
a shew of what | it would doe in another kinde, and  
yet doe nothing but depraue: I haue now giuen a greater  
bodie to the same argument: and heere present it to your

view, vnder the patronage of a noble Erle, who in blood and nature is interess'd to take our part in this cause, with others, who can not, I know, but holde deare the monuments that haue beene left vnto the world in this maner of composition: and who I trust will take in good part this my Defence; if not as it is my particular, yet in respect of the cause I vndertake, which I heere inuoke you all to protect. SA. D.





To  
William Herbert Erle of Pembroke.



HE generall custome and vse of Ryme in this Kingdome, Noble Lord, hauing beene so long (as if from a grant of Nature) held vnquestionable; made mee to imagine that it lay altogether out of the way of contradiction, and was become so naturall, as we should never haue had a thought to cast it off into reproch, or be made to thinke that it ill-became our language. But now I see, when there is opposition made to all things in the world by words, we must now at length likewise fall to contend for words themselues; and make a question, whether they be right or no. For we are told how that our measures goe wrong, all Ryming is grosse, vulgar, barbarous: which if it bee so, we haue lost much labour to no purpose; and for mine owne particular, I can not but blame the fortune of the times and mine owne Genius, that cast me vpon so wrong a course, drawn with the current of custome, and an vnexamined example. Hauing beene first encourag'd and fram'd

thereunto by your most worthy and honorable mother, and receiued the / first notion for the formall ordering of those compositions at *Wilton*, which I must euer acknowledge to haue beene my best schoole, and thereof alwayes am to holde a feeling and gratefull memorie. Afterward, drawen farther on by the well liking and approbation of my worthy Lord, the fosterer of me and my *Muse*, I aduentured to bestow all my whole powers therein, perceiuing it agreed so wel, both with the complexion of the times and mine owne constitution, as I found not wherein I might better imploy mee. But yet now, vpon the great discouery of these new measures, threatning to ouerthrow the whole state of Ryme in this Kingdome, I must either stand out to defend, or els be forced to forsake my selfe, and giue ouer all. And though irresolution and a selfe distrust be the most apparent faults of my nature, and that the least checke of reprehension, if it fauour of reason, will as easily shake my resolution as any mans living: yet in this case, I know not how I am growen more resolu'd, and before I sincke, willing to examine what those powers of iudgement are, that must beare me downe, and beat me off from the station of my profession, which by the law of Nature I am set to defend.

And the rather for that this Detractour (whose commendable Rymes, albeit now himselfe an enemy to Ryme, haue giuen heretofore to the World the best notice of his worth) is a man of faire parts and good reputation, and therefore the reproch forcibly cast from such a hand may throw downe more at once than the labours of many shall in long time / build vp againe,

ſpecially vpon the flipperie foundation of opinion, and the World's inconstancy, which knowes not well what it would haue, and

*Discit enim citius, meminitque libentius illud  
Quodquis deridet quā quod probat et veneratur.*

And he who is thus become our vnkind aduerſary, muſt pardon vs if we be as iealous of our fame and reputation, as hee is deſirous of credit by his new-old arte, and muſt conſider that we cannot, in a thing that concerns vs ſo neere, but haue a feeling of the wrong done, wherein euery Rymer in this vniuerſall Iland, as well as my ſelfe, ſtands intereſſed. So that if his charity had equally drawen with his learning, he would haue forborne to procure the enuie of ſo powerfull a number vpon him, from whom he can not but expect the returne of a like meaſure of blame, and onely haue made way to his owne grace, by the prooſe of his abilitie, without the diſparaging of vs, who would haue beene glad to haue ſtood quietly by him, and perhaps commended his aduenture, ſeeing that euermore of one Science an other may be born, and that thoſe ſalies made out of the quarter of our ſet knowledges, are the gallant proffers only of attemptiue ſpirits, and commendable, though they worke no other effect than make a Brauado: and I know it were *Indecens & moroſum nimis, aliena induſtriae, modum ponere*. We could well haue allowed of his numbers, had he not diſgraced our Ryme: which both Cuſtome and Nature doth moſt powerfully defend: Cuſtome, that is before all Law: Nature, that is aboue all Art. } Euery language hath her proper number or / meaſure fitted to uſe and

delight, which, Custome entertaining by the allowance  
 of the Eare, doth modernize and make Naturall. All  
 verse is but a frame of wordes confinde within certaine  
 measure; differing from the ordinarie speech, and  
 introduced, the better to expresse mens conceits, both  
 for delight and memorie. Which frame of words  
 consisting of *Rithmus* or *Metrum*, Number or measure,  
 are disposed into diuers fashions, according to the  
 humour of the Composer, and the set of the time:  
 And these *Rhythmi*, as *Aristotle* sayth, are familiar  
 amongst all Nations, and *è naturali & sponte fusa*  
*compositione*: And they fall as naturally already in our  
 language, as euer Art can make them; being such  
 as the Eare of it selfe doth marshall in their proper  
 roomes, and they of themselues will not willingly bee  
 put out of their ranke; and that in such a verse as best  
 comports with the nature of our language. And for  
 our Ryme (which is an excellencie added to this worke  
 of measure, and a Harmonie farre happier than any  
 proportion Antiquitie could euer shew vs) doeth adde  
 more grace, and hath more of delight then euer bare  
 numbers, howsoever they can bee forced to runne in  
 our slow language, can possibly yeeld. Which whether it  
 be deriu'd of *Rhythmus* or of *Romance*, which were songs  
 the *Bards* and *Druides* about Rymes vsed, and thereof  
 were called *Remensi*, as some Italians holde; or  
 howsoever, it is likewise number and harmonie of  
 wordes, consisting of an agreeing sound in the last  
 syllables of seuerall verses, giuing both to the eare an  
 eccho of a delightfull report, and to the Memorie a  
deeper / impression, of what is deliuered therein. For  
 as Greeke and Latine verse consists of the number and

quantitie of syllables, so doth the English verse of measure and accent. And though it doth not strictly obserue long and short syllables, yet it most religiously respects the accent: and as the short and the long make number, so the Accute and Graue accent yeeld harmonie: And harmonie is likewise number; so that the English verse then hath number, measure and harmonie in the best proportion of Musicke. Which being more certaine and more resounding, workes that effect of motion with as happy successe as either the Greeke or Latine. And so naturall a melodie is it, and so vniuersall, as it seemes to be generally borne with all the Nations of the world, as an hereditarie eloquence proper to all mankind. The vniuersalitie argues the generall power of it: for if the Barbarian vse it, then it shewes that it swaies the affection of the Barbarian: if ciuill Nations practise it, it proues that it works vpon the hearts of ciuill Nations: if all, then that it hath a power in nature on all. *Georgieuz de Turcarum moribus*, hath an example of the Turkish Rymes iust of the measure of our verse of eleuen syllables, in feminine Ryme: neuer begotten I am perswaded by any example in *Europe*, but borne no doubt in *Scythia*, and brought over *Caucasus* and *Mount Taurus*. The Sclauonian and Arabian tongues acquaint a great part of *Asia* and *Affrique* with it: the Moscouite, Polacke, Hungarian, Germane, Italian, French, and Spaniard, vse no other harmonie of words. The Irish, Briton, Scot, Dane, Saxon, / English, and all the Inhabiters of this Iland, either haue hither brought, or heere found the same in vse. And such a force hath it in nature, or so made by nature, as the Latin

numbers notwithstanding their excellency, seemed not sufficient to satisfie the eare of the world thereunto accustomed, without this Harmonicall cadence : which make the most learned of all Nations labour with exceeding trauell to bring those numbers likewise vnto it : which many did with that happinesse, as neither the puritie of tongue, nor their materiall contemplations are thereby any way disgraced, but rather deserue to be reuerenced of all gratefull posteritie, with the due regard of their worth. And for *Schola Salerna*, and those *Carmina Prouerbialia*, Who findes not therein more precepts for vse, concerning diet, health and conuersation, than *Cato*, *Theognes*, or all the Greekes and Latines can shew vs in that kinde of teaching? and that in so few words, both for delight to the eare, and the hold of memory, as they are to be embraced of all modest Readers, that study to know, and not to depraue.

Me thinks it is a strange imperfection, that men should thus ouer-runne the estimation of good things with so violent a censure, as though it must please none els, because it likes not them. Whereas *Oportet arbitratores esse non contradictores eos qui verum iudicaturi sunt*, faith *Arist.*, though he could not obserue it himselfe. And milde Charitie telles vs :

---

— non ego paucis  
*Offendor maculis quas aut incuria fudit,  
 Aut humana parum cauet natura.*

For all men / haue their errours, and we must take the best of their powers, and leaue the rest as not apperteining vnto vs.

*Ill customes are to be left.* I grant it : but I see not how that can be taken for an ill custome, which Nature hath thus ratified, all nations receiued, time so long confirmed, the effects such as it performes those offices of motion for which it is imployed ; delighting the eare, stirring the heart, and satisfying the iudgement in such sort as I doubt whether euer single numbers will doe in our Climate, if they shew no more worke of woonder than yet we see. And if euer they prooue to become any thing, it must be by the approbation of many ages that must giue them their strength for any operation, as before the world will feele where the pulse, life and enargie lies, which now were sure where to haue in our Rymes, whose knowen frame hath those due staves for the minde, those encounters of touch, as makes the motion certaine, though the varietie be infinite. Nor will the generall sort, for whom we write (the wise being aboue books) taste these laboured measures but as an orderly prose when we haue all done. For this kind acquaintance and continuall familiaritie euer had betweene our eare and this cadence, is growen to so intimate a friendship, as it will now hardly euer be brought to misse it. For be the verse neuer so good, neuer so full, it seemes not to satisfie nor breed that delight, as when it is met and combined with a like founding accent : which seemes as the iointure without which it hangs loose, and cannot subsist, but runnes wildely on, like a tedious fancie / without a clofe. Suffer then the world to enioy that which it knowes, and what it likes : seeing that whatsoeuer forme of words doth mooue, delight and sway the affections of men, in what Scythian sort soeuer it be

disposed or vttered, that is true number, measure, eloquence, and the perfection of speech : which I sayd, hath as many shapes as there be tongues or nations in the world, nor can with all the tyrannicall Rules of idle Rhetorique be gouerned otherwise then custome and present obseruation will allow. And being now the trim and fashion of the times, to sute a man otherwise, can not but giue a touch of singularitie : for when he hath all done, hee hath but found other clothes to the same bodie, and peraduenture not so fitting as the former. But could our Aduersary heereby set vp the Musicke of our times to a higher note of iudgement and discretion, or could these new lawes of wordes better our imperfections, it were a happy attempt ; but when heereby we shall but as it were change person, and put off those fetters to receiue others, what haue we gained ? as good stile to vse Ryme and as little Reason, as neither Ryme nor Reason : for no doubt, as idle wits will write in that kinde, as doe now in this : imitation will after, though it breake her necke. *Scribimus indocti doctique poemata passim.* And this multitude of idle Writers can be no disgrace to the good : for the same fortune, in one proportion or other, is proper in a like season, to all States in their turn. And the same vnmeasurable confluence of Scriblers happened, when measures were most in vse among the Romans, as wee finde / by this reprehension,

*Mutauit mentem populis leuit, & calet vno  
Scribendi studio, pueri, patresque seueri,  
Fronde comas vincti cœnāt, & carmina dictant.*

So that their plentie seemes to haue bred the same

waste and contempt as ours doth now, though it had  
 not power to disvalue what was woorthie of posteritie,  
 nor keepe backe the reputation of excellencies, destined  
 to continue for many ages. For seeing it is matter  
that satisfies the iudiciall, appeare it in what habit it  
will, all these pretended proportions of words, howsoever  
placed, can be but words, and peradventure serue but  
to embroile our vnderstanding; whilest seeking to please  
our eare, we enthrall our iudgement; to delight an  
exterior sense, we smoothe vp a weake confused sense,  
affecting sound to be vnfound, and all to secure *Seruum*  
*pecus*, onely to imitate the Greekes and Latines, whose  
felicitie, in this kinde, might be something to themselves,  
to whom their owne *idioma* was naturall, but to vs it  
can yeeld no other commoditie, then a sound. We  
 admire them not for their smoothe-gliding words, nor  
 their measures, but for their inuentions: which treasure,  
 if it were to be found in Welsh and Irish, wee should  
 holde those languages in the same estimation, and they  
 may thanke their sword that made their tongues so  
 famous and vniuerfall as they are. For to say truth,  
 their verse is many times but a confused deliuerer of  
 their excellent conceits, whose scattred limbs we are  
 faine to looke out and ioine together, to discerne the  
 image of what they represent to vs. And euen the  
 Latines, who professe not to be so licentious as the /  
 Greeks, shew vs many times examples but of strange  
 crueltie, in torturing and dismembring of words in the  
 midst, or disioyning such as naturally should be  
 married and march together, by setting them as farre  
 a sunder as they can possibly stand, that sometimes,  
 vnlesse the kinde Reader out of his owne good nature,

will stay them vp by their measure, they will fall downe into flat prose, and sometimes are no other indeed in their naturall sound: And then againe, when you finde them disobedient to their owne lawes, you must hold it to be *licentia poetica*, and so dispensable. The struiing to shew their changeable measures in the varietie of their Odes, haue been verie painfull no doubt vnto them, and forced them thus to disturbe the quiet streame of their words, which by a naturall succession otherwise desire to follow in their due course.

But such affliction doth labourfome curiositie still lay vpon our best delights (which euer must be made strange and variable) as if Art were ordained to afflict Nature, and that we could not goe but in fetters. Euery science, euery profession, must be so wrapt vp in vnneccessary intrications, as if it were not to fashion but to confound the vnderstanding, which makes me much to distrust man, and feare that our presumption goes beyond our abilitie, and our curiositie is more then our iudgement: labouring euer to seeme to be more then we are, or laying greater burdens vpon our mindes then they are well able to beare, because we would not appeare like other men.

And indeed I haue wished there was not that / multiplicitie of Rymes as is vsed by many in Sonets, which yet we see in some so happily to succeed, and hath beene so farre from hindering their inuentions, as it hath begot conceit beyond expectation, and comparable to the best inuentions of the world: for sure in an eminent spirit, whom Nature hath fitted for that mysterie, Ryme is no impediment to his conceit, but rather giues him wings to mount, and carries him not

out of his course, but as it were beyond his power to a far happier flight. All excellencies being solde vs at the hard price of labour, it followes, where we bestow most thereof, we buy the best successe: and Ryme being farre more laborious than loose measures (whatsoever is objected) must needs, meeting with wit and industrie, breed greater and worthier effects in our language. So that if our labours haue wrought out a manumission from bondage, and that we goe at libertie, notwithstanding these ties, we are no longer the slaues of Ryme, but we make it a most excellent instrument to serue vs. Nor is this certaine limit obserued in Sonnets, any tyrannicall bounding of the conceit, but rather a reducing it in *giram*, and a iust forme, neither too long for the shortest proiect, nor too short for the longest, being but onely imployed for a present passion. For the bodie of our imagination, being as an vnformed *Chaos* without fashion, without day, if by the diuine power of the Spirit it be wrought into an Orbe of order and forme, is it not more pleasing to Nature, that desires a certainty, and comports not with that which is infinite, to haue these clozes, rather then not to know where to end, or / how farre to goe, especially seeing our passions are often without measure? And we finde the best of the Latines many times, either not concluding, or els otherwise in the end then they began. Besides, is it not most delightfull to see much excellentlie ordered in a small roome, or little gallantly disposed and made to fill vp a space of like capacitie, in such sort, that the one would not appeare so beautifull in a larger circuit, nor the other doe well in a lesse: which often we finde to be so, according to

the powers of nature, in the workman. And these limited proportions, and rests of stanzas, consisting of six, seven, or eight lines, are of that happinesse, both for the disposition of the matter, the apt planting the sentence where it may best stand to hit the certain close of delight, with the full bodie of a iust period well carried, is such, as neither the Greeks or Latines euer attained vnto: for their boundlesse running on often so confounds the Reader, that hauing once lost himselfe, must either giue off vnsatisfied, or vncertainly cast backe to retriue the escaped sence, and to finde way againe into this matter.

Me thinks we should not so soone yeeld our consents captiue to the authoritie of Antiquitie, vnlesse we saw more reason: all our vnderstandings are not to be built by the square of *Greece* and *Italie*. We are the children of nature as well as they, we are not so placed out of the way of iudgement, but that the same Sunne of Discretion shineth vpon vs; we haue our portion of the same vertues as well as of the same vices, *Et Catilinam Quocunque in populo videas quocunque sub axe.* Time and the turne / of things bring about these faculties according to the present estimation: and *Res temporibus non tempora rebus seruire oportet.* So that we must neuer rebell against vse: *Quem penes arbitrium est, & vis & norma loquendi.* It is not the obseruing of *Trochaicques* nor their *Iambicques*, that will make our writings ought the wiser: All their Poesie, all their Philosophie is nothing, vnlesse wee bring the discerning light of conceit with vs to applie it to vse. It is not books but only that great booke of the world, and the all-ouerspreading grace of heauen that makes

men truely iudiciall. Nor can it but touch of arrogant ignorance, to holde this or that Nation Barbarous, these or those times grosse, considering how this manifold creature man, wheresoever hee stand in the World, hath alwayes some disposition of woorth, entertaines the order of societie, affects that which is most in vse, and is eminent in some one thing or other, that fits his humour and the times. The Grecians held all other nations barbarous but themselves, yet *Pyrrhus* when he saw the well ordered marching of the Romans, which made them see their presumptuous error, could say it was no barbarous maner of proceeding. The *Goths*, *Vandales*, and *Longobards*, whose coming downe like an inundation, ouerwhelmed, as they say, all the glorie of learning in *Europe*, haue yet left vs stil their Lawes and Customes, as the originals of most of the prouinciall Constitutions of Christendome, which being well considered with their other courses of gouernment, may serue to cleere them from this imputation of ignorance. And though the / vanquished neuer speake well of the Conquerour, yet even thorow the vnfound couerings of maledictions appeare those monuments of truth, as argue well their worth, and prooues them not without iudgement, though without Greeke and Latine. x

Will not experience confute vs, if we should say the State of *China*, which neuer heard of Anapæstiques, Trochies, and Tribracques, were grosse, barbarous, and vnciuill? And is it not a most apparent ignorance, both of the succession of learning in *Europe*, and the generall course of things, to say, *that all lay pitifully deformed in those lacke-learning times from the declining of the Romane Empire till the light of the Latine tongue* ✓

was reuiued by *Rewcline*, *Erasmus*, and *Moore*? when for three hundred yeeres before them, about the comming downe of *Tamerlaine* into *Europe*, *Franciscus Petrarcha* (who then no doubt likewise found whom to imitate) shewed all the best notions of learning, in that degree of excellencie, both in Latine, Prose and Verse, and in the vulgar Italian, as all the wits of posteritie haue not yet much ouer-matched him in all kindes to this day: his great Volumes written in Morall Philosophie, shew his infinite reading, and most happy power of disposition: his twelue *Æglogues*, his *Africa* containing nine bookes of the last Punicke war, with his three bookes of Epistles in Latine verse, shew all the transformations of wit and inuention, that a spirit naturally borne to the inheritance of Poetrie and iudiciall knowledge could expresse: all which notwithstanding wrought him not that glory and fame with his owne Nation, as did his / Poems in Italian, which they esteeme aboue all what-soeuer wit could haue inuented in any other forme than wherein it is: which questionlesse they wil not change with the best measures Greekes or Latines can shew them, howsoeuer our Aduersary imagines.

Nor could this very same innouation in verse, begun amongst them by *C. Tolomæi*, but die in the attempt, and was buried assoone as it came borne, neglected as a prodigious and vnnaturall issue amongst them: nor could it neuer induce *Taffo*, the woonder of Italie, to write that admirable Poem of *Ierusalem*, comparable to the best of the Ancients, in any other forme then the accustomed verse.

And with *Petrarch* liued his scholar *Boccacius*, and neere about the same time *Iohannis Rauenenfis*, and

from these, *tanquam exequo Troiano*, seemes to haue issued all those famous Italian Writers, *Leonardus, Aretinus, Laurentius Valla, Poggius, Blondus*, and many others. Then *Emmanuel Chrysolaras*, a Constantinopolitan gentleman, renowned for his learning and vertue, being imployed by *Iohn Paleologus* Emperour of the East, to implore the aide of Christian Princes, for the succouring of perishing *Greece*: and vnderstanding in the meane time, how *Baiazeth* was taken prisoner by *Tamerlane*, and his countrey freed from danger, stayed still at *Venice*, and there taught the Greeke tongue, discontinued before in these parts the space of seuen hundred yeeres.

Him followed *Bessarion, George Trapezantius, Theodorus Gaza*, and others, transporting Philosophy beaten by the Turke out of *Greece* into / Christendome. Heereupon came that mightie confluence of Learning in these parts, which returning as it were *per postliminium*, and here meeting them with the new inuented stampe of Printing, spread it selfe indeed in a more vniuerfall sort then the world euer heretofore had it.

When *Pomponius Lætus, Æneas Syluius, Angelus Politianus, Hermolaus Barbarus, Iohannes Picus de mirandula*, the miracle and Phoenix of the world, adorned *Italie*, and wakened other Nations likewise with this desire of glory, long before it brought forth *Rewclen, Erasmus*, and *Moore*, worthy men, I confesse, and the last a great ornament to this land, and a Rymer. ]

And yet long before all these, and likewise with these, was not our Nation behinde in her portion of spirit and worthinesse, but concurrent with the best of all this lettered world: witnesse venerable *Bede*, that

flourished about a thousand yeeres since: *Aldelmus Durotelmus*, that liued in the yeere 739, of whom we finde this commendation registred: *omnium Poetarum sui temporis facile primus, tantæ eloquentiæ, maiestatis & eruditionis homo fuit, vt nunquam satis admirari possim vnde illi in tam barbara ac rudi ætate facundia accreuerit, vsque adeo omnibus numeris tersa, elegans & rotunda, versus edidit cum antiquitate de palma contententes.* Witnesse *Iosephus Deuonius*, who wrote *de bello Troiano* in so excellent maner, and so neere resembling Antiquitie, as printing his worke beyond the seas, they haue ascribed it to *Cornelius Nepos*, one of the Ancients.

What should I name *Walterus Mape*, *Gulielmus Nigellus*, *Geruafius Tilburiensis*, *Braçton*, *Bacon*, *Ockham*, and an infinite Catalogue of excellent men, most of them liuing about foure hundred yeeres since, and haue left behinde them monuments of most profound iudgement and learning in all Sciences. So that it is but the clouds gathered about our own iudgement that makes vs think all other ages wrapt vp in mists, and the great distance betwixt vs, that causes vs to imagine men so farre off to be so little in respect of our selues.

Wee must not looke vpon the immense course of times past, as men ouerlooke spacious and wide countreys, from off high mountaines, and are neuer the neere to iudge of the true nature of the soile, or the particular sight and face of those territories they see. Nor must we thinke, viewing the superficiall figure of a region in a Map, that we know straight the fashion and place as it is; or reading an Historie (which is

but a Map of men) and doth no otherwise acquaint vs with the true substance of circumstances, then a superficiall Card doth the Sea-man with a Coast neuer seene (which alwayes proues other to the eye then the imagination forecasts it) that presently we know all the world, and can distinctly iudge of times, men and maners, iust as they were.

When the best measure of man is to be taken by his owne foot, bearing euer the neereſt proportion to himſelfe, and is neuer ſo farre different and vnequall in his powers, that hee hath all in perfection at one time, and nothing at another.

The diſtribution of gifts are vniuerſall, and all ſeaſons haue them in ſome ſort. Wee muſt not thinke, but that there were *Scipios*, *Cæſars*, *Catos*, / and *Pompeys*, borne elſwhere than at *Rome*: the reſt of the world hath euer had them in the ſame degree of Nature, though not of State. And it is our weakneſſe that makes vs miſtake or miſconceiue in theſe deliniations of men the true figure of their woorth. And our paſſion and beleefe is ſo apt to leade vs beyond trueth, that vnleſſe we trie them by the iuſt compaſſe of humanitie, and as they were men, we ſhal caſt their figures in the aire, when we ſhould make their models vpon earth. It is not the contexture of words, but the effects of action that giues glorie to the times: wee finde they had *Mercurium in pectore*, though not in *lingua*; and in all ages, though they were not Ciceronians, they knew the Arte of men, which onely is *Ars Artium*, the great gift of heauen, and the chiefe grace and glory on earth; they had the learning of gouernment, and ordering their State; eloquence enough

to shew their iudgements ; and it seemeth the best times followed *Lycurgus* counsell : *Literas ad usum saltem discebant, reliqua omnis disciplina erat, ut pulchre pararent ut labores preferrent, &c.* Had not vnlearned *Rome* layd the better foundation, and built the stronger frame of an admirable State, eloquent *Rome* had confounded it vtterly, which wee saw ranne the way of all confusion, the plaine course of dissolution in her greatest skill : and though she had not power to vndo herselfe, yet wrought she so, that she cast herselfe quite away from the glory of a Common-wealth, and fell vpon the forme of State shee euer most feared and abhorred of all other : and then scarce was there seene any shadow of policie vnder / her first Emperours, but the most horrible and grosse confusion that could be conceiued ; notwithstanding it still endured, preserving not onely a Monarchie, locked vp in her owne limits, but therewithall held vnder her obedience so many Nations, so farre distant, so ill affected, so disorderly commanded, and vniustly conquered, as it is not to be attributed to any other fate but to the first frame of that Commonwealth ; which was so strongly ioynted, and with such infinite combinations interlinct as one naile or other euer held vp the maiesty thereof.

There is but one learning, which *omnes gentes habent scriptum in cordibus suis*, one and the selfe-same spirit that worketh in all. We have but one bodie of Iustice, one bodie of Wisdome thorowout the whole world ; which is but apparelled according to the fashion of euery Nation.

Eloquence and gay wordes are not of the substance of wit : it is but the garnish of a nice time, the

ornaments that doe but decke the house of a State, and *imitatur publicos mores*: Hunger is as well satisfied with meat serued on pewter as siluer. Discretion is the best measure, the rightest foot, in what pase soeuer it run. *Erasmus*, *Rewcline*, and *Moore*, brought no more wisdom into the world with all their new reuiued words then we finde was before; it bred not a profounder Diuine then *S. Thomas*, a greater Lawyer then *Bartolus*, a more accute Logician then *Scotus*: nor are the effects of all this great amasse of eloquence, so admirable or of that consequence, but that *impexa illa antiquitas* can yet compare with it.

Let / vs goe no further, but looke vpon the woonderfull ✓  
 Architecture of the State of *England*, and see whether they were deformed times that could giue it such a forme: where there is no one the least pillar of maiestie, but was set with most profound iudgement, and borne vp with the iust conueniencie of Prince and people; no Court of iustice, but layd by the rule and square of Nature, and the best of the best Commonwealths that euer were in the world: so strong and substantiall, as it hath stood against all the stormes of factions, both of beleefe and ambition, which so powerfully beat vpon it, and all the tempestuous alterations of humorous times whatsoeuer: being continually in all ages furnished with spirits fit to maintaine the maiestie of her owne greatnesse, and to match in an equall concurrence all other kingdomes round about her, with whom it had to encounter.

But this innouation, like a Viper, must euer make way into the worlds opinion, thorow the bowels of her owne breeding, and is alwayes borne with reproach in

her mouth ; the disgracing others is the best grace it can put on, to win reputation of wit ; and yet it is neuer so wise as it would seeme, nor doeth the world euer get so much by it as it imagineth ; which being so often deceiued, and seeing it neuer performes so much as it promises, wee think men should neuer giue more credit vnto it : for, let vs change neuer so often, we can not change man ; our imperfections must still run on with vs : and therefore the wiser Nations haue taught men alwayes to vse, *Moribus legibusque presentibus etiamsi deteriores sint.* The / Lacedæmonians, when a Musician thinking to win himselfe credit by his new inuention, and be before his fellowes, had added one string more to his Crowd, brake his fiddle, and banished him the Citie, holding the Innouator, though in the least things, dangerous to a publicke societie. It is but a fantasticke giddinesse to forsake the way of other men, especially where it lies tolerable: *Vbi nunc est Respublica, ibi simus potius quam dum illum veterem sequimur, simus in nulla.*

But shall wee not tend to perfection ? Yes ; and that euer best by going on in the course we are in, where we haue aduantage, being so farre onward, of him that is but now setting forth. For wee shall neuer proceed, if we be euer beginning, nor arriue at any certaine port, sailing with all windes that blow : *Non conualescit planta quæ sæpius transfertur*, and therefore let vs holde on in the course we haue vndertaken, and not still be wandring. Perfection is not the portion of man ; and if it were, why may wee not as well get to it this way as another, and suspect those great vnder-takers, lest they have conspired with enuie to betray

our proceedings, and put vs by the honour of our attempts, with casting vs backe vpon another course, of purpose to ouerthrow the whole action of glory when we lay the fairest for it, and were so neere our hopes? I thanke God that I am none of these great Scholars, if thus their high knowledges doe but giue them more eyes to looke out into vncertaintie and confusion, accounting my selfe rather beholding to mine ignorance, that hath set mee in so lowe an vnder-roome of conceit with other men, / and hath giuen me as much distrust, as it hath done hope, daring not aduenture to goe alone, but plodding on the plaine tract I finde beaten by Custome and the Time, contenting me with what I see in vse.

And surely me thinks these great wits should rather seeke to adorne, than to disgrace the present, bring something to it, without taking from it what it hath. But it is euer the misfortune of Learning to be wounded by her owne hand. *Stimulos dat emula virtus*, and when there is not abilitie to match what is, malice will finde out engins, either to disgrace or ruine it, with a peruerse encounter of some new impression; and, which is the greatest miserie, it must euer proceed from the powers of the best reputation, as if the greatest spirits were ordained to indanger the world, as the grosse are to dishonor it; and that we were to expect *ab optimis periculum, à pessimis dedecus publicum*. Emulation, the strongest pulse that beats in high mindes is oftentimes a winde, but of the worst effect: for whilest the soule comes disappointed of the obiect it wrought on; it presently forges another, and euen couzins it selfe, and crosses all the world, rather then it will stay to be vnder

her desires, falling out with all it hath, to flatter and make faire that which it would haue.

So that it is the ill successe of our longings that with *Xerxes* makes vs to whip the sea, and send a cartell of defiance to mount *Athos*: and the fault layed vpon others weaknesse, is but a presumptuous opinion of our owne strength, who must not seeme to be mastered. But had our Aduersarie taught vs by his owne procee / dings, this way of perfection, and therein fram'd vs a Poeme of that excellencie, as should haue put downe all, and been the master-peece of these times, wee should all haue admired him: but to deprauue the present forme of writing, and to bring vs nothing but a few loose and vncharitable Epigrammes, and yet would make vs beleue those numbers were come to raise the glorie of our language, giueth vs cause to suspect the performance, and to examine whether this new Art *constat sibi*, or, *aliquid sit dictum quod non sit dictum prius*.

First we must heere imitate the Greeks and Latines, and yet we are heere shewed to disobey them even in their owne numbers and quantities; taught to produce what they make short, and make short what they produce; made beleue to be shewed measures in that forme we haue not seene, and in such matter; tolde that heere is the perfect Arte of versifying, which in conclusion is yet confessed to be vnperfect, as if our aduersarie to be opposite to vs, were become vnfaithfull to him selfe, and seeking to leade vs out of the way of reputation, hath aduentured to intricate and confound him in his owne courses; running vpon most vneuen grounds, with imperfect rules, weake proofs, and vn-

lawful lawes ; whereunto the world, I am perfwaded, is not so vnreasonable as to subscribe, considering the vniust authoritie of the Law-giuer : for who hath constituted him to be the *Radamanthus*, thus to torture syllables, and adiudge them their perpetuall doome, setting his *Theta* or marke of condemnation vpon them, to endure / the appointed sentence of his crueltie, as he shall dispose ? as though there were that disobedience in our words, as they would not be ruled, or stand in order, without so many intricate lawes ; which would argue a great peruerseness amongst them, according to that, *in pessima republica plurimæ leges*, or, that they were so farre gone from the quiet freedome of Nature, that they must thus be brought backe againe by force. And now in what case were this poore state of words, if in like sort another tyrant the next yeere should arise and abrogate these lawes, and ordaine others cleane contrary, according to his humor, and say that they were only right, the others vniust ? What disturbance were there heere ? to whom should we obey ? Were it not far better to holde vs fast to our olde custome, then to stand thus distracted with vncertaine lawes, wherein right shall haue as many faces as it pleases Passion to make it ; that wheresoeuer mens affections stand, it shall still looke that way ? What trifles doth our vnconstant curiositie call vp to contend for ? What colours are there layd vpon indifferent things to make them seeme other than they are ? as if it were but onely to entertaine contestation amongst men, who standing according to the prospectiue of their owne humour, seeme to see the selfe same things to appeare otherwise to them than either they do to others, or are indeed in

them selues, being but all one in nature. For what adoe haue we heere? what strange precepts of Arte about the framing of an Iambique verse in our language? which when all is done, reaches not by a foot, but falleth out to / be the plaine ancient verse, consisting of ten syllables or five feet, which hath euer beene vsed amongst vs time out of minde. And for all this cunning and counterfet name can or will be any other in nature then it hath beene euer heretofore: and this new *Demeter* is but the halfe of this verse diuided in two, and no other than the *Cæsura* or breathing place in the middest thereof, and therefore it had been as good to haue put two lines in one, but only to make them seeme diuers. Nay it had been much better for the true English reading and pronouncing thereof, without violating the accent, which now our aduersarie hath heerin most vnkindly done: for, being, as wee are to found it, according to our English march, we must make a rest, and raise the last syllable, which falles out very vnnaturall in *Desolate*, *Funerall*, *Elizabeth*, *Prodigall*, and in all the rest sauing the Monosyllable. Then followes the English *Trochaicke*, which is sayd to be a simple verse, and so indeed it is, being without Ryme; hauing heere no other grace then that in found it runnes like the knowen measure of our former ancient Verse, ending (as we terme it according to the French) in a feminine foot, sauing that it is shorter by one syllable at the beginning, which is not much missed, by reason it falles full at the last.

Next comes the *Elegiacke*, being the fourth kinde, and that likewise is no other then our accustomed measure of five feet: if there be any difference, it must

be made in the reading, and therin we must stand bound to stay where often wee would not, and sometimes either breake the accent, or the due course of the word. / And now for the other foure kindes of numbers, which are to be imploied for *Odes*, they are either of the same measure, or such as haue euer bene familiarly vsed amongst vs. So that of all these eight severall kinds of new promised numbers, you see what wee haue. Only what was our owne before, and the same but apparelled in forreigne Titles; which had they come in their kinde and naturall attire of Ryme, wee should neuer haue suspected that they had affected to be other, or sought to degenerate into strange maners, which now wee see was the cause why they were turned out of their proper habit, and brought in as Aliens, only to induce men to admire them as farre-commers. But see the power of nature; it is not all the artificiall couerings of wit that can hide their native and originall condition, which breaks out thorow the strongest bands of affectation, and will be it selfe, do Singularity what it can. And as for those imagined quantities of syllables, which haue bene euer held free and indifferent in our language, who can inforce vs to take knowledge of them, being *in nullius verba iurati*, and owing fealtie to no forreigne inuention? especially in such a case where there is no necessitie in nature, or that it imports either the matter or forme, whether it be so, or otherwise. But every Versifier that well obserues his worke, findes in our language, without all these vnnecessary precepts, what numbers best fit the nature of her Idiom, and the proper places destined to such accents as she will not let in to any other roomes then in those for which they

were borne. As for example, you can not make this fall into the / right found of a verse—

*None thinks reward rendred worthy his worth,*

vnlesse you thus misplace the accent vpon *Rendred* and *Worthy*, contrary to the nature of these wordes: which sheweth that two feminine numbers (or Trochees, if so you will call them) will not succeed in the third and fourth place of the verse. And so likewise in this case,

*Though death doth consume, yet vertue preserues,*

it will not be a verse, though it hath the iust syllables, without the same number in the second, and the altering of the fourth place in this sort:

*Though death doth ruine, vertue yet preserues.*

Againe, who knowes not that we can not kindly answer a feminine number with a masculine Ryme, or (if you will so terme it) a *Trochei* with a *Sponde*, as *Weaknesse* with *Confesse*, *Nature* and *Indure*, only for that thereby wee shall wrong the accent, the chiefe Lord and graue Gouvernour of Numbers. Also you can not in a verse of foure feet place a *Trochei* in the first, without the like offence, as, *Yeerely out of his watry Cell*: for so you shall found it Yeereliè, which is vnnaturall. And other such like obseruations vsually occurre, which Nature and a iudiciall eare of themselves teach vs readily to auoid.

But now for whom hath our Aduersary taken all this paines? For the learned, or for the ignorant, or for himselfe, to shew his owne skill? If for the learned, it was to no purpose, for euery Grammarian in this

land hath learned his *Profodia*, and already knowes all this Art of numbers : if for the ignorant, it was vain : for if they become Versifiers, wee are like to haue / leane numbers, instead of fat Ryme : and if *Tullie* would haue his Oratour skill'd in all the knowledges appertaining to God and man, what should they haue, who would be a degree aboue Oratours ? Why then it was to shew his owne skill, and what himselfe had obserued : so he might well haue done, without doing wrong to the honor of the dead, wrong to the fame of the liuing, and wrong to *England*, in seeking to lay reproch vpon her natiue ornaments, and to turne the faire streame and full course of her accents into the shallow current of a loose vncerteintie, cleane out of the way of her knownen delight. And I had thoght it could neuer have proceeded from the pen of a Scholar (who sees no profession free from the impure mouth of the scorner) to say the reproch of others idle tongues is the curse of Nature vpon vs, when it is rather her curse vpon him, that knowes not how to vse his toong. What, doth he thinke himselfe is now gotten so farre out of the way of contempt, that his numbers are gone beyond the reach of obloquie, and that how friuolous or idle foeuer they shall runne, they shall be protected from disgrace ? as though that light Rymes and light numbers did not weigh all alike in the graue opinion of the wise ; and that it is not Ryme, but our idle Arguments that hath brought downe to so base a reckoning the price and estimation of writing in this kind ; when the few good things of this age, by comming together in one throng and presse with the many bad, are not discerned from them but ouer-

looked with them, and all taken to be alike. But when after-times shall make a quest of Inquirie, / to examine the best of this Age, peradventure there will be found in the now contemned Records of Ryme, matter not vnfitting the grauest Diuine and seuerest Lawyer in this Kingdome. But these things must haue the date of Antiquitie to make them reuerend and authentically: for euer in the collation of Writers, men rather weigh their age then their merit, & *legunt priscos cum reuerentia, quando coetaneos non possunt sine inuidia. Simplicius longè posita miramur.* And let no Writer in Ryme be any way discouraged in his endeouour by this braue all-arme, but rather animated to bring vp all the best of their powers, and charge with the words all the strength of Nature and Industrie vpon contempt, that the shew of their reall forces may turne backe insolencie into her owne holde. For, be sure, that inouation neuer works any ouerthrow but vpon the aduantage of a carelesse idlenesse. And let this make vs looke the better to our feet, the better to our matter, better to our maners. Let the Aduersarie that thought to hurt vs, bring more profit and honor, by being against vs, than if he had stood still on our side. For that (next to the aire of heauen) the best reine, the strongest hand to make men keepe their way, is that which their enemy beares vpon them: and let this be the benefit we make by being oppugned, and the meanes to redeeme backe the good opinion vanitie and idlenesse haue suffered to be won from vs; which, nothing but substance and matter can effect. For *Scribendi rectè sapere est & principium & fons.*

When we heare Musicke, we must be in our eare,

in the vtter-roome of sense, but when we entertaine iudgement, we retire into the cabinet / and innermost withdrawing chamber of the soule: And it is but as Musick for the eare,

*Verba sequi fidibus modulanda Latinis,*

but it is a worke of power for the soule,

*Numerósque modósque ediscere vitæ.*

The most iudiciall and worthy spirits of this land are not so delicate, or will owe so much to their eare, as to rest vpon the outside of words, and be entertained with sound; seeing that both Number, Measure, and Ryme, is but as the ground or seat, whereupon is raised the worke that commends it, and which may be easilie at the first found out by any shallow conceit: as we see some fantasticke to begin a fashion, which afterward grautie it selfe is faine to put on, because it will not be out of the weare of other men, and *Recti apud nos locum tenet error ubi publicus factus est.* And power and strength that can plant it selfe any where, hauing built within this compasse, and rear'd it of so high a respect, wee now embrace it as the fittest dwelling for our inuention, and haue thereon bestowed all the substance of our vnderstanding to furnish it as it is. And therefore heere I stand forth, only to make good the place wee haue thus taken vp, and to defend the sacred monuments erected therein, which containe the honour of the dead, the fame of the liuing, the glory of peace, and the best power of our speech, and wherein so many honourable spirits haue sacrificed to Memorie their dearest passions, shewing by what diuine

influence they haue beene mooued, and vnder what starres they liued.

But yet now notwithstanding all this which I haue heere deliuered in the defence of Ryme, I / am not so farre in loue with mine owne mystery, or will seeme so froward, as to be against the reformation and the better settling these measures of ours: wherein there bee manie things I could wish were more certaine and better ordered, though my selfe dare not take vpon mee to be a Teacher therein, hauing so much need to learne of others. And I must confesse, that to mine owne eare, those continuall cadences of couplets vsed in long and continued Poems, are verie tiresome and vnpleasing, by reason that stil me thinks they run on, with a found of one nature, and a kinde of certainty which stufes the delight rather than entertaines it. But yet notwithstanding, I must not of mine owne daintinesse condemne this kinde of writing, which peraduenture to another may seeme most delightfull: and many worthy compositions we see to haue passed with commendation in that kind. Besides, me thinks sometimes to beguile the eare with a running out and passing ouer the Ryme, as no bound to stay vs in the line where the violence of the matter will breake thorow, is rather gracefull then otherwise: wherein I finde my *Homer-Lucan*, as if hee gloried to seeme to haue no bounds, albeit he were confined within his measures, to be in my conceit most happie: For so thereby, they who care not for Verse or Ryme may passe it ouer with taking notice thereof, and please themselues with a well-measured Prose. And I must confesse my Aduersary hath wrought this much vpon mee, that I thinke

a Tragedie would indeed best comport with a blanke Verse, and dispenſe with Ryme, ſauing in the *Chorus*, or where a ſentence / ſhall require a couplet. And to auoid this ouer-glutting the eare with that alwayes certeine and full incounter of Ryme, I haue affayd in ſome of my Epistles to alter the vsuall place of meeting, and to ſet it further off by one Verſe, to trie how I could diſuſe mine owne eare, and to eaſe it of this continuall burden, which indeed ſeemes to ſurcharge it a little too much: but as yet I can not come to pleaſe my ſelfe therein, this alternate or croſſe Ryme holding ſtill the beſt place in my affection.

Besides, to me this change of number in a Poem of one nature fits not ſo well, as to mixe vncertainly feminine Rymes with maſculine; which euer ſince I was warned of that deformitie by my kinde friend and countrey-man *M. Hugh Samford*, I haue alwayes ſo auoided it, as there are not aboue two couplets in that kinde in all my Poem of the Ciuil warres: and I would willingly, if I could, haue altered it in all the reſt, holding feminine Rymes to be fitteſt for Ditties, and either to be ſet for certaine, or els by themſelues. But in theſe things, I ſay I dare not take vpon mee to teach that they ought to be ſo, in reſpect my ſelfe holds them to be ſo, or that I thinke it right; for indeed there is no right in theſe things that are continuallie in a wandring motion, caried with the violence of our vncertaine likings, being but onely the time that giues them their power. For if this right or trueth ſhould be no other thing then that we make it, wee ſhall ſhape it into a thouſand figures, ſeeing this excellent Painter, Man, can ſo well lay the colours which

himselfe grindes in his owne affections, as / that hee will make them serue for any shadow and any counterfet. But the greatest hinderer to our proceedings, and the reformation of our errours, is this self-loue, whereunto we Versifiers are euer noted to be especially subiect; a disease of all other the most dangerous and incurable, being once seated in the spirits, for which there is no cure but only by a spirituall remedie. *Multos puto, ad sapientiam potuisse peruenire, nisi putassent se peruenisse:* and this opinion of our sufficiencie makes so great a cracke in our iudgement, as it will hardly euer hold any thing of woorth, *Cæcus amor sui*; and though it would seeme to see all without it, yet certainly it discernes but little within: for there is not the simplest Writer that will euer tell himselfe he doth ill, but as if hee were the Parasite onely to sooth his owne doings, perswades him that his lines can not but please others, which so much delight himselfe:

Suffenus est quisq; sibi—neq; idem vnquam.  
 Aequæ est beatus, ac poema cùm scribit,  
 Tam gaudet in se tamque se ipse miratur.

And the more to shew that he is so, wee shall see him euermore in all places, and to all persons repeating his owne compositions: and

*Quem vero arripuit, tenet occiditq; legendo.*

Next to this deformitie stands our affectation, wherein we alwayes bewray our selues to be both vnkinde and vnnaturall to our owne natieue language, in disguising or forging strange or vnusuall words, as if it

were to make our Verse seeme another kinde of speech out of the course of our vsuall practise, openly vpon a singularity; when owne accustomed phrase, set in the due place, would expresse vs more familiarly and to better delight then all this idle affectation of antiquitie or noueltie can euer do. And I can not but wonder at the strange presumption of some men, that dare so audaciously aduenture to introduce any whatsoeuer forren words, be they neuer so strange; and of themselves, as it were, without a Parliament, without any consent or allowance, stablish them as free denizens in our language. But this is but a character of that perpetuall reuolution which wee see in all things that neuer remaine the same: and we must heerein be content to submit our selues to the law of time, which in few yeeres will make all that for which wee now contend, *Nothing*.

\* \*  
\*

FINIS.



III.  
THE  
COLLECTION  
OF THE  
HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

1612—1617-18.

## NOTE.

The 'Collection of the History of England' is Daniel's chief work in Prose, and that which won for him name and fame.

As appears to have been his custom alike in verse and prose, part 1st of this work, "to the end of the reign of Stephen," was originally printed for private circulation: "London, Printed by Nicholas Okes dwelling neere Holborne bridge 1612" (117 leaves); and, indeed, even after publication, and when the work was completed so far as it went, these words are oddly enough retained in the "Certaine Advertisements to the Reader":—

"This Peece of History, which heere I divulge not but impart priuately to such Worthy Persons as haue fauoured my indeuour. . . ."

There was another (published) edition in 1613: "London, Printed for the Company of Stationers" (also in a small quarto).

These were dedicated in a lengthy Epistle "to the Right Honourable Sir Robert Carr, Viscount Rochester," who is also thus addressed in the opening of the History itself:—

"I intend by the helpe of God, and your furtherance my noble Lord Viscount Rochester to write . . . ." As this Epistle was displaced by another addressed to Queen Anne, wife of James 1<sup>st</sup>, I have deemed it expedient to give it before the other.

The History as it remained subsequently, "to the end of the reign of Eduard III<sup>d</sup>," was published as a handsome thin folio in 1617-18—dedicated (*ut supra*) to the Queen. This was followed by posthumous folio reprints in 1621—1626—1634—1650, the last being designated in the title-page "the Fourth Edition Revised and by His last corrected Coppy Printed." This could only apply to the edition of 1617-18, as Daniel died in 1619. But "revised and by his last corrected copy printed" was a mere booksellers' catch-penny device. A careful collation of all the texts reveals that in 1617-18 he simply reprinted the quarto of 1612-13, and so left it. The second part was published in the folio of 1617-18, Mr. Sidney Lee being mistaken in recording a separate (4to) issue thereof. The retention of the phrasing noted above shows how little the Author concerned himself with either revision or correction, albeit it is to be remembered that he died in the following year. Having found the folio of 1626 the most accurately as well as handsomely printed, I have made it our 'copy,' albeit I repeat there are no differences between one and another beyond trifling and

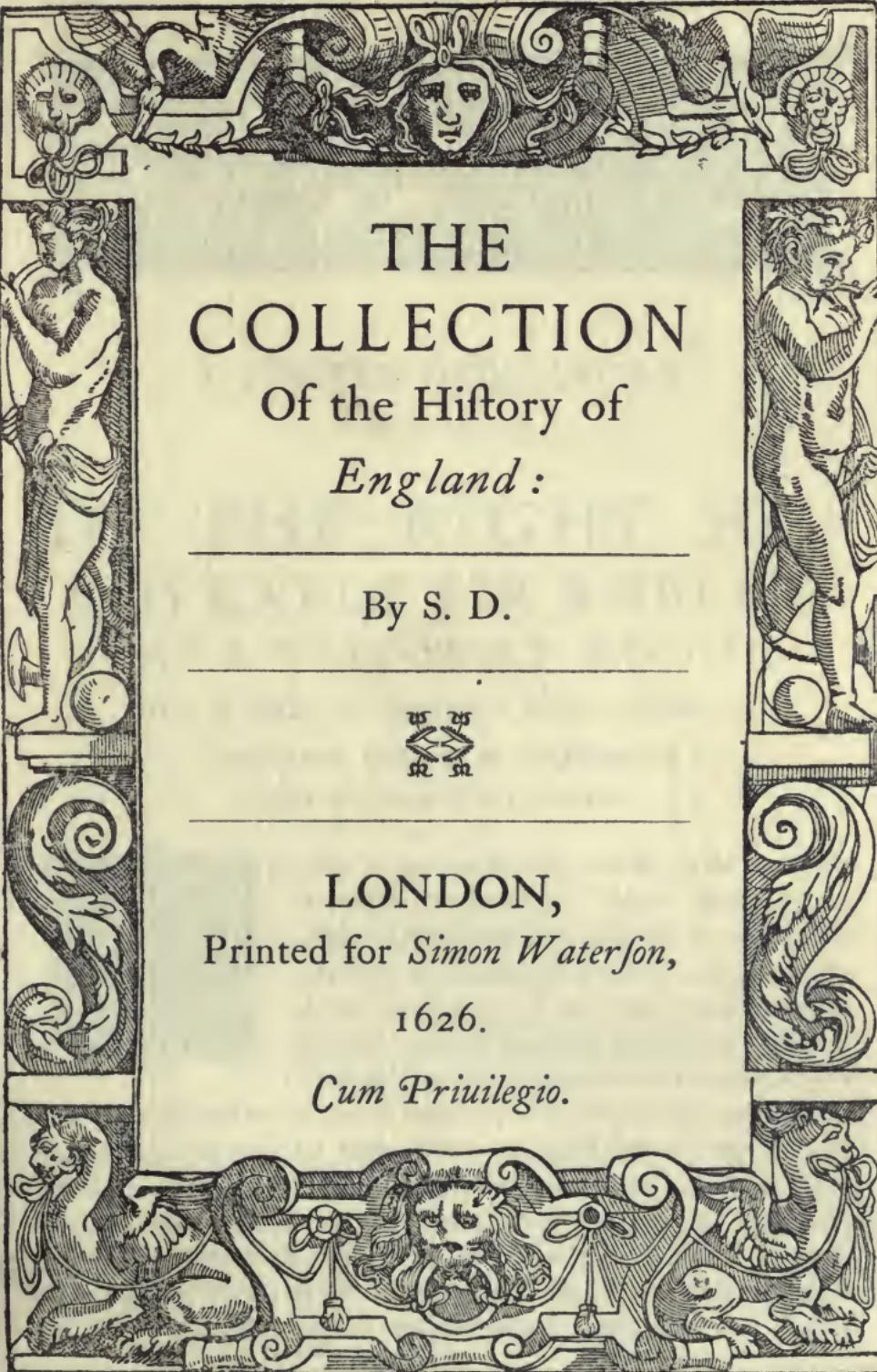
self-correcting misprints: *e.g.*, in 1650, in the Epistle to the Queen, "my" is dropped inadvertently in this sentence: "as far as [my] ability would extend"—correct in 1618 and 1626 and the others; and again in the "Certaine Advertisements to the Readers" in 1650, "greedy of well doing," for "greedy of doing well." The only misprint corrected in 1650 that I have happed on is 'yeeld' for a dropped 'l' in 1626. The promised Appendices of "Certaine Advertisements" never appeared.

For notices of after-editions 1706, 1719, and a curious tract on alleged corrupting "alterations in Mr. Daniel's History," and an estimate of the work, our II. Memorial-Introduction--Critical, prefixed to the present volume may be consulted. Our text is given in integrity throughout, even its odd spellings of words and names. On all those see Glossarial Index in Vol. V.

A. B. G.



**H**Speciall Priuiledge, Licence and Authority, is granted by the Kings Maiesties Letters Patents, vnto the Author *Samuel Daniel*, one of the Groomes of the Queenes Maiesties most Honorable Priuy Chamber, for him, his Executors, Administrators, Assignes or Deputies, to Print, or cause to bee Imprinted, and to sell assigne and dispose, to his, or their benefit, This Booke, intituled, *The Collection of the History of England*. Streightly forbidding any other to Imprint or cause to bee Imprinted, to Import, vtter or sell, or cause to be Imported, vttered, or sold, the sayd Booke or Bookes, or any part thereof, within any of his Majestyes Dominions, vpon payne of his Majesties high displeasure, and to forfeit Fiue pounds Lawfull *English* Mony for euery such Booke or Bookes, or any part thereof, printed Imported, vttered, or sold, contrary to the meaning of this Priuiledge, besides the Forfeiture of the sayd Booke, Bookes, &c. as more at large appeareth by his Maisties sayd Letters Patents, dated at *Westminster*, the 11. of *March*, in the 15 yeare of his Reigne of *England* and of *Scotland* the one and fiftieth.



THE  
COLLECTION  
Of the History of  
*England :*

---

By S. D.

---



---

LONDON,  
Printed for *Simon Waterfon,*  
1626.

*Cum Priuilegio.*





## I. EPISTLE-DEDICATORY.

TO THE RIGHT HO-  
NOVRABLE SIR ROBERT  
CARR VISCOVNT ROCHE-  
ster, Knight of the most Noble Order of  
the Garter, and one of his Maiesties  
most Honourable Priuy Councill.



*O giue a reason of my worke, is in my part as well as to do it. And therefore my Noble Lord, why I vndertooke to write this History of England, I alledge, that having spent much time of my best understanding, in this part of humane Learning, Historie, both in forraine countries where especially I tooke those notions, as made most for the conduct of businesse in this kind, and also at home, where it hath bene in my fortune (besides conference with men of good experience) to haue seene many of the best discourses, negotiations, instructions and relations of the generall affaires of the World: I resolved to make triall of my forces in the contexture of our owne Historie, which for that it lay dispersed in confused peeces, hath bene much desired.*

of many. And held to be some blemish to the honour of our Country to come behinde other Nations in this kind, when neither in magnificence of State, glory of action, or abilities of nature, we are any way inferior to them. Nor is there any Nation, whose Ancestors haue done more worthy things, both at home and abroad; especially for matter of war. For since the Romans, no one people hath fought so many battailes prosperously. And therefore out of the tender remorse, to see these men much defrauded of their glory so deerely bought, and their affaires confusedly deliuered, I was drawne (though the least able for such a worke) to make this aduenture: which howsoever it proue, will yet shew the willingnesse I haue to do my Countrey the best seruice I could; and perhaps, by my example induce others of better abilities, to vndergoe the same. In the meane time, to draw out a small substance of so huge a masse, as might haue something of the vertue of the whole, could not be, but an extraction worthy the paines, seeing it concernes them most to know the generall affaires of England, who haue least leasure to read them.

And the better to fit their vse, I haue made choyce to deliuer onely those affaires of action, that most concerne the gouernment: diuiding my worke into three Sections, according to the Periods of those Ages that brought forth the most remarkable Changes: And euery Section into three Bookes. Whereof the first, briefly relates the various mutations of State, plantation, and supplantations of the inhabitants in the chieftest part of this Isle, before the comming of the Norman. The second booke containes the life and Raigne of William the first. The third, the succession of William the second, Henry the first, and Stephan. And this part, I haue here done.

The second Section begins with Henry the second, the first of the royall family of Plantagenet, containes the liues of foureteene Princes of that Line, and takes vp 339 yeares. A space of time that yeelds vs a view of a wider extent of Dominion, by the accession of a third part of France to the Crowne of England: more matter of action, with a greater magnificence, and glory of

*State then euer : intermixt with strange varieties and turnes of Fortune : the inflammation of three ciuill warres, besides popular insurrections : the deposing of foure kings, and fūe vsurpations : which, in the end, so rent the State, as all the glory of forraine greatnesse, which that line brought, expired with it selfe.*

*The third Section containes the succession of fūe Soueraigne Princes of the Line of Tewdor, and the space of 129 yeares. A time not of that virilitie as the former, but more subtile, and let out into wider notions, and bolder discoveries of what lay hidden before. A time wherein began a greater improuement of the Soueraigntie, and more came to be effected by wit then the sword : Equall and iust incounters, of State, and State in forces, and of Prince, and Prince in sufficiencie. The opening of a new world, which strangely altered the manner of this, inhancing both the rate of all things, by the induction of infinite Treasure, & opened a wider way to corruption, whereby Princes got much without their swords : Protections, & Confederations to counterpoys, & preuent ouer-growing powers, came to bee maintained with larger pensions. Leidger Ambassadors first imployed abroad for intelligences. Common Banks erected, to returne and furnish moneys for these businesses. Besides strange alterations in the State Ecclesiasticall : Religion brought forth to bee an Actor in the greatest Designes of Ambition and Faction. To conclude, a time stored with all varietie of accidents fit for example, and instruction. This is the scope of my designe.*

*And this I addresse to you, my Noble Lord, not onely as a testimonie of my gratitude for the honorable regard you haue taken of mee : but also in respect you being now a publick person, and thereby ingaged in the State of England, as well as incorporated into the Body thereof, may here learne, by the obseruance of affaires past (for that, Reason | is strengthened by the successe of exāple) to iudge the righter of things present : and withall, that herein, you, seeing many precedents of such as haue runne euen and direct courses, like your owne (howsoever the successe was) neuer wanted glory, may therby be comforted to continuē*

this way of integrity, and of being a iust seruant both to the King and the Kingdome: nor can there be a better testimony to the world of your owne worth, then that you loue and cherish the same, (wheresoeuer you finde it) in others.

And if by your hand it may come to the sight of his Royall Maiesty, whose abilities of nature are such, as whatsoeuer comes within his knowledge is presently vnder the dominion of his iudgement, I shall thinke it happy: and though in it selfe, it shall not be worthy his leasure, yet will it bee much to the glory of his Reigne, that in his daies there was a true History written: a liberty proper onely to Common-wealths, and neuer permitted to Kingdomes, but vnder good Princes. Vpon which liberty notwithstanding I will not vsurpe, but tread as tenderly on the graues of his magnificent Progenitors, as possibly I can: Knowing there may (in a kind) be Læsa Maiestas, euen against dead Princes. And as in reuerence to thē, I will deliuer nothing but what is fit for the world to know, so through the whole worke I will make conscience that it shall know nothing but (as faithfully as I can gather it) Truth: protesting herein | to haue no other passion, then the zeale thereof, nor to hold any stubborne opinion, but lyable to submission and better information.

Your Lordships to command,

SAMVEL DANYEL.



## II. EPISTLE-DEDICATORY.

---

# TO THE MAIESTY OF ANNE OF DEN- MARKE, QVEENE OF ENG- land, Scotland, France and Ireland.



*Veenes*, the Mothers of our Kings, by whom is continued the Blessing of succession that preserues the Kingdome, hauing their parts running in the times wherein they liue, are likewise interested in the Histories thereof, which containe their memories and all that is left of them, when they haue left to be in this world. And therefore to you, great Queene of *England* (and the greater by your loue to the Nation, and the blessing you haue brought forth for the continuation of the future good thereof) doe I your humblest seruant addresse this peece of our History; which, as it is a worke of mine, appertaynes of right to your Maiesty, being for the most part done vnder your Roofe, during my attendance vpon your Sacred Person;

and if euer it shall come to be an entire worke, and merit any acceptation in the world, it must remaine among the memorials of you, and your time, as brought foorth / vnder the splendor of your goodnesse. Howsoever, this which is done, shall yet shewe how desirous I haue beene to lay out my time and industry, as farre as my ability would extend, to doe your Maiesty and my Country seruice in this kind.

And though at high Altars, none but high Priests ought to sacrificize, yet vouchsafe mighty Queene, to accept this poore oblation from the hand of your Maiesties

*Humblest seruant*

Samuel Danyel.

---

Certayne

---



## Certaine Aduertisements to the Reader.



*His Peece of our History, which heere I divulge not, but impart priuately to such Worthy Persons as haue fauoured my in-deauors herein, should long since haue beene much more: And come abroad with Dedication, Preface, and all the Complements of a Booke, had my Health and Meanes beene answerable to my desire: But beeing otherwise, I must intreate my Friends, to be content to be payde by peeces, as I may, and accept my willingnesse to yeelde as much as mine ability can performe. It is more then the Worke of one man (were he of neuer so strong Forces) to compose a passable Contexture of the whole History of England. For, though the inquisition of Antient times, written by others, be prepared, yet the Collection and Disposition I find most Laborious: And I know, quam sit magnum dare aliquid in manus hominum, Especially in this kind, wherein more is expected then hath beene deliuered before. Curiosity will not be content with Ordinaries. For mine owne part I am so greedy of doing well, as nothing suffices the appetite of my care heerein. I had rather be Maister of a small peece handsomely contriued, then of vaste roomes ill proportioned and unfurnished; and I know many others are of my mind.*

*Now for what I haue done, which is the greatest part of our History (and wherein, I dare auow, is more together of the maine, then hath beene yet contracted into one peece), I am to render an*

*Account whence I had my Furniture: Which if I have omitted to Charge my Margin withall, I would haue the Reader to know, that in the Liues of William the First, William the Second, Henry the First, and Stephen; I have especially followed William Malmsbury, Ingulphus, Roger Houveden, Huntingdon, with all such Collections, as haue beene made out of Others for those times. In the Liues of Henry the Second, Richard the First, Iohn and Henry the Third: Giraldus Cambrensis, Rushanger, Mat Paris, Mat. Westminst. Nich. Triuet, Caxton, and others. In the Liues of Edward the First, Edward the Second and Third: Froissart and Walsingham, with such Collections as by Polydore Virgile, Fabian, Grafton, Hall, Holingshead, Stow and Speed, diligent and Famous Trauailors in the search of our History, haue beene made and divulged to the world. For forraine businesses (especially with France, where we had most to doe) I haue for Authors, Paulus AEmilius, Haillan, Tillet, and others; without whom we cannot truly vnderstand our owne Affayres. And where otherwise I haue had any supplies extraordinary, eyther out of Record or such Instruments of State, as I could procure, I haue giuen a true account of them in the Margin. So that the Reader shall be sure to be payd with no counterfeit Coyne, but such as shal haue the Stampe of Antiquity, the approbation of Testimony, and the allowance of Authority, so farre as I shall proceed herein.*

*And for that I would haue this Breuiary to passe with an vn-interrupted deliury of the especiall Affaires of the Kingdome (without imbroyling the memory of the Reader) I haue in a body apart, vnder the Title of an Appendix, Collected all Treaties, Letters, Articles, Charters, Ordinances, Intertaynments, provisions of Armies, businesses of Commerce, with other passages of State appertayning to our History; which assoone as I haue meanes to Print, shall, for the better satisfying of such Worthy persons, as may make use of such Materials, accompany this Collection, and to this Appendix, I haue made references in the Margin as occasion requires.*

*For the Worke it selfe, I can Challenge nothing therein but onely the sowing it together, and the obseruation of those necessary circumstances, and inferences which the History naturally ministers: Desirous to deliuer things done, in as euen and quiet an Order, as such an heape will permit, without quarrelling with the Beleeve of Antiquity, deprauing the Actions of other Nations to aduance our owne, or keeping backe those Reasons of State they had, for what they did in those times: holding it fittest and best agreeing with Integrity (the chiefest duty of a Writer) to leaue things to their owne Fame, and the Censure thereof to | the Reader, as being his part rather then mine, who am onely to recite things done, not to rule them.*

*Now for the errors herin committed, either by mine owne mistakings or the Printers ouer-sight, I must craue Pardon of course. It is a Fate Common to Bookes and Booke-men, and wee cannot auoyde it. For besides our owne faylings, we must heere take vp many things vpon other mens credits, which often comes imperfect to our hands: As the summes of Monies, numbers of Souldiers, Shippes, the slayne in Battaille, Computation of Times, differences of Names and Titles, &c. Wherein our Authors agree not. And it were to be wished that we had more assured notes of these particulars then we haue, especially for summes of Monies (in regard it serues much for instruction) wherein I doubt many of our Collectors haue bin but ill Accountants, reckoning Markes for Pounds, and Pounds for Markes. The Computation of Times is not of so great moment, figures are easily mistaken; the 10. of Iuly, and the 6. of August, with a yeare ouer or vnder, makes not a man the wiser in the businesse then done, which is onely that hee desires. But these things being but of the By, the vnderstanding Reader will not much care to set at them, and therefore I referre him to the Mayne of more important consideration. |*





THE  
COLLECTION  
OF THE HISTORIE OF  
ENGLAND: CONTAINING  
BRIEFLY THE ESPECIALL AFFAIRES  
OF THE GOVERNMENT: COMPILED

By SAMVEL DANIEL, one of the Groomes  
of the Queenes Maiesties most Honourable

*Privie Chamber.*



Vndertaking to Collect the principall affaires of this Kingdome, I had a desire to haue deduced the same from the beginning of the first Brittish Kings, as they are registred in their Catalogue; but finding no authenticall warrant how they came there, I did put off that desire with these considerations: That a lesser part of time, and better knowne (which was from *William* the first, surnamed the *Bastard*) was more then enough for my ability: and how it was but our curiosity to search further backe into times past then we might well discern, and whereof, we could neyther haue prooffe, nor

profit. How the beginnings of all people and States were as vncertaine, as the heads of great Riuers; and could not adde to our vertue, and peradventure little to our reputation to know them. Considering, how commonly they rise from the springs of pouerty, pyracie, robbery and violence, howsoever fabulous Writers (to glorifie their nations) strue to abuse the credulity of after ages with heroycall, or miraculous beginnings. For States (as men) are euer best seene, when they are vp, and as they are, not as they were. Besides (it seemes) God in his Prouidence to checke our presumptuous inquisition, wraps vp all things in vncertainty, barres vs out from long antiquity, and bounds our searches within the compasse of a few ages, as if the same were sufficient, both for example and instruction to the gouernment of men. For had we the particular occurrents of all ages, and all nations, it might more stuffe, but not better our vnderstanding. We shall finde still the same correspondencies to hold in the actions of men: Vertues and Vices the same, though rising and falling, according to the worth or weaknesse of Gouernors: the causes of the ruines, and mutations of States to be alike; and the trayne of affayres carried by precedent, in a course of Succession, vnder like colours. /

But yet, for that the chaine of this collection hath a linke of dependency with those former times, we shall shew the passage of things the better: if we take but a superficial view of that wide, and vncertainly-related state of this Land, since the candle of letters gaue vs some little light thereof. Which was, since the *Romans* made it a tributary Prouince to their Empire. For before, as it lay secluded out of the way, so it seemed out of the knowledge of the world. For *Iulius Caesar*, being but on the other side in *Gaul*, could not attaine to any particular information of the state of *Brittaine*, by any meanes he could vse, but by certaine Merchants (of whom he got together as many as he could) who told him something of the coast-townes, but of the state, and condition of the

in dwellers, they could say nothing : either so incurious were they of further knowledg then what concerned their trade, or the people heere so wary to keepe their state reserued and vnknowne to strangers. And yet *Cæsar* gaue out, that they sub-ayded the *Gaules* against him, and made it the occasion of his quarrell, and inuasion of the Land, whereof he onely subdued the South parts, and rather shewed it, then won it to the *Roman* Empire.

Of the forme of *Gouernment* among the *Brittaines*.—But now, what was the state, and forme of *gouernment* among the *Brittaines*, before this subjection. The first certaine notice we have (is also by the same *Cæsar*), who tells vs (*Cæs. Comment. lib. 5*) how they were diuided into many seuerall states : nominates fower Princes of *Kent* by the title of Kings : how *Casseuellaunus*, by the Common Councell was elected, in this their publike danger, to haue the principall administration of the State, with the businesse of warre : and afterward, how the Citties sent their hostages vnto him. Whereby wee perceiue it was no Monarchy, as it is reported to haue beene, but like to the *Gaules*, with whom it was then one in religion (and much alike in fashon and language) deuided into a multitude of petty regiments, without any entire rule or combination (*Complures sunt apud eos dominationes. Strabo, lib. 4*). As now, wee see all the west world (lately discouered) to bee, and generally all other countries are in their first, and naturall free nakednesse, before they come to bee taken in ; either by some predominant power from abroad, or grow to head within themselves, of strength, and vnderstanding to ouer-maister, and dispose of all about them ; introducing such formes of rule, as ambition, or their other necessities shall beget. And such was then the state of *Brittaine, Gaule, Spaine, Germany*, and all the west parts of *Europe*, before the *Romans* (ouer-growing first the people of *Italy* in like manner diuided) did by strength, and cunning, vnlocke those liberties of theirs. And such as were then tearmed Kings, were but as their Generalls

in warre, without any other great *jurisdiction*, within those small limits they held. So that to tell vs of the state of a Monarchie in this Land before that time (as if alone vnlike, or more in State then all other nations) is to giue entertainment to those narrow conceits, as apprehend not the progresses in the affaires of mankind; and onely the inuention of such, as take all their reason, from the example, and *Idea* of the present Customes they see in vse. For had there beene an absolute Monarch in these parts, which might haue affronted the *Romans* with the power of a well-vnited State, it had beene impossible for them (hauing oftentimes much to do, euen with some poore Prince of a small territory) to haue circumvented, or confounded (with all their stratagems, and iniustice) the peace, and liberty of the world in such sort as they did. And though the *Brittaines* were then simple, and had not the fire-brand of letters, yet seemed they more iust, and honest, and brought forth on the stage of action men as magnanimous (and toucht with as true a sence of honour, and worthinesse) as themselves.

But hauing no firme combinements to chayne them together in their publike dangers, they lay loose to the aduantage of the common enemy; working vpon the factions, and emulations, vsuall to such diuisions, and were made the instruments of their owne subiection: for whilst euery one defended them apart, the whole was ouercome.

So that with what credit, the accompt of aboue a thousand yeares from *Brute* to *Casseuellaunus* (in a line of absolute Kings) can be cleared, I doe not see; and therefore will leaue it on the booke to such as will bee creditors, according to the substance of their vnderstanding. And yet, let me craue pardon, least being but to report, I might seeme / to contend, if I make this inquirie: how the memorie of those former times, came to be preserued and deliuered to posteritie, if they had not the vse of letters in this Land (as it seemes by all probability they had not) before they were introduced by

the *Romans*; who (sure would haue giuen vs notice thereof) had they found them here at their comming, and especially of schooles and the Greeke tongue, reported to haue beene planted here for many ages before: but they tell vs of no such thing: they informe vs how the *Druides*, who were the ministers of Religion and Iustice, the especiall men of knowledge) committed not their mysteries to writing, but deliuered them by tradition, whereby the memorie of them after their suppression (first by *Augustus*, and after by *Claudius*) came wholly to perish with them. Which, had they had letters and bookes, could neuer by all the power and authoritie of the *Roman State*, beene so vtterly extinct, but that we should haue heard something more of them.

Besides it is strange how the Greeke tongue, and the knowledge of Philosophie, should be brought hither so farre off, and so soone; seeing it was late (as *Liuy* saith) before it came into *Italie*, being so neere at hand. Moreouer, it is considerable, how it made that transmigration, whether by Sea or Land? By Sea, *Hercules* had set Pillars that shut vp the world many ages after, for passing that way. If by Land, *Germany*, and other Countries on that side, would haue taken some part in the passing; but *Germany* then, we finde had no letters at all; only *Merseilies*, a *Colonie* of the Greekes being in the midway, might be a gate, to let it into *Gaule*, and so hither: but they say the *Merseillans* vsed onely Greeke Characters at first, but for their priuate accompts and contracts in traffique, and no otherwise. So that it seemes then, the *Brittaines* receiued first letters (with their subiection) from the *Romanes*, and *Agricola*, Præfect of the Prouince vnder *Domitian*, caused them heere to be taught (as *Cornelius Tacitus*, his sonne in law), reports vpon this occasion. "Aduice was taken, sayth he, that the people dispersed, rude and so apt to rebellion, should bee inured to ease and quiet by their pleasures: and therefore they exhorted priuatly, and ayded them publikely to the building of Temples, Bources, Pallaces:

commending whom they found forward, and correcting the unwilling, so that the emulation of honor was for necessity: then they caused the principall mens sons to be taught the liberall Sciences, extolling their wits for learning, about the Gaules, in so much as they who lately scorned the Roman tong, now desired eloquence. Hereupon grew our habits in honor, the Gowne frequent, and by degrees, a generall collapsion into those softnings of vices, faire houses, bathes, and delicate banquets, and that, by the ignorant, was termed humanity, when it was a part of seruitude."<sup>1</sup> Thus farre he acquaints vs with the introduction, and cause of the *Romane* learning in this Land. Which (had it had the *Greeke* tong, so many hundred yeares before) would haue beene as forward in the liberall Sciences, as the *Romanes* and not needed this emollition by learning. Philosophy would haue prepared them to a sufferance of subiection, that they could not haue beene so vniuersally rude, and barbarous as they are reported to haue beene. So that I feare me, of all that lies beyond this time, we can haue no other intelligence, but by tradition. Which how we may credit for so long past (when letters, for all the assurance they can make, breake faith with vs in the information of things euen present) let it be judged.

And now for the time since (which seemes to be all that amounts to our knowledge of the State of *Brittaine*), we finde it, during the Domination of the *Romans*, gouerned by their Præfects; and if they had Kings of the Brittish Nation, they were tributary, and had their whole authority depending on that Empire; which, as the same *Tacitus* saith, made it now

<sup>1</sup> *Cic. in Ep. ad Atticum, ubi Belli Britannici exitum expectari scribis, nullius ex ea spem prædæ, nisi ex mancipijs, ait, ex quibus nullos puto te, literis, aut musicis eruditos expectare. Et lib. de Nat. Deorum, parit eos cum Scithis barbaries insimulat. Ingenio Gallorū partim similes sunt; partim simpliciores, & magis barbari, Strabo lib. 4.* And it was after the subjection of *Gaule* that they intertayned Philosophers, and Phisitions for publique Readings, and became a Schoole for those parts as we may perceiue by *Strabo* libro 2.

their custome to haue Kings, the instruments of servitude : speaking of *Cogodunus* to whom *Claudius* gaue certain Cities in *Brittaine*, with title of King.<sup>1</sup> For now after *Cæsar* had opened the passage, and made tributary so much as he subdued, the rest could not long hold out, against that all-incompassing State of *Rome* : although during the time of their ciuill warres, and change of gouernment, from a Republique to a Monarchie, this Country lay neglected, the space of twenty yeares : yet, after *Augustus* had settled the soueraignty, and possest all the wide obedience of that Empire, the Princes and Citties of *Brittaine* (fearing to be enforced) came in of their own accord, with their gifts and tributes, and the rather ; for that as yet, they had found no other weight of / subiection, then a tollerable tribute, which, it seemed, they were content to endure with the rest of their neighbours. But after *Augustus* time, when the corruptions of that State, had bred miserable inflamations, in all parts of the world, the *Brittaines*, what with their owne factions, and those of their *Roman* commanders, remained in an vncertaine obedience, till the time of *Claudius* the Emperour, who hauing much of the fume of glory, and little fire to raise it otherwhere : casts an especial eye on this Prouince, to make it the pompous matter of his triumph. And, to prepare the way, without aduenture of himselfe, fore-sends *Publius Ostorius Scapula*, a great warrier, *Pro-prætor* into *Brittaine*, where he met with many turbulencies, and a people hardly to be driuen, howsoever they might be led : yet as one who well knew his maister ; and how the first euent is those which incusse a daughtingnesse, or daring, imployd all meanes to make his expeditions sudaine, and his executions cruel. Notwithstanding did

<sup>1</sup> *Nostra ætate, inquit Strabo, lib. 4. Regulorū quidem Britanicorum, legationibus & officijs amicitiam Augusti Cæs. consecuti, donaria in Capitolio dedicarunt : familiaremq ; Romanis totam pene insulam redegerunt.* And at that time it seemes by *Strabo*, held it not worth the garding for that it would not quit the charge.

*Caradocus* (one of the Brittish Kings) hold these great *Romans* worke for nine yeares together, and could not bee surprised, till betrayed by his owne Nation, he was diliuered into their hands, and brought to *Rome* captiue, with his wife and children, to be the subiect of their triumph: whereof notwithstanding the glory was his.

But *Claudius* had the honour of taking in the whole Isle of *Brittaine*, to the *Romane* Empire, which though thus wone, was not, till a long time after, ouercome. For now the *Brittaines* (vnderstanding the misery of their dissociation: how their submission brought but the more oppression) colleague themselues against the *Romanes*, taking their occasion vpon the outrages, committed on the person and State of Queene *Voadicia*, widdow of *Prasutagus* King of the *Iceni*, a great, and rich Prince who (at his death) had left *Nero* his heire, and two daughters, hoping thereby to free his house from iniury: but it fell out contrary, for no sooner was he dead, but his kingdom was spoyled by the *Centurions*, his house ransack't by slaues, his wife beaten, and his daughters rauished. Besides, the chiefe men of the *Iceni* (as if all the religion had beene giuen in prey) were reft of their goods, and the Kings kinsmen esteemed as captiues: with which contumely, and feare of greater mischief, they conspire with the *Trinobantes* and others (not yet inured to seruitude) to resume their liberty. And first set vpon the Garrisons of the *Veteran* souldiers (whom they most hated) defeited the ninth legion, whereof they slew all the foote, forced *Cerialis* the Legat, and leader to flight, and put to the sword seauenty thousand *Romans* and associats, inhabiting their municipal Townes, *London*, *Virolame*, *Camolodunum* (now *Maldon*); before *Suetonius* Gouvernour of the Prouince could assemble the rest of the dispersed forces, to make head against their Army (consisting of 120000 *Brittaines*) conducted by *Voadicia*, who (with her two daughters, brought into the field to mooue compassion and reuenge) incites them to that noble, and manely

worke of liberty : which to recouer, she protests to hold her selfe there, but as one of the vulgar (without weighing her great honour and birth) resolved either to winne or die. Many of their wiues were likewise there, to be spectators and encouragers of their husbands valour ; but in the end *Suetonius* got the victory with the slaughter of foure score thousand *Brittaines*, whereupon *Voadicia* poysons her selfe : and the miserable Countrie with their heauie losse, had also more weights layde vpon their seritude. And yet after this made they many other defections, and brauely struggled with the *Romans*, vppon all aduantages they could apprehend, but the continuall supplies, euer ready from all parts of that mighty Empire, were such, as the *Brittaines* (hauing no meanes, but their owne swords, in an vncomposed State, layde all open to inuasion) spent their bloud in vaine. And in the end, growing base with their fortune (as losing their vertue with their liberty) became vtterly quailed, and miserably held downe to subiection, by the powerfull hand of foureteene Garrisons, disposed in seuerall limmits of the Land, with their companies, consisting of sundry strange nations, computed in all to bee 52. thousand foote, and 300. horse ; besides 37. companies containing 23. thousand foote, and 1300. horse ; which continually guarded the North parts, where that which is now *Scotland*, and obeyed not the *Romaine* Empire, was excluded from the rest with a wall or trench, first rayed by *Agricola*, after re-edified by *Adrian*, *Seuerus* and others. / (*De noticia vtr. Imper. Pancioroul.*)

The misery of the *Brittaines* vnder the *Romans*.—And in this sort continued the state of *Britaine* whilst the *Romans* held it ; enduring all the calamities that a deieted nation could doe vnder the domination of strangers proude, greedy, and cruell : Who not onely content by all tyrannicall meanes to extort their substance, but also constrained their bodies to serue vnder their ensignes, when or wheresoeuer their quarrellous ambition would expose them. And besides, they being at the will of their rulers in their obedience, they were

forced to follow them also in their rebellions. For after the election of the Emperours grew to bee commonly made by the Armies, many possessing those mightie *Roman* forces here, were proclaimed *Cæsars*, and put for the whole Empire. As first *Carausius*, and after him *Alectus*, whom *Constantius* (the associate of *Maximianus* in the Empire) at his first comming into *Britaine*, by *Asclepiodorus* the Prætorian Præfect vanquished, with all such as tooke part with him. After that, the *Caledonians*, and *Picts* from the North parts, made irruptions into the State, and much afflicted the *Britaines*, whom to repress, *Constantius* (then sole Emperour of the West) came the second time into this Land; and in an expedition made against them died at *Yorke*, whither his sonne *Constantine* (a little before his death) repaired out of *Illyria*, escaping a traine laid for him by *Galerius* Emperour of the East, with whom hee was in the warres against the *Sarmatians*, when his father came first into *Britain* against *Alectus*. And here was he now first saluted Emperour, for which it seemes he much esteemed the Country, as that which gaue birth to his dignity. And re-ordering the gouernment thereof (for a future security) deuides it into fīue Prouinces to be ruled by one Vice-gerent, fīue Rectors, two Consulars, and three Presidents. (*De Notitia vtriusq; Imper.*). After whose time wee haue no certaine nor apparant marke to direct vs which way the State went, till the reigne of *Valentinian* the elder, who sends *Theodosius* (the father of him who was after Emperour of that name) into *Brittaine* agalnst the irruption of the *Picts*, *Attacotti*, *Scoti*, *Saxones* & *Franci*, which of all sides inuaded and spoiled the Country; and after *Theodosius* had by the forces of the *Battaui* and *Heruli* cleered it, *Ciivilis* was sent to gouerne the Prouince, and *Dulcitius* the Army: men of faire names for good offices.

The people of *Brittaine* consumed in the factions of the Emperours.—In these warres with *Theodosius* was one *Maximus*, a man borne in *Spaine*, but of *Roman* education, who after, in the time of the yonger *Valentinian*, hauing the charge of the

Army, was here proclaimed *Cæsar*, and to subuert the present Emperour, transports the whole power of *Brittaine*: and first in his way subdues *Gaule*, and there furnishes euery place of defence with *Brittish* souldiers: and they say, peopled the whole Countrey of *Armorica* (now called *Brittaine* in *France*) with the same nation: which yet retaines their language, in some kinde to this day. And hauing spred one Arme to *Spaine*, the other to *Germany*, imbraced so great a part of the Empire, as he draue *Valentinian* to seeke ayde of *Theodosius* Emperour of the East, after the vanquishment and death of his brother *Gratianus* at *Lyons*. And by this immoderate vent, both of the Garrisons, and the ablest people of the Land hee dis-furnisht and left it in that impotencie, as it neuer recouered like power againe. All those great forces hee tooke with him, either were left in *Gaule*, or perished with him at *Aquileia*, where hee was ouerthrowne by *Valentinian*.

And yet againe in the time of *Honorius* the Emperour, the Colony of the *Veteran* souldiers fearing the invasion of the *Vandales*, made another defection, and tumultuarilie proclaimed Emperour one *Marcus*, whom shortly after they slue; then *Gratianus*, who likewise within foure monthes being murthered, they gaue the title to one *Constantine*, not so much for his merite, as the omination of his name. This *Constantine* taking the same course that *Maximus* did, whatsoeuer strength was left, or lately in any sort recouered, he emptied it wholly, and made himselfe of that power, as hee subdued many of the Western Prouinces, gaue his sonne *Constans* (a Monke) the title of *Augustus*, and after many fortunes, and incounters with the forces of *Honorius*, became vanquished, and executed at *Arles*. Where also perished the whole power hee brought out of *Britain*. And so the State (hauing all the best strength exhausted, and none, or small supplies from the *Romans*) lay open to the rapine, and spoyle of their Northerne enemies: who taking the aduantage of this dis-furnishment, neuer left til / they had reduced them to extreme miseries: which forced

them to implore the aide of *Aetius*, Præfect of *Gaule* vnder *Valentinian* 3, and that in so lamentable manner (their Embassadors in torne garments, with sand on their heads, to stirre compassion) as *Aetius* was moued to send forces to succour them, and caused a wall to be raised vpon the trench (formerly made by *Adrian* from Sea to Sea) of eight foote thicke, and twelue high, inter-set with Bulwarkes, which the *Roman* souldiers, and an infinite number of *Brittains* (fitter for that worke then warre) with great labour effected. And so *Aetius* left them againe once more freed, and defended from their enemies : aduising them from thenceforth to inure and employ their owne forces without any more expectation of succour from the *Romans*, who (ouerwrought with other businesse) could not attend affaires that lay so farre off. No sooner had the enemy intelligence of the departure of these succours, but on they came (notwithstanding this fortification) battered downe the wall, ouerthrew the defenders, and harrowed the Country worse then before. Whereupon, againe this miserable people send to *Aetius*, vsing these words: *To Aetius thrice Consull, the sighes of the Brittaines*, and after thus complaine : *The barbarous enemy beates vs to the Sea, the Sea beates vs backe to the enemy: betweene these two kinds of deaths, we are either murdered, or drowned.* But their implorations preuailed not, for *Aetius* at that time had enough to do to keepe his owne head, and *Valentinian* the Empire : which now endured the last convulsions of a dying State ; hauing all the parts, and Prouinces thereof miserably rent, and torne with the violences of strange nations. So that this was also in the fate of *Brittaine* to be first made knowne to perish by, and with the *Roman* State: Which neuer suffering the people of this Land to haue any vse, or knowledge of Armes within their owne Countrey, left them (vpon their owne dissolution) naked, and exposed to all that would assaile them.

The end of the *Romaines* gouernment in *Brittaine*. Anno 447. —And so ended the *Roman* Gouernment in *Brittaine*, which

(from their first inuasion by *Iulius Cæsar* to this *Valentinianus* the third) had continued the space of five hundred yeares. In all which time we finde but these seuen *Brittish* Kings nominated to haue reigned: *Theomantius*, *Cunobelinus*, *Guiderius*, *Aruiragus*, *Marius*, *Choelus*, and lastly *Lucius*, who is crowned with immortall honour, for planting Christian Religion within this Land. All other from *Lucius* to *Vortigern* (who succeeds this relinquishment) were *Roman* gouernours.

Anno 443.—This is briefly so much of especiall note, as I can collect out of the *Roman* historie, concerning the State and gouernment of *Brittain*: finding elsewhere little certaintie, and from henceforth (during their short possession of this Land) farre lesse. Whereof *Gildas* the *Brittain* complains (*Gildas de excidio Britannicæ*), laying the cause on the barbarism of their enemies, who had destroyed all their monuments, and memorials of times past. And though himselfe wrote, about forty yeeres after the inuasion of the *Saxons*, and was next these times, we come now to remember, yet hath hee left (in his enigmaticall passions) so small light thereof, as we discerne very little thereby. Nor haue the *Brittaines* any honour by that antiquity of his, which ouerblacks them with such vgly deformities, as we can see no part cleere: accusing them to be *neither strong in peace, nor faithfull in war*: and vniuersally casts those aspersions on their manners, as if he laboured to inueigh, not to informe. And though no doubt there was (as euer is) in these periods of States a concurrencie of disorder, and a generall loosenesse of disposition that met with the fulnesse of time; yet were there no doubt, some mixtures of worth, and other notions of that age, wherewith after-times would haue beene much pleased to haue had acquaintance. But it seemes his zeale and passion (in that respect) wider then his charity, tooke vp the whole roome of his vnderstanding, to whom the reuerence of antiquity, and his title of *Sapiens* doth now giue Sanctuary, and we must not presume to touch him.

Anno 450. *Vortigern* calls in the *Saxons*.—Such was the State of *Britain* left without Armes, or order; when *Vortigern* (either by vsurpation, or faction) became King, and is sayd to be the author of the first calling in (or imploying, being in) the *Saxons* to make good his owne establishment, and the safety of his Kingdome against the *Picts* and *Scots*.

A description of the State of the *Saxons*.—*Hengist* and *Horsa* the Leaders of the *Saxons*. Their first plantation.—The *Saxons* at this time possest the third part of *Germany*, holding all the Countrey between the Riuers *Rhene*, and *Elue*, bounded on the North by the *Baltique* Sea, and the / *Ocean*. On the South by *Silua Hircinia*, and deuided by the riuier *Visurgis* into *Ostphalia*, and *Westphalia*: gouerned by an *Optimacie* of twelue Princes, with an election of a Soueraigne leader for the businesse of warre. This beeing so spacious, populous and neere a Country, well furnisht with shipping (which the *Brittaines* had not,) yeelded euer plentiful meanes to supply the vndertakers of this action (which were first two brothers *Hengist* and *Horsa*) with all necessarie prouisions vpon euery fit occasion. After they had been here a while as stipendaries, and finding the debility of Prince and people, their number soone increased. And first they had the Isle of *Thanet* allowed them to inhabite, then the whole Countrey of *Kent* was made ouer to *Hengist* by transaction, under couenant, to defend the Land against the *Picts* and *Scots*. And vpon the mariage of *Vortigern* with the Daughter, or Neece of *Hengist*, an exceeding beautifull Lady, (brought ouer of purpose to worke on the dotage of a dissolute Prince) larger priuiledges were granted: so that by this allyance, and the fertility of the Land, were drawne in so many of this populous, and military nation, that *Kent* in short time grew too narrow for them, and *Hengist* (to distend their power into other parts) aduised *Vortigern* to plant a Colony of them in the North beyond *Humber*, to be a continuall guard against all inuasions that way. Which being granted, he sends for *Otho* his brother, and sonne *Ebusa*, with great supplies out of

*Saxony* to furnish that designe. And so came the *Saxons* to haue first domination in *Kent*, and *Northumberland*, which contained all the Countrie from *Humber* to *Scotland*.

*Vortigern* is deposed.—*Vortimer* elected King of *Brittain*.—King *Arthur*.—And now became they of seruants maisters, to contemne their entertainours, and commit many insolencies. Whereupon the *Brittish* Nobility combine themselues, depose *Vortigern* (the Author of this improuident admission) and elect *Vortimer* his sonne, a Prince of great worth, who (whilest hee liued, which was not long) gaue them many fierce encounters; but all preuailed not, for the *Saxons* (being possest of the principall gate of the Land, lying open on their owne Countrie to receiue all supplies without resistance) had the aduantage to weare them out of all in the end. And besides force, they are sayd to haue vsed treachery (in murdering three hundred of the *Brittish* Nobility) at an assembly of peace at *Amesbury*, where they tooke their King prisoner, and would not release him, but vpon the grant of three Prouinces more. Also the long life of *Hengist* (a politique leader) of almost forty yeares continuance, made much for the settling here of their estate; which yet they could not effect, but with much trauaile, and effusion of blood. For the *Brittaines* (now made martiall by long practise and often battels) grew in the end so intraged to see their Countrie surprized from vnder their feet, as they solde the inheritance thereof at a very deare rate. Wherein we must attribute much to the worthinesse of their Leaders (whence the spirit of a people is raised) who in these their greatest actions were, especially *Ambrosius*, the last of the *Romans*, and *Arthur* the noblest of *Brittaines*: A man in force and courage aboue man, and worthie to haue beene a subiect of truth to posterity, and not of fiction (as Legendary writers haue made him :) for whilst hee stood, hee bare vp the sinking State of his Countrie, and is said to haue encountred the *Saxons* in twelue set battailes: wherein he had either victory, or equall reuenge. In the end, himselfe ouerthrowne

by treason, the best men consumed in the warres, and the rest ynable to resist, fled into the mountaines, and remote deserts of the West parts of the Isle, and left all to the inuaders, daily growing more, and more vpon them.

For many principall men of *Saxony* (seeing the happy successe, and plantation here of *Hengist*) entred likewise on diuerse coasts to get estates for themselues, with such multitudes of people, as the *Brittaines* making head in one place were assaulted in another, and euery where ouerwhelmed with new increasing numbers.

The seuerall entries made by the *Saxons*.—For after *Hengist* had obtained the dominion of *Kent* (which from him became to be a kingdome), and *Otha*, and *Ebusa* possesse of all the North-countries from *Humber* to *Scotland*: *Ella*, and his sonnes conquered the South-East parts, and beganne the kingdome of the South *Saxons*, contayning *Sussex*, and part of *Surrey*. Then *Cerdic*, and his sonnes landed at *Portsmouth* inuaded the South, and West parts, and began the kingdome of the West *Saxons*, which after contained the Countries of *Hampshire*, | *Barkeshire*, *Wiltshire*, *Dorsetshire*, *Sommersetshire*, and *Deuonshire*. And about the same time, *Vffa* inuaded the North-East parts, and began the kingdome of the East Angles, containing *Northfolke*, *Suffolke*, *Cambridgeshire*, and the Isle of *Ely*; *Erkenwin* began the kingdome of the East *Saxons*, containing *Essex*, *Middlesex*, and a part of *Hartfordshire*.

Hauing thus (in a manner) surrounded the best of the whole State of *Brittaine*; they after inuaded the inner, and middle part. And *Cridda* began the Kingdome of *Mercna-land*, or middle Angles, contayning *Lincolnshire*, *North-hamptonshire*, *Huntingdonshire*, *Rutlandshire*, *Bedford*, *Buckingham*, *Oxfordshire*, *Cheshire*, *Derbie*, *Nottingham*, and *Staffordshire*, with parts of the shires of *Hereford*, and *Hartford*: *Warwicke*, *Shropshire*, *Lancaster* and *Gloucestershire*.

The *Brittaines* vtterly subdued by the *Saxons*.—And with all these Princes, and Leaders, before they could establish

their dominions, the *Brittaines* so desperately grappled, as plant they could not, but vpon destruction and desolation of the whole Country, whereof in the end they extinguished both the Religion, Lawes, Language, and all, with the people and name of *Brittaine*. Which hauing been so long a Prouince of great honour, and benefit to the *Roman* Empire, could not but partake of the magnificence of their goodly structures, Thermes, Aquaducts, High-waies, and all other their ornaments of delight, ease, and greatnesse: all which came to bee so vtterly razed, and confounded by the *Saxons*, as there is not left standing so much as the ruines to point vs where they were: for they being a people of a rough breeding that would not bee taken with these delicacies of life, seemed to care for no other monuments but of earth, and as borne in the field would build their fortunes onely there. Witnesse so many Intrenchments, Mounts, and *Borroughs* raised for tombes, and defences vpon all the wide champions, and eminent Hills of this Isle, remaining yet as characters of the deepe scratches made on the whole face of our Country, to shew the hard labour our Progenitors endured to get it for vs.

Which generall subuersion of a State is very seldome seene: Inuasion, and deuastation of Prouinces haue often beene made, but in such sort as they continued, or recouered, with some commixtion of their owne with the generation of the inuaders. But in this, by reason of the vicinage, and innumerable populacie of that Nation (transporting hither both sexes) the incompatibility of Paganisme, and Christianity, with the immense blood-shed on both sides, wrought such an implacable hatred, as but one Nation must possesse all. The conquest made by the *Romanes*, was not to extirpate the Natiues, but to master them. The *Danes*, which afterward inuaded the *Saxons*, made only at the first depredations on the coast, and therewith for a time contented themselues. When they grew to haue further interest, they sought not the

subversion, but a community, and in the end a Soueraignty of the State, matching with the women they heere found, bringing few of their owne with them. The *Normans* dealt the like with the Prouince of *Nuestria* in *France*, who also after they had the dominion, and what the victorie would yeeld them in *England*, were content to suffer the people heere to haue their being, intermatched with them, and so grew in short space into their body. But this was an absolute subversion, and concurred with the vniversall mutation, which about that time happened in all these parts of the world ; whereof, there was no one Countrey, or Prouince but changed bounds, inhabitants, customes, language, and in a manner, all their names.

The absolute subversion of *Brittaine*, concurred with the generall mutation of other States of the world.—For vpon the breaking vp of the *Roman* Empire (first deuided into two, and then by faction disioynted in each part) imploying the forces of many strange Nations to fortifie their sides, were made so wide ruptures in the North, and North-east bounds of that Empire, as there burst out infinite streames of strange people that ouer-ranne, and laid open the world againe to liberty, other formes, and limits of State : whereupon followed all these transmigrations, and shiftings of people from one Country to another. The *French* and *Burgognons* dispossess the *Gaules*, and gaue the name of *France*, and *Burgogne* to their Prouince. The *Gaules* transplanted themselues on some coasts of *Spaine*, where they could finde, or make their habitation : and of them had *Gallicia* / and *Portugall* their name. The *Huns* and *Auari* subdued *Pannonia*, and thereto gaue the name of *Hungary*.

*Lombardie* so called of the *Longberds*.—The *Longbeards* a people in *Germany*, bordered vpon the *Saxons*, entred *Italy*, got the greatest part thereof, and left there their name to a principall prouince, remaining to this day. The *Gothes* and *Vandalles* miserably afflicted the rest, sackt *Rome*, and after subdued, peopled, and possest *Spaine*. So that it was not in

the fate of *Brittaine* alone to be vndone, but to perish, almost, with the generall dissolution of other States, which happened about the same age.

Wherefore, we are now here to begin with a new Body of people, with a new State, and gouernment of this Land, which retained nothing of the former, nor held other memory but that of the dissolution thereof: where scarce a Citie, Dwelling, Riuer, Hill, or Mountaine, but changed names. *Brittaine* it selfe was now no more *Brittaine*, but *New Saxony*, and shortly after, either of the *Angles* (the greatest people of the inuadors) or of *Hengist*, called *Engist-Land*, or *England*. The distance made by the rage of warre, lay so wide betweene the conquering and the conquered people, that nothing either of Lawes, Rites, and Customes, came to passe ouer vnto vs from the *Brittaines*: nor had our Ancestors any thing from them, but their Countrey: which they first diuided into eight Kingdomes: all which, continued to the last extermination of the *Brittaines* vnder *Caretius* their King, with whom they were driuen ouer *Seuerne*, 136. yeares after the first entertainment of *Hengist*. And soone after, the *Saxons*, encroching vpon each other parts, or States (which neuer held certaine bounds) and the stronger vsurping vpon their weaker neighbours, reduced them to seauen Kingdomes; that of the *Northumbrians*, being made one of two: and then to sixe (the West *Saxons* taking in the Kingdome of *Sussex* to their dominion.) And so it continued about 250 yeares.

At the first, by the space of 150 yeares, they were meerely gouerned by their owne Lawes, without mixture of any other. But after *Augustus* the Monke, sent with forty others, by Pope *Gregory*, had conuerted *Æthelbert*, King of Kent, and some other, they all shortly after receiued the Christian faith, and had their Lawes and Rites ordered according to Ecclesiasticall constitutions. Many of their Kings, when their sterne asperity grew mollified by humility of the Religion, began to raise presently so many and great monuments of their piety in all

parts of the Land, as if they strived who should exceed therein, and had no other glory: Divers of them renounced their temporall dignities for spirituall solitude, and became Monkes: as *Ætheldred*, and *Kinred*, Kings of *Mercna-land*; *Offa* King of the East *Saxons*; *Kadwalla* and *Ina*, Kings of the West *Saxons*; *Eadbert* King of *Northumbrians*, &c.

At length the Kingdomes of *Mercna-land*, and West Saxe, so farre ouer-grew the others in power, as betweene them two it lay, who should haue all. For *Ina*, a martiall, wise, and religious Prince, gouerning the West *Saxons*, first aduanced that Kingdome to a preheminencie, and did much to haue subdued *Mercna-Land*: but yet *Offa*, (afterwards King thereof) was in faire possibility to haue swallowed vp both the West *Saxons*, and all the rest of the Kingdoms. For whilst he liued, which was in the time of *Carolus Magnus*, (with whom he held league and amity) he was esteemed as the especiall King of the Land. But the many wrongs he did, and the murther committed in his house vpon *Æthelbert* King of the East *Angles*, comming to him under publique faith, and a Suitor to his daughter, were iustly reuenged vpon his posterity, which after him declining, in the end lost all. For *Egbert* descended from *Inegild*, the brother of *Ina*, attaining the Kingdome of the West *Saxons*, began the way to bring all the rest into subiection. And being a Prince, who (from a priuate fortune, wherein he liued below, with, and not aboue other men) had learned sufferance and moderation; and by the estate of an exile, experience; grew to haue great aduantages ouer the time, and others borne-fortunes, and rose by these meanes.

*Ina*, his great Vncle, renouncing the world, with his Kingdome, and dying without issue, left the succession imbroiled, and out of the direct royall lyne as hee found it. So that those foure Kings of the West *Saxons*, who seuerally succeeded him; *Ethelard*, *Sigibert*, *Kenulph*, and *Britric*, were rather Kings by election, and their owne power, then / by right

of descent. And *Britric* knowing the weakenesse of his title, and the much promising forwardnesse of *Egbert*; with his propinquity in blood, to the former Kings, practized to haue him made away; which he perceiuing, fled first to *Offa*, King of *Mercna-land*, where finding little security, in regard *Britric* had (to strengthen himselfe) married the daughter of the King, he escaped into *France*, and there remayned till the death of *Britric*, and then returning, obtaines that kingdome of the *West-Saxons*; subdues *Cornewall*, inhabited by the *Brittaines*; and after sets vpon *Bernulph*, newly inuested in the Kingdome of *Mercna-land*; a State (by the rupture of the Royall line) likewise growne tottering. For *Egferth*, the sonne of *Offa*, enioyed but foure moneths the inheritance of his fathers immanity: whereby that Kingdome descended collaterally to *Kennulph*, who left it to *Kenelme* a childe, after murdered by his sister *Quinred*. *Ceolulph*, brother to *Kennulph*, succeeding, after his first yeares reigne, was expeld by *Bernulph*, and *Bernulph* by *Egbert*, who made that Kingdome tributarie to the *West Saxons*, as hee did after that of the South, and *East Saxons*, with the Kingdome of *Northumberland*. And by this meanes (in a manner) attained to a soueraignty of the whole country. But the *Danes* imbroiling his peace in the end of his reigne, held him back from enioying such a fulnesse of power, as that wee may account him the absolute Monarch of the Kingdome; nor yet any of his successors, so long as the *Danes* continued vnsubiected. For they hauing first made irruptions into the State, in the reigne of the late King *Britric* (his predecessor) euer after held a part thereof and afflicted the whole, till they had attained the absolute soueraignty to themselues.

*Egbert* obtayned the kingdome, which by him was named *England*, An. 802.—The description of the *Danes*.—The *Danes* were a people of *Germany*, next neighbours to the *Saxons*, and of language and manners little different: Possessing besides *Cimbrica Chersonesus* (now called *Denmarke*)

all the Isles adiacent in the *Baltique* Sea, and sometimes the Kingdome of *Norway*: A mighty, rough, and martiall Nation; strong in shipping, through their exercise of piracy, and numerous in people for all suppliments. Who perceiuing here the happy successe, and plantation of the *Saxons*, were drawne with desire and emulation, likewise to put in for a part; the coast lying open to inuasion, and the many diuisions of the Land, with the discord of Princes, making them an easie way therevnto. So that in a manner, as soone as the *Saxons* had ended their trauailes with the *Brittaines*, and drew to setling of a Monarchy; the *Danes*, as if ordained to reuenge their slaughters, began to assault them with the like afflictions. The long, the many, and horrible encounters betweene these two fierce Nations, with the bloudshed, and infinit spoiles committed in euery part of the Land, are of so disordered and troublous memory, that what with their asperous name, together with the confusion of place, times, and persons, intricately deliuered, is yet a warre to the reader to ouer-looke them. And therefore to fauour mine owne paines and his, who shall get little profit thereby, I passe them ouer.

After the death of *Egbert*, *Æthelwolph* his sonne succeeded in the State, with the title of King of the West *Saxons* onely, and was a Prince more addicted to deuotion then action: as may be seene by his donation of the tenth part of his Kingdome (with exemption of all regall seruice) for the seruice of God: besides an annuity of three hundred markes, to be bestowed in pious vses at *Rome*; whither he went twice in person, with his youngest sonne *Alfred*, whom he especially loued; and whom (Pope *Leo* the fourth) annoynted a King, at eleuen yeares of age, as if diuining of his future fortune.

Vpon his last iourney and whole yeares stay at *Rome*, *Æthelbald* his eldest sonne, combin'd with the Nobility of the West *Saxons* to keepe him out, and depriue him vtterly of his gouernment, and wrought so, as notwithstanding the great

loue his people bare him, he was brought to yeeld vp the Kingdome of the West *Saxons* to *Æthelbald*, and retaine onely the Kingdome of the East Angles, (a State of farre lesse dignity) to himselfe. After which, reigning but two yeares, *Æthelbald* succeeded in the whole, and with great infamy, marrying his fathers widow, *Judith*, daughter to *Charles le Chauue*, King of *France*, enioyed it but two yeeres and a halfe, when *Æthelred*, the second sonne of *Æthelulph*, entred to the gouernment, which hee held fise yeares in continuall conflict with the *Danes*. After whom, /

Anno 872. *Alfred*.



*Alfred*, the mirrour of Princes (made a King before he had a Kingdome) at two and twenty yeares of his age (& in a yeare wherein eight seuerall battailes had been giuen to the *Danes* by the *Saxons*) beganne his troublous raigne, wherein he was perpetually in war, either against his enemies, or else against vices. First, after a great danger to lose all, he was forced to yeelde vp a part of the Kingdome (which was that of east *Angles* and *Northumberland*) to *Guthrum*, leader of the *Danes*, whom (vpon his baptization) he made his Confederate, and owner of that by right, which before he vsurped by violence.

King *Alfred* first made collection of the *Saxon* Lawes.— And notwithstanding all the continuall, and intricate toyle hee endured amidst the clattering and horror of armes, he performed all noble actions of peace, collecting first the Lawes of his predecessors, and other the Kings of the *Saxons* (as those of *Offa*, King of *Mercna-land*, and *Æthelbert* the first Christian English King) of which, by the graue aduice and consent of his States assembled, hee makes choyce of the fittest, abrogates those of no vse, and addes other according to the necessity of the time.

The first deuision of the Land into Shires, Hundreds and

/// *making  
lawes*

Tythings.—And for that the wildnesse of warre, by reason of these perpetuall conflicts with strangers, had so let out the people of the Land to vnlawfull riots, and rapine, that no man could trauaile without conuoy: He ordayned the diuision of Shires, Hundreds, and Tithings, that euery English man (now the generall name for all the *Saxons*) liuing legally, might be of a certaine hundred, or Tything, out of which, he was not to remoue without security; and out of which, if he were accused of any crime, hee was likewise to produce sureties for his behauiour; which if he could not finde, hee was to endure the punishment of the Law. If any malefactor before or after hee had put in sureties escaped, all the Tything or Hundred were fined to the King, by which meanes he secured Trauailers, and the peace of his Countrey.

Publique Schooles first erected.—The opinion hee had of learning made him often complaine the want thereof, imputing it amongst his greatest misfortunes to haue beene bred without it, and to haue his Kingdome so vtterly destitute of learned men, as it was, through the long continuance of this Barbarous Warre: which made him send out for such, as were any way famous for letters, and hauing gotten them, hee both highly preferred them, and also (as they doe, who knowe not too much themselues) helde them in great veneration: Setting a higher price on meaner parts, then after plenty did on more perfections. *Grimbald* and *Scotus*, hee drewe out of *France*: *Asser* (who wrote his life) out of *Wales*, other from other parts: hee was the first lettered Prince wee had in *England*, by whose meanes and encouragement publique Schooles had here, eyther their reuiuing or beginning.

Those wants of his owne, made him take a greater care for the education of his sons, with whom were bred vnder most diligent masters almost all the children of the Nobility within his Kingdome.

All his owne time he could cleare from other businesse, he bestowed in study, and did himselfe, and caused others to

translate many things into the vulgar tongue, which hee laboured (it seemes) much to adorne, and especially affected the *Saxons* meeters, whereby to glorifie that of a King, he attained the title of Poet. (*West. Westm.*)

The naturall day consisting of 24. houres, he cast into three parts: whereof eight hee spent in prayer, study and writing; eight in the seruice of his body; and eight in the affaires of his State. Which spaces (hauing then no other engine for it) hee measured by a great wax light, deuided into so many parts, receiuing notice by the keeper thereof, as the seuerall houres passed in the burning.

The first suruey of the Kingdome.—With as faire an order did he proportion his reuenues, equalling his liberalities to all his other expences, whereof to make the current run more certaine, he took a precise notice of them, and made a generall suruay of the Kingdome, and had all the particulars of his Estate registred in a booke, which he kept in his Treasury at *Winchester*. And within this circumference of order, he held him in that irregularity of Fortune, with a weake disposition of body, and raigned 27. yeares, leauing his sonne *Edward*, a worthy Successor to mayntaine the line of Noblenesse thus begunne by him.


Anno 900.—*Edwardus Senior.*




*Edward*, though hee were farre inferiour to him in learning, went much beyond him in power: for he had all the Kingdome of *Mercna-land* in possession, whereof *Alfred* had but the homage, and as some Write, held soueraignty ouer the east *Angles*, and *Northumbrians*: though we find (in the ioynt Lawes that he, and *Guthrum* made together) they held the same confederation fore-concluded by *Alfred*. He also subdued the *Brittains* in *Wales*: Fortified and furnished with garrisons diuerse Townes in *England* that lay fit to preuent the incursions of the *Danes*;

and was all his raigne of 23. yeares in continuall action, and euer before hand with Fortune. And surely his father, he, and many that succeeded during this *Danicq* Warre, though they lost their ease, won much glory and renowne. For this affliction held them so in, as hauing little out-lets, or leasure for ease and luxury; they were made the more pious, iust and carefull in their gouernment: otherwise it had beene impossible to haue held out against the *Danes*, as they did, being a people of that power and vndauntable stomacke, as no fortune could deterre, or make to giue ouer their hold. And the imbecility of some vnactiue Prince, at that time had beene enough to haue let them quite into the whole: which may be the cause, that in the succession of some of these Kings, were certaine ruptures made out of course, in respect of their ablenesse. As first, after the death of this renowned King *Edward Senior*, his Sonne.

Anno 924.—*Athelstan* a Bastard preferred before the lawfull sonne.

 *Thelstan* of full yeares, and spirit, was (notwithstanding the bracke in his birth) preferred before his legitimate sonne *Edmond* vnder age: Nor did *Athelstan* disappoynt the Kingdome in this worke, but performed all noble parts of Religion, Iustice and Magnanimity, and after sixteene yeares raigne died without issue.

Anno 940.—*Edmond*—*Edred* or *Eldred*—*Edwin*.

 *Dmond* his brother succeeded him: A Prince likely to haue equalled the worth of his Predecessors, had he not vntimely perished by the hand of a base outlaw in his owne house, at a festiuall, amidst his people that dearly loued and honoured him. And though he left two sonnes, yet was

**E***Dred* his brother preferred to the Kingdome before them: who (making no variation from the line of Vertue continued by his Ancestors) was held perpetually in worke by the *Danes* during the whole time of his raigne, which was of ten yeares.

**E***Dwin* his Nephew, the eldest sonne of *Edmond*, succeeded him (an irregular youth) who interrupting the course of goodnesse liued dissolutely, and dyed wishedly. Otherwise had *Edgar* (the other sonne of *Edmond*) continued that rare succession of good Princes, without the interposition of any ill, which is not in the Fate of a Kingdome.

Anno 959.—*Edgar*—*Edgar* provides shipping—A most vsefull progresse.

**E***Dgar*, though he were but sixteene yeares of age, yet capable of counsell, was by the graue aduice of his Bishops (who in that time of zeale held especially the raines on the hearts, and affections of men) put, and directed in the way of goodnesse, and became a most heroicall Prince. Amongst other his excellent actions of gouernment, hee provided a mighty Nauy to secure his coasts from inuasion, which now hee found (though late) was the only meane to keep out those miseries from within, that thus lamentably afflicted the Land euer before negligent, or not invred to Sea-affaires. For when the *Romans* first subdued the same, there was no shipping but a few small vessells made of wicker, and couered with hides: wherby they, and after the *Danes* (both mighty, as those times gaue, in shipping) found that easie footing they had. Yet *Egbert* is sayd to haue provided a strong Nauy, about the yeare 840. And *Alfred* 30. or 40. yeares after did the like. But either now dis-vs'd or consumed by the enemy, *Edgar* re-edifies, & sets forth a fleete consisting (as some write) of 1600. saile, others a farre greater number; and those he diuides into foure parts of the Realme,

making his progresse yearely, with part of his mighty Nauy, round about the whole Isle, whereof he assumed the title of King.

And to reduce it to one name and Monarchie, hee was intituled King of all *Albion*, as testifies his Charter granted to the Abbey of *Maldesmesbury*, in these words: *Ego Edgarus totius Albionis Basilius, nec non Maritimorum, seu insulanorum Regum circum habitantium, &c.* For hee hauing first of all other made peace with the *Danes*, and granted them quiet co-habitation through all his Dominions; had the Soueraignty ouer them: And *Kenneth*, King of *Scots* did him homage, whether for *Cumberland* and *Westmerland*, giuen to that Crowne by King *Edmond* his father; or for his whole kingdome; I cannot say. And fise Kings of *Wales* did the like for their Country, and came all to his Court at *Cardiffe*.

He raigned 16 yeares.—Saint *Edward*.—Anno 975.—So that hee seemes the first, and most absolute Monarch of this Land, that hitherto wee finde: The generall peace that held all his time, honoured his name with the Title of *Pacificus*; and rendred his Kingdome (neuer before acquainted with the glory of quietnesse) very flourishing. But as if the same had beene giuen to shewe, and not to vse (like a short calme betwixt stormes) it lasted but little beyond his raigne of sixteene yeares: being too short to close the disseuered ioynts of a commixed kingdome; which was onely, to haue beene the worke of Time; and that none of these late Princes (who were best like to haue aduanced, and confirmed the State of a Monarchie) were ordayned to haue. But all (as if things would another way) were put off from their ends, by their vntimely deaths: as was this glorious young Prince, in the two and thirtieth yeare of his age: leauing his sonne *Edward*, a childe, to vndergo the miseries of non-age, to bee made a sacrifice for ambition, and a Saint by persecution, through the hand of a step-mother; who to aduance her owne son *Ethelred*, brake in ouer the bounds of Nature and right, to

make his way ; and is sayd, her selfe to haue murdered him, comming to her house, estrayed, in hunting, and discompanied, in the Isle of *Purbecke*.

## *Ethelred.*

Anno 978.—Two conquests of this kingdome in fifty yeares.

**B**VT *Ethelred*, as if ill set, prospered not on this ground, the entrance to whose raigne was blood, the middle, misery ; and the end, confusion. They write, Saint *Dunstan* Preaching at his Coronation, prophetically (fore-told him) of the calamities would follow this transgression : Saying : *For that thou hast aspired to the Crowne, by the death of thy brother, murdered by thy mother : Thus sayth the Lord : The sword shall neuer depart from thy house, raging against thee all the dayes of thy life, slaying those of thy seed, till the Kingdome be transferred to another, whose fashion and language, the people shall not know. Nor shall thy sinne, nor the sinne of thy ignominious mother, with her Counsellors, be expiated, but by long auengement.* And this (whether so vttered or not) was ratified in the euent. For eyther this vniust disordering the succession or the concurrency of hidden causes meeting with it, so wrought, as this late begunne Monarchy fell quite asunder, and begat the occasion of two Conquests, by Forraine Nations, within the space of fifty yeares.

The spoyles made by the *Danes*.—The originall of *Dane* gelt, the first imposition layd vpon the Kingdome.—For the *Danes*, hauing now beene so long inmates with the English, dis-spread ouer all parts by intermatching with them, and multiplying with the late peace and Confederations, had their party (though not their rule) greater then euer : so that this oportunitie of a young and vnsetled Prince, in a new and brangling State, drewe ouer such multitudes of other of the same Nation, as euery Coast and Part of the Land, were

miserably made the open rodes of spoyle and sackage : in such sort, as the State knew not where to make any certaine head against them : For if encountred in one place, they assailed another, and had so sure intelligence what, and where all preparations were raised, as nothing could be effected auaylable to quaille them : Whereupon *Ethelred*, in the end, was faine, seeing he could not preuaile with the sword, to assayle them with mony; and bought a peace for 10000. pounds: which God wot, proued after, a very deare peny-worth to the common-wealth, shewing the seller thereof, how much was in his power, and the buyer, at how hard a rate his necessity was to be serued ; & yet not sure of his bargaine, longer then the Contractor would. Who hauing found the benifit of this / market, raised the price thereof almost euey year. And yet had not *Ethelred* what he paide for : the Land in one part or other, neuer free from spoyle and inuasion ; but rather the more now opprest, both by the warre, and this taxation. Which was the first we finde in our Annales, laide vpon the Kingdome (and with heauy grieuance raysed in a poore distressed State) continuing many ages after the occasion was extinct : And in the end (though in another name) became the vsuall supplyment, in the dangers of the Kingdome, and the occasions of Princes.

And hereby *Ethelred* both enlarged the meanes, and desire of the enemy, so that at length, came *Swain*, King of *Denmarke* and *Anlase*, King of *Norway*, in person, as if likewise to receiue hire for committing outrage ; and were both returned with great sums, and *Anlase* of a milder disposition, with baptisme. These callamities from abroad, were made more, by the disloyalties at home, faith and respect (beeing seldome found safe in lost fortunes) held not in most of the principall men employed in the defence. *Aelfricke*, Admirall of the Nauy, is sayd to haue giuen intelligence of all Sea-preparations, and disappoynted that worke. The Earles *Fran*, *Frithigift*, *Godwin*, and *Turkettle* discended of *Danike*

progeny, and of greatest commaund, deceiued the armies by Land, and were the authors of discouragement to the people they led. *Edric* Earle of *Marc-land*, after them made Generall of the Kings forces, is branded with euerlasting ignominy, and the title of *False*, for his barbarous disloyalty, frustrating all attempts wherein he was employed.

*Wolnod* a Nobleman, for his misdemeanour outlawd, made depredations on the coasts with twenty ships, and was the cause that fourescore men sent to take him in, were vtterly consumed. This defection of his Nobility, howsoever it might bee by their owne discontent, emulation, corruption, or affection: is layde to the pride of *Ethelred*, whom yet we finde more vnfortunate then weake, howsoever they haue set his marke, and neglected no occasion to make resistance and preparations against all euent, bringing often his affaires to the very point of dispatch, and yet put by, at an instant from all, as if nothing went with him, but his will to do worthely: which howsoever it were, (besides the misery to loose) hee must haue (that which accompanies infelicity) *Blame*, and *Reproach*. Though the many and desperate battailes he made and good constitutions for the gouernment; the prouisions to supply all important occasions, shew, that hee was not much behinde the best Princes, but onely in fortune.

By the example of *Edgar* his Father, hee procured a mighty Nauie; causing of euery three hundred and ten Hide, or Plough-land throughout the Kingdome, a Shippe to bee built, and of euery eight, a Corslet to be found: Yet all this shipping stood him in little stead, but was either quasht with tempest, consumed with fire by the enemy, or otherwise made vnusefull by neglect, or ignorance: whereby the hope and infinite charge of the State were disappoynted. Famine and mortality, the attendants of warre, with strange inundations, wrought likewise their part, as if conspirators of destruction, all concurred to make a dismall season.

Many yeares it was not, ere *Swaine* King of *Danes*, returned

to raise againe new summes, by new afflictions ; and tormenting heere this poore turmoyled people, more then euer, receiues a fee for bloodshed, to the summe of 48000. pounds, granted in the generall assembly of the States at *London* ; and a peace, or rather paction of seruitude concluded ; with quiet cohabitation, vse of like liberties, and a perfect vnion betweene the two Nations, confirmed by oathes of either part, and hostages deliuered of ours.

But this as a breathing time, scarce held out the yeare : When the occasion of greater mischiefes was giuen by a vniuersall massacre of the *Danes* suddenly heere contriued : and effected by the Kings commandement, vpon the suggestion of *Hune*, a great Commaunder, and a violent warriour of that time : Vrging the insolencie of the *Danes*, that now growne haughty with this peace, committed many outrages, violating the Wiues and Daughters of Great men, with many other intollerable disorders. /

The massacre of the *Danes*, Anno 1002.—*Gunild* slaine.—Such, and so suddaine was the generall execution of this act, throughout all parts of the kingdome at one instant, as shewed the concurrency of an inveterate rankor, and incompatibility of these two nations, impossible to be conioyned, So that neither Temples, Altars, Supplications, nor any band of aliance, were auailable to saue them from slaughter. Wherein to insence the more their King, *Gunild*, his sister, a woman of masculine courage, who had a little before receiued Christendom, a mediator and pledge of the peace, hauing first her husband and son slaine in her sight, rather with a threatning, then appaled countenance, met her death making imprecation for reuenge, and foretelling her blood would, as it did, cost *England* deere.

*Swaine* wins *England*.—*Ethelred* flies into *Normandy*.—*Swaines* death.—Soone was the notice of this enormous act, giuen to *Swaine*, and as soone armed with rage and power, re-entered hee the Kingdome, hauing now a fairer shew to doe

fowlie, then euer: wrong had made him a right, who had none before: and the people of the Land, not so forward to maintaine their acts, as commit it, rather were content to giue him the possession of their country, then that he should win it: the greatest part of the Kingdome submitting themselues vnto him; onely the City of *London*, which *Ethelred* held fortified, made noble resistance till he left them; and conueyed himselfe first into the Isle of *Wight*, and after into *Normandy*, whither he had sent *Emma* his Queene, with her two sonnes, *Alfrid* and *Edward*, before, from the rage of this tempest. But within two moneths he was recalled home by the people of *England*, vpon the death of *Swaine*, who at the point to haue beene crowned King, and had generally taken hostages and oathes of fealty, died suddenly: leauing his sonne *Knute* to succeed his fortunes, and accomplish what he intended.

*Ethelred* returnes.—*Knute* returnes.—*Ethelreds* death.—*Ethelred* returning, was soone furnisht with an Army, sets vppon *Knute* in *Lindsey*; where hee lay with his Fathers shipping, and Hostages, and draue him to take the seas: wherewith inraged, making about to *Sandwich*, hee miserably mangled, and dismembred those hostages, and so sent them home: himselfe, with the spoyles his Father and hee had gotten, returned to his country, to make greater preparations for the prosecution of his purpose. *Ethelred* in the meane time, to increase the summe of reuengement, with more wrath, at a generall assembly at *Oxford*, caused many of the *Danique* Nobility to be murdered: Among which were *Sigifrith*, and *Morchar*, Earles of *Northumberland*, whom the false *Edric* (who had a hand one each side for mischief) inuiting to his lodging, vnder pretence of feasting, barberously caused to be slayne: their followers, after they had so long as they could desperately defended themselues and their maisters, fled into a Church, where they were with the same burnt. *Knute*, armed with the greatest of his owne and neighbours powers made

his confederates, landed againe, within the yeare, at *Sandwich*, and without resistance, had all the West parts rendred vnto him, with pledges for their obedience, and furnishment with horse and armor. Here the false *Edric* leaues his Liege-lord, and yeelds vp forty shippes and his periured Faith to *Knute*. *Ethelred*, languishing in minde and body, *Edmond* his son, surnamed *Ironside* (to oppose youth to youth) was employed against this rabious inuador. A Prince worthy of a better time, and had hee found Faith, had made it so, and deliuered his Country at that turne, from the worst of miseries, the conquest by strangers.

## *Knute. Edmond Ironside.*

*Edmond Ironside* sonne to *Ethelred*, by his first wife *Ethelgina*.  
Anno 1016.

**B**UT now vpon the death of *Ethelred* (whose 37. yeares reigne, shewes that infelicity shall haue time too much, and happinesse too little), *Knute* was by most of the Clergy and Nobility there about, made election of *Edmond*, and furnished him with that power, as thereby, with the courageous ardour of his youth (which commonly is most in the first attempts) he had the better in three imminent battels, within three moneths, and had likewise obtained the Fourth at *Essendon* (likely to haue beene the last with the *Danes*) but that the disloyall *Edric* (late renouncing his new Lord, seeing *Edmonds* part in possibilitie to preuaile) againe betrayed his truth, and withdrew himselfe and the charge he had, to the enemy. This fatal battell lost *England*: heere perished the best flower of honour it then had: Heere amongst the rest was slaine, *Vikil*, an Earle of *Essex*, of euer memorable worth, who had long stood vp for the Kingdome, and in the time of *Swaine*, was the first that shewed there was hope and possibility to quail the enemy, had there bin an vnion in loyalty.

*Edmonds* single combate with *Knute*.—Peace concluded.—*England* deuided betweene them.—The death of King *Edmond Ironside* at Oxford.—From this bloody worke, *Edmond* escapes to *Glocester*, to recollect new forces; nor was hee so forsoken with this Fortune, but that hee soone recouered another army, to re-assaile the enemy, that might bee idle vppon this victorie. But *Knute* as prouident in the prosecution of his businesse, as fortunate therein, makes after: Heere when both Armies weere at the poynt to incounter, a motion of peace was propounded: Some say the two Kings, by single combat consented to decide their fortunes, and the ouer-commer to take all: and that (in an Isle of the Riuer *Seuern*, their Armies, on either shore, spectators of the act) they tried the maistery for the prize of a Kingdome. After long and equall fight, finding each others worth, they cast away their weapons, imbraced, and concluded the peace. But howsoever; it seemes (both sides tyred with the misery of a consuming warre, neuer like to be ended, but by the vtter extirpation of the one, and considering the danger of the either, and incertainty of the future) weere easily perswaded to imbrace a present agreement which was made, by parting *England* betwixt them two, and confirmed by Oath and Sacrament: putting on each others Apparell, and Armes, as a ceremony to expresse the attonement of their mindes, as if they made trans-action of their persons each to the other: *Knute* became *Edmond*, and *Edmond*, *Knute*. A fatall exchange, for so free and magnanimous a Prince as *Edmond*: who indeed, was now no more himselfe; and being but halfe a King, was in so few dayes after, none: as makes this peace shew fouler then warre: for that armed him for life, this exposed him naked to death, which was shortly after treacherously given him at *Oxford*; some say, by the son of *Edric* (as if to shew hee would bee the heire of his father also in Treason) whereby both the hope, and the other halfe of *England* were vtterly lost, as determinable with his reigne; which (with all we haue else of his magnanimous actions) took vp scarce the

circuit of one whole yeare: And yet had that bene space enough for glorie (whose measure is to be taken rather by the profundity, then the length, which seldome holds long and euen) could he haue had that cleere: And better for his renowne, to haue died at the battaile of *Essendon* with *England*, then condescended to haue made it halfe *Denmarke*, and liue.

### *Knute.*

A. 1018. *Knute* the first *Danique* King.—83000 pounds paide to King *Knute* for euacuation of Strangers.



VT by this meanes, *Knute* attained the absolute dominion of the whole Kingdome, which hee gouerned with better Iustice then hee got it, conforming his natiue roughnesse, to a more ciuill, and regular fashion of life: And to haue *England* see, that now he was hers; he sends away his Nauie, and stipendary souldiers home to their countries, and puts himselfe wholly vpon this people; taking the way of mildnesse a better meanes for his establishment, then force: but the Land paid for the remuneration of his people, and this euacuation of Strangers 83000 pounds of siluer; which it rather consented to doe at once, then to haue them a daily burthen, to pester the State for euer.

*Edward* married to *Agatha* the Queene of *Hungaries* sister. —At his first comming to the Crowne, he sought to rid himselfe, as well of his friends, as of those might prooue his enemies. *Edric*, who came first to salute him sole King of *England* (as if to tell, that he made him so) hee caused his head to be set on the highest part of the Tower of *London*; therein performing his promise, of aduancing him aboue any Lord of the Land, and thereby discharged himselfe of such a debt; which, though he should haue paide, would neuer yet bee held fully cleered; giuing a generall satisfaction thereby to the people, they reioyced to see Treason so iustly rewarded.

Like compensation had shortly after, the Earles *Turkill*, and *Erick* who being banished the Land, were executed vpon their arriuall in *Denmarke*. But the loue, and high opinion of Iustice he got in these, were lost againe in those actions, wherein hee tooke counsell onely / of his feares, for the extirpation of all those of the Royall blood of *England*; As of *Edwin*, and *Edward* the sonnes of the late King *Edmond* (to whom appertayned the moietie of the Kingdome by contract) and of *Edwin* his brother, which three, he sent to be murdered abroad, to beguile the rumore at home: But which is strange; those times, though rough, affoorded not yet an instrument for the execution of his desire: and all these Princes were preserued, and conueyed out of danger by those, who should haue made them away. The two last were bred by *Salomon*, King of *Hungarie*, where *Edward* (suruiuing his brother) marryed *Agatha* sister to the Queene (and daughter to the Emperour *Henry* the second) by whom he had two sons, *Edmond*, and *Edgar*; daughters, *Margaret* and *Christian*.

His erection of Churches and of Church gouernment.—  
*Alfred*, and *Edward*, sonnes of King *Ethelred*, by *Emme*, were preserued by *Richard*, Duke of *Normandy* their Vncle, and so lay out of his way. This priuate iniustice (which often may be more in compassion, then hurt to the State) he sought to recompence with all publique satisfactions, repairing the naufrage of the common wealth (made by the rage of warre) both in ornament and order: erecting Churches and Monasteries with large pattents of prouisions; both for the expiation of his immanities fore-committed, and to memorize the places of his victories with his thankfulness to God. The Constitutions Ecclesiasticall and Ciuile, divulged in the Language of that time, testifie his tender piety, and care of Iustice: and are so full of religious admonitions, as it seemes he held, the best meanes to haue lawes obserued, was, by hauing them first inacted in the consciences of men. Amongst others, hee inflicted exact punishment on all intemperances of

his people, and offences committed against publique manners. Seuerer hee was, but not cruell: few of his lawes sanguinary, as beeing not the custome of the time, which though rough, yet found meanes to maintaine publique manners, without that luctuall remedy of blood. No punishments cappitall, vnlesse conspiracies; the rest were all pecuniary mulcts, banishments, bondage or imprisonment. To shew his clemency, this (amongst many) is one example: there was a law, that, *Whosoever had committed theft; and the goodes found in his house, all his familie were made bond, euen to the childe in the cradle:* This he abrogates, as most vniust, and ordaines, *That onely the malefactor, and such as should aide him, should indure the punishment, and that the wife (vnlesse the things stolne were found vnder her locke) should not be guilty of her husbands offence.*

Thus was hee to his people, with whom, hee is saide to haue soe well cleared himselfe (howsoever he did with God) that he became King of their affections, as well as of their Country. And to maintaine this opinion, he did many popular acts: as first of all Rites of Honour and reuerence to the memory of the late King *Edmond*, his confederate: besides the executing of all such as could be found to haue had any hand in that murther. Then married he here at home, *Emme*, late wife to King *Ethelred* (though it were more for his honour then hers, to accept his bed; that had bin the persecutor of her husband and children) whereby hee held the Duke of *Nor-mandy*, from attempting any thing for his Nephewes, in regard, his sister might haue other by him.

*Knute* King of *England*, *Denmarke*, and *Norway*.—Hauing thus established this mighty Kingdome, occasion prepares him another. The people of *Norway*, contemning the debilitie of their King, and conspiring to depose him, grew into faction: whereuppon hee fastens; and with the great forces hee brought out of *England*, the might of mony, and high estimation of his worthines, so préuailed, as he soone obtained that Kingdome,

and was now the most renoued and potent Prince in all these parts of the world: intituled, King of *England*, *Denmarke*, and *Norway*.

Here withall grew his magnificence, as wide as his power, and was especially extended to the Church, which hee laboured most to gratifie, either for the conscience of his deedes, or that his people, (generally addicted to deuotion) might be made the more his. And holding it not enough to poure out his immense bountie heere within the land, seekes to make *Rome* also feeble the fulnesse thereof, whither hee went in person, and performed many workes of charitie and honour; both there, and in all his voyage. Hee freed the *Saxon* schoole, his predecessors of *England* had founded, from all imposition: as he did likewise all straights and passages, where trauailers were with rigor constraind to pay toll.

Of his entertaynment at *Rome* with the Pope, *Conrado* the Emperour, and diuerse other Princes of the Christian world, himselfe writes to the Bishops and Nobility of *England*, and withall exhorts them very powerfully to haue an especiall regard to the due administration of Iustice, to all his subiects alike, without doing the least wrong for his gaine, hauing no neede to aduance his reuenue by sinne: And also charges them to see all *Churchscot* and *Ramescot* fully cleared before his returne.

*Knute* the most absolute Monarch of this Kingdome, of any that was before him.—The actiue vertue of this Prince, beeing the mightiest, and most absolute Monarch that euer yet appeared in this Kingdome, the author of sect, and first of a new Gouvernement, is such; as shewes he striues by all worthy wayes, to lay the ground-work of a State; which according to his frame, was liker to hold good to his posterity, then not. And as likely was he, to haue beene the roote of a succession, spreading into many descents, as was afterward the *Norman*, hauing as plentifull an issue masculine, as he: besides, he raigned neere as long; farre better beloued; of

disposition more bountifull, and of power, larger to do good. But it was not in his fate; his children miscarried in the succession, and all this great worke fell in a manner with himselfe.

## Harold.

Anno 1038.—*Harold's cruelty.*



*Harold*, the eldest sonne of *Knute* (some write by his fathers ordinance, others by the election of the *Danique* Nobility, in an assembly at *Oxford*) was made King: whereas *Godwin* Earle of *Kent*, and the Nobility of *England*, would haue chosen *Hardiknute*, borne of Queene *Emme*, or else *Alfred*, the sonne of *Ethelred*, who is sayd to haue come out of *Normandy*, vpon the death of *Knute*, to claime the Crowne; But *Harold*, being at hand carried it; The first act of whose reigne, was the banishment, and surprizing all the treasure of his step-mother Queene *Emme*; Then the putting out the eyes of *Alfred* her sonne, his competitor: and committing him to a loathsome prison, where hee died. For which deede, the Earle *Godwin* beares a foule marke, as betraying him. Queene *Emme* repaires to *Baldouin*, Earle of *Flanders*, her kinsman, where she remained during the reigne of *Harold*, which was but of foure yeares, and then with her sonne *Hardiknute* (who came out of *Denmarke*, as it seemes prepared for some thing else, then to visit her at *Bridges*) returned into *England*.

## Hardiknute.

Anno 1041.



His *Hardiknute* inuested in the Gouvernment, soone frustrated the hope and opinion fore-conceiued of him, and first in like sort beganne with that degenerous act of reuenge (wherein none are sayd so much to delight in, as women) causing the body of the late

king to bee vntomb'd, the head cut off, and throwne into the Thames ; Then makes inquisition for such as were guilty of the death of *Alfride*, his brother by the mother, whereof Earle *Godwin* and the Bishop of *Worcester* are accused ; The Bishop is dispossess his Sea, and the Earle with a rich and rare deuised present, in forme of a Ship of gold, appeased that furie, making protestation of his innocency before the whole Nobilitie, with whom in respect his deepe roote had spread so many branches, he stood firme, and all the blame was layd to the violence and rankor of the late King.

Besides the offending these great men, hee added a generall grieuance to the whole Kingdome, by a prodigall largesse, giuing to euery Marriner of his Nauy eight Markes, and to euery Maister tenne, which hee imposed to bee payde by the State. But after hauing called home *Edward* his other halfe brother, out of *Normandy*, hee liued not long, for farther violences ; Dying suddenly the second yeare of his reigne, in the celebration of a marriage at *Lambeth* in his greatest iolity, not without suspicion of poyson.

The reason of the extinction of the *Danes* in England (Anno 1042).—And with him ended the Gouernment of the *Danes* in *England* (having onely continued 26. yeeres vnder these three last Kings) and that without any cracke or noyse, by reason the nation had no predominant side, that might sway the State, in respect of the remission of their power home in the first yeere of *Knute*, and no great admission of others after : and that such, as were here before, were now so incorporated with the *English*, as they made one body : and most of them planted in the remote parts of the Kingdome, that lay ouer against *Denmarke* : whereby, that which with all the struggling, no power or diligence of man could resist, expired of it selfe : leauing *England* to a King of her owne, and *Denmarke* to ciuill discord about the succession ; *Norway* likewise returning obedience to a son of *Olaue*, recouered quietnesse, and a home-borne King.

## Edward the Confessor.

*Edward the Confessor (Anno 1042).—His continency.*



**E**DWARD (the son of *Ethelred*) is sent for into *Normandy*, and by the whole State elected, and crowned King of *England*, at *Winchester*, by *Edfine* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, Anno 1042. being about forty yeares of age. *Godwin*, Earle of *Kent*, was a principall agent in his preferment, but, for his owne ends. The Kingdome (as hauing dearely payde for the admission of strangers) ordained, that he should not bring any *Normans* with him. The first Act he did, was the remission of the *Danegilt*, imposed by his Father, which amounted to forty thousand pounds yearely, and had beene payd for forty yeeres past. Hee caused the Lawes to bee collected, out of those of the *Mercians*, *West Saxons*, *Danes*, and *Northumbrians*, and to be written in Latine. He was a Prince most highly renowned for his piety; and fit for no other, then the calme time he had. For hauing beene so long brought vp with the Nunnes at *Iumieges* in *Normandy*, he scarce knew to be a man, when he came into *England*. And to shew how little he vnderstood himselfe; they note, how in a great anger, he sayd to a base fellow, that disturbed his game in hunting, *I would punish thee, were I able*. And as if he had vowed their continency, with whom hee was bred, hee was so far from knowing other women (either through conscience or debility) as his owne wife after his death, protested her selfe free from any carnall act done by him, and yet liued he (for the most part) with her in all formall shew of marriage.

Earle *Godwins* greatnesse.—The Earles *Syward* and *Leofrike*, men of noble actions.—The soft simplicity of this King, gaue way to the greatnesse of the Earle *Godwin*, and his children, who for that hee would seeme the especiall man in his preferment to the Crowne; and by matching his daughter *Edith*

to him, swayed chiefly the wheele of that time: and yet not without opposition: For *Syward*, Earle of *Northumberland*, and *Leofrike*, Earle of *Hereford* (men of as great State and spirit), seeing him most for himselfe, became more for the King, and had their turne in performing very noble actions. Nor did their emulation, but much conduce to the present benefit both of the King, and State; For the Earle *Syward* would not be behind hand, in effecting as braue deedes in the North, as *Harold*, Earle of *Westsexe*, the son of the Earle *Godwin* performed against the *Welch*, in the West: For the first deprived of life and Crowne, *Macbeth*, an vsurper, and inuested *Malcolm*, in the Kingdome of *Scotland*; the other defeited *Ris*, and *Griffine*, two brothers, Kings of *Wales*, and subdued that Prouince to this Crowne.

*Eustace* Earle of *Bullogne* married *Goda* the Kings sister.— Besides, the Earle *Godwin* had to struggle with an Archbishop of *Canterbury*, *Robert* a *Norman*, preferred from a Monke, first to *London*, and after to that Sea, by the King, inwardly affecting most that nation, as being part of their bloud, and bred amongst them. Of whom it seemed (notwithstanding the former order taken to the contrary) he had many about his person, whose neerenesse, being strangers, whatsoeuer they did, could not auoyd to be thought to doe all offices against the Earle, and the *English* in general: whereby, what went not right in the line of mens desires, was thought to be their cause. And in stomackes full charged, this occasion gaue more fire. *Eustace* Earle of *Bullogne*, who had married *Goda* the Kings sister, hauing beene at the Court, and returning into *France*, his Harbenger in taking vp lodgings at *Douer*, vpon his peremptory behauiour, was by a Citizen slaine; The Earle arriuing with all his traine, pursues, and slue the homicide, with 18. other. The City seeing this, tooke armes, and in the bickering, the Earle lost 22. of his men: whereupon, backe he hastes to the King, aggrauates the insolency of the Citizens so farre; that the Earle *Godwin* is

sent for, and commanded with a power of men, to make against the City of *Douer*, to chastice the people. The Earle (considering it was vpon the information of one side) aduised the King rather to send for the chiefe of the City, to understand what they could say for themselues, and accordingly to proceed ; which (being taken for a coldnesse in the businesse, and of fauour to his Countrymen) gaue the King and his enemies occasion to suspect his affection.

Earle *Godwins* insurrection.—The *French* forsake the Court, and Kingdome of *England*.—Shortly after, the Earle is summoned to an Assembly at *Glocester*, where neither hee, nor any of his sons would appeare ; and suspecting some practise against him by his enemies, raises forces, pretending to suppress the *Welch*, who were not found to offend ; whereupon the Assembly remoues to *London*, summons him againe to make his appearance, to dismissee his forces, and to come onely attended with twelue persons. Hee sends them word ; to dismissee his forces hee was content, or any thing else the King would command him, so it were with the safety of his life and honour ; but to come disaccompanied, was for neither. Then was hee commanded within fife dayes to depart the Realme, which he did, and with *Toustaine*, and *Swayne* his sons, gets him into *Flanders*, where *Toustaine* married the daughter of the Earle *Baldouin* the 5. *Harald* his eldest son, departs into *Ireland*: the King puts from him the Queene, to bee partaker of the disgrace, and misery of her house ; who is described (by the writers of those times) to haue beene a Lady of rare parts, excellently learned, beautifull, and as faire of minde as body. The Earle *Godwin* in this desperate fortune (whilst the *French* and his enemies possest the King) fell to Piracy, disturbed the coasts, approached *London*, by the Riuer ; and being so popular, as no forces would oppose against him, made at length his own peace with power ; in such sort, as the *French* fearing reuenge, forsooke both the Court, and Kingdome.

Thus (as fore-pointing to a storme that was gathering on that coast) began the first difference with the *French* nation : which, thus acquainted with the distraction of the Kingdome, and factions of great men, wrought on those aduantages, and were instruments to draw on the fatall enterprize that followed.

The weakenesse of the King, and the disproportionate greatnesse of the Earle *Godwin*, being risen vp from so great a fall (learning thereby, to looke better to his feete, and make his sides strong) increased these discontentments, and partialities in the State ; wherein many acts of iniustice, by the sway of power and passion were committed ; which did much blacken that time of peace, and made a good man (not by doing, but enduring ill) held to be a bad King.

Queen *Emmes* affliction and triall.—And it is said, that *Emme*, the Queene-mother, had her part of much affliction in his reigne, suffering both in her goods and fame : and now to purge her selfe of a scandall raised on her with *Alwyn* Bishop of *Winchester*, she vnder-went the triall of *Fire-Ordeall* (which was to passe blind-fold, with bare feete, ouer certaine plough-share, made red hote, and layd an vneuen distance one before the other) which she safely performed. And the reason why, both her son and the State so little respected this great Lady, whose many yeares had made her an actor in diuers fortunes, was, for that she neuer affected King *Ethelred*, nor the children she had by him : and for her marriage with *Knute*, the great enemy and subduer of the Kingdome, whom she euer much more loued liuing, and commended dead.

King *Edward* founder of *Westminster* Church.—It seemed these priuate grudges, with mens particular ends, held these times so busied, that the publike was neglected, and an issue-lesse King, gaue matter for ambition and power, to build hopes and practises vpon ; though for his owne part, he shewed to haue had a care for the succession, in sending for

his Nephew *Edward*, intituled the Outlaw, with his children, out of *Hungary*. But *Edward*, shortly after his arriual, died, and *Edgar* his son (surnamed *Atheling*, to say Prince *Edgar*) whom hee had by his wife *Agatha*, daughter of the Emperor *Henry* the 2. who (either by reason of his youth, which yet was no barre to his right, or being borne and bred a stranger, little / knowing, or knowne to the Kingdome) had his claime neglected vpon the death of this *Pious* King. Which was *Anno* 1065. when he had reigned 24. yeares. His corps was interred in the Church of *Westminster*, which he had newly founded.

## *Harald the second.*

*Harald* the second (*Anno* 1065).



AND *Harald*, son to Earle *Godwin* (the next day after) was preferred to the Crowne, whether by any title hee might pretend from the *Danique* Kings, as descended from that Nation (and, as some report, son to *Githa* sister to *Swaine*;) or by meere election of the greater part of the Nobility, wee cannot say: but it seemes, the pressing necessity of the time, that required a more man, to vndergo the burthen of warre, and that trouble, the world was like to fall into, by reason of the claimes now made, both by the *Dane*, and *Norman*, cast it suddainly vpon him; as the most eminent man of the Kingdome, both by the experience of his owne deseruings, and the strength also of his owne, and the alliance of his wife *Algith*, sister of *Edwin* and *Morckar*, Earles of *Yorckshire* and *Chester*. Neither did hee faile (but in fortune) to make good this election; taking all the best courses, both for the well ordering of the State, and all prouisions for defence, that a politicke and actiue Prince could doe. But being to deale in a broken world, where the affections of men were all disioynted, or dasht with the terror of an approaching mischiefe, failing (as vsually is seene in these

publique feares) both in their diligence, and courage to withstand it, soone found more then enough to doe.

The Kings brother *Toustaine* banished.—His death with the King of *Norway*.—And the first man, which began to disturbe his new gouernment, was his owne yonger brother *Toustaine*, who (in the time of the late King *Edward*, hauing the gouernment of *Northumberland*) was for his pride and immanities shewed in those parts, banished the Kingdome; and now by reason of his former conceiued hatred against his brother, easily set on by the Duke of *Normandy*, and *Aldouin Baldouin*, Earle of *Flanders*, (whose two daughters the Duke and he had married) assailes first the Isle of *Wight*, and after sets vpon the coast of *Kent*, whence he was chased by the power of *Harald*, and forced to withdraw into the North parts; and there seeking to land, was likewise repulsed, by the Earles *Morchar* and *Edwin*. Then craues he aid of the *Scots*, and after of *Harald*, surnamed *Harfager*, King of *Norway*, being then taking in the *Orcades* and exercising piracy in those parts; whom he induced with all his forces to inuade *England*. And landing at *Tinmouth* (discomfeiting their first incounters) they marched into the heart of the Kingdome without resistance. Neere *Stamford*, King *Harald* of *England* met them with a puissant Army; and after long and eager fight, ended the day with victory, and the death of his brother *Toustaine*, and the King of *Norway*.

The Battaile was fought in *Sussex*, 7. miles from *Hastings*, vpon Saterday the 14. of October, 1066.—The Kings valor and death.—But from hence was hee called with his wearied and broken forces, to a more fatall businesse in the South. For now *William* Duke of *Normandy* (pretending a right to the Crowne of *England*, by the Testament of the late King *Edward* his Kinsman; (vpon the aduantage of a busie time, and the dis-furnishment of those parts) landed at *Pemsey*, not farre from *Hastings* in *Sussex*: neere to which place, was tried by the great Assize of God's iudgement in battell (the right of power)

betweene the *English* and *Norman* Nation. A battell (the most memorable of all other) and howsoever miserably lost, yet most nobly fought on the part of *England*; and the many wounds of *Harald* there slaine, with 60. thousand 9 hundred 74. of *English*, shew, how much was wrought to haue saued their Country from the calamity of forraine seruitude.

And yet, how so great a Kingdome as *England* then was, could with one blow bee subdued by so small a Prouince as *Normandy* (in such sort, as it could neuer after come to make any generall head against the Conquerour) might seeme strange; did not the circumstances aforementioned, and other concurrent causes, hereafter to bee declared, giue vs faire and probable reasons thereof: Besides, the indisposition of a diseased time, as it is described by such as liued nearest it (*William Malmsbury*), may giue vs great euidence in this examination. For they say, the people of this Kingdome, were (by their beeing secure from their former enemy the *Dane*, and their long peace; which had held, in a manner, from / the death of King *Edmond Ironside*, almost fifty yeeres;) grown neglectiue of Armes, and generally debaused with luxurie and idlenesse: the Clergie licentious, and onely content with a tumultuarie learning: The Nobility giuen to Gluttony, Venery, and Oppression: The common sort to Drunkenesse, and all disorder: And they say, that in the last action of *Harald* at *Stamford*, the brauest men perished, and himselfe growing insolent vpon the victory (retaining the spoyles, without distribution to his souldiers, not invred to be commanded by martiall discipline) made them discontent, and vnruely: and comming to this battell with many mercinary men, and a discontented Army, gaue great occasion to the lamentable losse thereof.

Besides, the *Normans* had a peculiar fight with long bowes, wherewith the *English* (then altogether vnacquainted) were especially ouerthrowne. And yet their owne Writers report, how the maine Battalion of the *English* (consisting of Bils, their chiefe and ancient weapon) held in a body so close lockt

together, as no force could dissolue them ; till the *Normans* (faining to flie) drew them to a disordered rout. And so they excuse the fortune of the day.

King *Harold* buried at *Waltham*.—His issue.—The body of King *Harold*, which at the sute of his mother (who sent two Monkes of the Abbey of *Waltham* to entreate the same of the Conqueror) was after much search, amongst the heapes of the dead found, and interred, in the same Abbey, which himselfe had founded. Hee was a King, who shewes vs nothing but miserie, reigned least, and lost most of any other. He left foure sons, *Godwin*, *Edmond*, *Magnus*, and *Wolfe*: the two eldest fled away after this battaile into *Ireland*, and from thence made some attempts vpon the Westernne coasts of *England*, but to little effect. And here ended the line of the *Saxon* Kings, about fiae hundred yeeres after the first comming in of *Hengist*, and their plantation in this Kingdome.

And thus haue I in the straightest course (wherein that vneuen compasse of Antiquity could direct me) got ouer the wide, and intricate passage of those times that lay beyond the worke, I purpose more particularly to deliuer. And now,

## *The Life and Reigne of William the first.*

Anno 1066.—*Englands* territories ouershootes the Ocean.



Come to write of a time, wherein the State of *England* receiued an alteration of Lawes, Customes, Fashion, manner of liuing, Language, writing, with new formes of Fights, Fortifications, Buildings, and generally an innouation in most things, but Religion: So that from this mutation, which was the greatest it euer had, wee are to begin with a new account of an *England*, more in dominion abroad, more in State, and

ability at home, and of more honour and name in the world, then heretofore: which by beeing thus vndone, was made, as if it were in the Fate thereof, to get more by losing, then otherwise. For as first, the Conquest of the *Danes*, brought it to the entiest Gouvernement it euer possest at home, and made it most redoubted of all the Kingdomes of the North: so did this of the *Norman* by comming in vpon it, make a way to let out, and stretch the mighty armes thereof ouer the Seas, into the goodly Prouinces of the South: For before these times, the *English* nation, from the first establishment in this Land, about the space of 500. yeares, neuer made any sally out of the Isle, vpon any other part of the world, but busied at home in a diuided State, held a broken Gouvernement with the *Danes*, and of no great regard, it seemes, with other Nations, till *Knute* led them forth into the Kingdome of *Norway*, where they first shewed effects of their valour, and what they would be, were they employed.

But the *Normans*, hauing more of the Sun, and ciuility (by their commixtion with the *English*) begat smoother fashions, with quicker motions in them then before. And being a Nation free from that dull disease of drinke, wherewith their former Conquerors were naturally infected, induced a more comely temperance, with a neerer regard of reputation and honour. For where as before, the *English* lived loose, in little homely Cottages, where they spent all their reuenues in good fare, caring for little other gaiety at all. Now after the *Norman* manner, they build them goodly Churches, and stately houses of stone, prouide better furnishments, erect Castles, and Towers in other sort then before. They inclose Parkes for their priuate pleasure; being debard the generall liberty of hunting, which heeretofore they enioyed: whereupon all the termes of building, hunting, tooles of workemen, names of most handy-crafts appertaining to the defences and adornments of life, came all to bee in *French*. And withall, the *Norman* habits, and fashion of liuing, became generally

assumed, both in regard of nouelty, and to take away the note of difference, which could not be well lookt on, in that change.<sup>1</sup>

The *Saxons* habit, and Characters first altered.—The Originall of the *Normans Roul*, or *Rou*, the first *Norman* that landed in *England*.—The History of *Normand*.—*Roul*, the first Conqueror of *Normandy* frō the *French*, calling it *Norman*.—And though the body of our language remained in the *Saxon*, yet it came so altered in the habite of the *French* tongue, as now we hardly know it, in the ancient forme it had; and not so much as the Character wherein it was written, but was altred to that of the *Roman* and *French*, now vsed. But to the end we may the better know the man, and the Nation that thus subdued vs; we must take our course vp to the head of their originals. The *Normans*, we finde to haue issued out of *Norway* & *Denmarke*, and were of like maners, as the rest of those *Northerne* countries; which by reason of the apt mixture of their Phlegmatique and Sanguine complexions, with their promiscuous ingendring, without any tye of marriage, yeelded that continuall surchargement of people, as they were forced to vnburthen themselues on other Countries, wheresoeuer their violence could make them roome. And out of this redundancy, *Roul*, or *Rou*, a great Commander amongst them, furnished a robustious power, in the time of King *Alfrid*, and first landed in *England* (that euer lay in the Roade to all these inuadors) where finding no roome empty, nor any employment, was content (vpon some reliefe receiued) to vse his forces other-where; which he did against *Rambalt*, Duke of *Frize*, and *Reignier* Duke of *Chaumont*, and *Hennalt*: with whom he had many violent incounters, and committed great spoyles in their Countries. Which done; he passed along the coast of

<sup>1</sup> *Malmsbury*.—*Mauricius*, Bishop of *London An. Dom.* 1087. new built the Church of *S. Paule* in *London*, of stone brought out of *Normandie*. The Charter of *William 1.* granted to this Church. Before this time the Churches were most of Timber. *William 1.* built the white Tower, afterwards walled and incastelled vnderneath, by *William 2.* and *Henry 1.*

*France*, entred the mouth of *Seine*, and sackt all the Country vp to *Roan*: where the people hauing beene lately before miserably afflicted by *Hasting* (another inuador of the same Nation) were so terrified by the approach of these new forces, that the Archbishop of *Roan*, by the consent of the people, offered him the obedience of that City, and the Country about, on condition hee would defend them, and minister Iustice according to the Lawes of Christ, and the Customes of the Countrey. For *Charles the Simple*, then King of *France*, yeelding no present succour (beeing otherwise imbroiled about the right of his Crowne) gaue him the opportunity to plant in that place, and to grow so powerfull, as shortly after he attempted the Conquest of *Paris*, and gaue many notable defeits to the *French* Leaders. So that in the end, *Charles* was faine to buy his peace with the price of an alliance, and the whole Countrey of *Nuestria* (or *Westrich*) which of the *Normans*, was after called *Normandy*. And thereupon *Roul* became a Christian, and baptised, had the name of *Robert*, giuen by *Robert*, brother to *Eudes* late King of *France*, who then stood in competition for that Crowne with *Charles the Simple*: and is said to haue vnder-aided *Roul* secretly, of purpose to make him friend his designes; though after hee vrged it in an article against *Charles*, the giuing away his Country, and the fauouring of strangers.

And thus came *Roul* to establish a State to his posterity, ordering the same with that iudgement and equity, as he left his name in a perpetuall reuerence, and his successors a firme foundation to plant vpon. From him, in a direct line, descended sixe Dukes of *Normandy*, in the space of 120. yeares: *William*, 1. *Richard*, 1. *Richard*, 2. who had two sons, *Richard* and *Robert*, that successiueley inherited the Dukedome.

*Robert*, after he had gouerned eight yeares (either meerely for deuotion, which charity ought rather deeme) or expiation for some secret guilt, wherewith his conscience might stand charged, about his brothers death (which because it was

vntimely, might be thought vnnaturall) resolves to visite the Holy Sepulchre. And acquainting his Nobility therewith, was by them much dissuaded, in regard he had no issue : and for that (already they said) *Alain*, Earle of *Brittaine*, and the Earle of *Burgogne*, were in contestation, who should succede him in the Dutchie : so that vpon his death, and their strife, the Country was like to become a prey to the souldier, from which, in conscience he was bound, by his best meanes to secure it. The Duke willed them to be content ; I haue (said hee) a little Bastard, of whose worthinesse I haue great hope, and I doubt not but hee is of my begetting : him I will inuest in the Dutchie as mine heire : And from henceforth I pray you take him for your Lord. The Earle of *Brittaine* (notwithstanding his competition) to shew the affiance I haue in him, I will constitute his *gouvernour*, and *Seneschall* of *Normandie* ; the King of *France* shall be his Guardian, and so I leaue him to God, and your loyalties.

Shortly after, the Bishops and Barons did their homage to his base sonne, named *William*, who was the sixt Duke of *Normandie* after *Roule*, begotten on *Arlette*, a meane woman of *Falaise*. And Duke *Robert* taking his intended journey, deliuers the Child with his owne hand, to *Henry* the first, King of *France* : whom before hee had mainly aided in preseruing his Crowne (left him by his father King *Roberts* Testament) against his elder brother, and his mother *Constance*, which with a great side of Nobility, stood for the right of *Primogeniture*, according to the custome of *France* : And therefore might the more presume (if good turnes done to Princes could weigh so much, as their selfe-respects would not turne the skale) to haue had a faire discharge of his trust : and him for a Protector, whose power was best able to bee so. And causing the Childe to doe homage for his Dutchie of *Normandy*, commits him to his Royall faith ; departs his Court, and shortly after his life, in *Asia*. Whereupon his successor, but nine yeares of age, became obnoxious to all the

miseries that afflict Princes in their pupillage: besides the reproach of his birth; which though his honor and vertue might get ouer, yet lay it euer a barre in his way, and hindred his standing cleere, stood hee neuer so high.

The Nobles of *Normandy*, soone (after his fathers death, by much entreaty, got him out of the *French Kings* hands) thinking the hauing him amongst them, would adde more to his Counsellors, and such as were in office: and the State of a Court, awe his State the better. But soone they found, the hauing his person (without his power) was, but to put them out, into more discord, and faction.

For presently followed the murdering, and poisoning of *Gouernors*, displacing of Officers; intrusion, supplantation, surprizings, and recouerings of his person, by a Nobilitie, stubborne, haughty, and incompatible of each others precedency or neerenesse. But this was the least, as beeing done all for his person. Now followed more dangerous practices against him. His right was quarrelled by competitors, cleere in bloud, and great in meanes. Whereof the first (though farthest off in descent) was *Roger de Tresny*, bringing a faire line from *Roule*, and much prooffe of his own worth, by hauing gotten great experience, in the *Sarazine warre* in *Spaine*: whereby vpon his returne, entertaining and feasting the great, and especiall men of worth; hee was growne powerfull, well followed, and beloued of many: in so much that at length, measuring his owne height, hee vrges, *What wrong it was that a Bastard, and a Childe, should be preferred before him, in the succession of the Dutchie, his Ancestors had nobly gotten: and what a shame the Normans (a people of that worth) would endure to be so gouerned; seeing they had others of the renowned race of Roule, William, and Richard, Dukes of Normandy, of a lawfull and direct line, if they held him vnworthy to inherite the State.* And beeing impatient (as is ambition, that euer rides without raines) of any long delay, brings his claime to a strong battaile in the field, which by the valiancie of *Roger de Beaumont*, was vtterly

defeited, and himselfe with his two brethren slaine. Whereby all feare that way was extinguished, and the reputation of the Duke and his, so much aduanced, as the King of *France* (notwithstanding his tutelary charge) tooke from him the Castle of *Thuilliers*, and demolisht it, pretending the insolencies committed there, by the Garrisons, vpon his subiects: and makes shew as yet, onely to keepe things euen. But long it was not, ere hee plainly bewrayed his minde; ayding in person *William* Earle of *Arques*, brother to Duke *Robert*, and son to *Richard* the Second, making his claime to the Dutchie, and brings a mighty Army to succour *Arques*, assieged by Conte *Guiffard*, the Dukes Generall; who (by a stratagem so trayned the *French* into an Ambush) as hee ouerthrew their whole power, and returns the King to *Paris*, with great losse, and dishonour: Leauing *Arques* (the first *Arch* of triumph) to this Conqueror, not yet arriued to seauenteene yeares of age; and the discomfited competitor to seeke his Fortunes with *Eustace*, Earle of *Bologne*, finding vpon his returne little grace in Court; where fortune euer alters credit and few regard men ouerthrowne.

A Conspiracy discovered strangely.—This storme ouer-past another succeeds more dangerous; there liued with Duke *William*, a young Lord of like yeares, named *Guy* sonne to *Regnalt*, Earle of *Borgogne* and *Alix* daughter to *Richard* the second; who comming to bee sensible of his interest, was aduised by some stirring spirits, to attempt for the Duchie; which they sayd appertayned to him in right, and was wrongfully vsurped by the *Bastard*: And to aduance his purpose, there happens deadly hostility betweene two of the greatest Lords of *Normandy* (*Viconte Neele*, and the Earle of *Bessin*) whose debate, Duke *William* did not, or could not pacifie. This *Guy* (lately made Earle of *Bryorn*, and *Vernon*), interposed himselfe to compose this discord; and by the aduice of *Grimoult de Plessis* (a principall moouer in this worke) so wrought, that either of these Lords, turned the poynt

of their malice vppon him, who in their quarrell fauouring neyther, made both to hate him ; and easily conspire with *Guy* to murder him at vnawares : Which they had done, had not a certaine Foole (whom, for beeing held a naturall, they suspected not) noting their preparations, got away in the dead of the night to *Valogne*, knocking and crying at the Gate, till he was admitted to the Dukes presence ; whom he willed in hast to flye, or hee would bee murdered. The Duke seeing the Foole in this affright, thought dangers were not to bee weighed by the worth of the Reporter, but by their likelihood ; and knowing his Fortune was liable vnto all suddaine assassinations ; instantly takes Horse, and all alone postes to *Fallaise*, his especiall place of strength : on the way, his Horse beeing tyred, about breake of day, he comes to a little village called *Rye*, where, by good Fortune, the Gentleman of the place, was standing at his doore, ready to goe abroad ; of whom the Duke requires the next way to *Fallaise* : The Gentleman perceiuing who hee was (though as then very vnwilling to bee knowne) humbly craues the cause of his so strange and vntimely Riding alone : The Duke seeing himselfe discovered, tells the occasion : The Gentleman (whose name was *Robert de Rye*) furnishes him with a fresh Horse, and sends two of his sonnes to conduct him the neerest way to *Fallaise* : No sooner was hee gone out of sight, but after post the Conspirators, enquiring of the same Gentleman, whether hee saw the Duke ; who answered, that hee was gone a little before, such a way (shewing them a diuers path) and rode on with them, offering his seruice to Conte *Bessin* ; where they made themselues so powerfull, as the Duke withdrew him to *Roan*, and from thence to the King of *France*, to craue his ayde, putting him in minde of the faithfull seruice his Father had done him : how hee was his Homager, vnder his tutelary charge, and had no other Sanctuary of succour to flye vnto, in this case of his mutinous and turbulent Nobility ; the effect whereof was of dangerous consequence to that Crowne. And so farre vrged

the importancie of reliefe, as the King at length (who seemes was yet content to haue him bee, though not too strong, and peraduenture rather him then his Competitor *Guy de Burgogne*) ayded him in Person with a puissant Army against these Competitors, whom they found in the vale of *Dunes* with as great power and resolution to bid them battaile, as they to assaile them. Here one *Guilleson*, Vncle to Viconte *Neel* by the mother, forced his Horse into the Battailion of the *French*, and made at the King, and strake him downe with his Launce: Which Conte Saint *Paule* perceiuing, hastes to encounter him with that Violence, as both fell to the Earth; but *Guilleson* soone gets vp, and though his Horse was slayne vnder him, by *Castillon*, he escapes out of the presse, and after fled into *Apulia* with others. The King recouered, and more inkindled with this affront, spared not his Person, to auenge his wrath. Duke *William* likewise (as it stood him most vppon) shewed effects of an all-daring and Magnanimous Prince. And yet had not *Ralph de Tesson* beene false to his fellowes to recouer faith with him, he had not carried (as he did) the victory.

After which, diuers of the Conspirators (who had too great hearts to yeeld) passed the Mountaines into *Italy*, to *Robert Guiscard* their Country-man (who of a priuate Gentleman, was now by his prowesse, become Lord of *Apulia*, *Calabria*, and *Sicile*, within the space of twelue yeares :) to whom they were exceeding welcome, and especially *Guilleson*, for hauing incountred with a King in the midst of his Battaille; which made him of wider note. But the better to know, what starre these *Norman* spirits had, as borne for the reuolutions of those times, it shall not lye out off our way to shewe how they first came into *Italy* vpon this occasion.

There happened a debate betweene one *Osmond Drengot* and *William Repostell*, Gentlemen both valiant, and of great Parentage in *Normandy*, who as they hunted in the Forrest of *Rouvery* (neere *Rouan*) with Duke *Robert*; *Drengot* slew

*Repostell*, in his presence ; and fearing the fury of the Duke, and the Friends of the slayne, fled to *Rome*, and so to *Naples*, where hee, with his small Company of *Normans* that followed him, was entertayned of the Duke *de Benevento*, to serue him against the *Sarasins*, and *Affricans*, which miserably infested *Apulia* and *Calabria*, at that time. The brute of which entertainment was no sooner spred in *Normandy*, but diuers Valiant Gentlemen and Souldiers, allured with the hope of good Fortune, passed the *Alpes*, got to their Nation, and so wrought, as they grew formidable to these *Barbarians*, and in the end, vtterly chaced and extinguished them. The *Calabrians* and *Apulians*, seeing themselues ridde of their enemies, would haue beene glad likewise (their turne serued) to bee rid of their Friends, and eyther vsing them more vnkindely then of custome, or they presuming more of desert, turned their Swords vppon their Intertayners. And first got a little place, which they fortified for the *Rendeuous*, and receipt of booty : And so Augmenting still their Winnings, obtayned Territories, Cities, and Fortresses. And after the Death of *Drengot*, succeeded other Gallant Leaders, and at length *Tancred*, Signior *de Hauteuille*, in Constantine, with his twelue sons, came into *Apulia*, of whom his third son *Robert*, surnamed *Guiscard*, attained the commaund, and was a man of faire stature, cleare iudgement, and indefatigable courage. Hee Conquered all *Apulia*, *Calabria*, and *Sycile*, passed the Sea into *Greece* ; relieued *Michael Diocrisius*, Emperour of *Constantinople*, defeited *Nicephorus* that vsurped the Empire, and shortly after *Alexius* attempting the like ; and in one yeare vanquished two Emperours, the one of *Greece*, the other of *Germany* : swayed the whole Estate of *Italy*, and was in a faire way to haue attayned the Empire of *Constantinople* for himselfe, had hee not dyed in the expedition.

*Beomond* his eldest son, by his first wife, became after Prince of *Antioch*, and is much renowned in the holy Warres. *Roger* (of his second marriage with the daughter of the Prince of

*Salerno*) succeeded in the States of *Italy*, as more theirs by birth and blood. His daughters were all highly married; Thus from a priuate Gentleman, came this famous *Norman* to leaue a succession of Kings and Princes after him, and dyed the same yeare as did this *William*, his concurrent in the loue and fauour of Fortune. And to this man fled all the discontented and desperate *Normans* during these ciuill Wars the Duke had with so many Competitors; and euery ouerthrow hee gaue them, augmented *Guiscards* forces in *Italy*; and especially this battaile of *Danes*; which ended not the Dukes trauailes, for *Guy de Burgogne* escaping the fight, fortified the Castles of *Briorn* and *Verneuille*, but in the end was faine to render them both, and himselfe, to the Dukes mercy, and became his pencioner, who was his Competitor; which act of clemency in the Duke, brought in many other to submit themselues; whereby they re-obtayned their Signiories, but had their Castles demolished.

Hauing ended this worke, new occasion to keepe him in action, was ministred by *Geoffry Martle* Earle of *Aniou*, who warring vpon the *Poictouins*, incroached also vppon his neighbours States, and vsurped *Alenson*, *Dampfront*, and *Passais*, members of the Dutchy of *Normandy*: Which to recouer, the Duke leauiers an Army, and first got *Alenson*, where (for that he was opprobriously scorned by the besieged, who, when they saw him, would cry *La Pel, La Pel*, in reproach of the basenesse of his mother, and the Trade of the place of his birth) hee shewed extreame cruelty. Then layes hee siedge to *Dampfront*; which to relieue, Count *Martell* comes with his greatest forces: and the Duke to take notice of his strength, sends out *Roger de Montgomery*, with two other Knights to deliuer this message to the Earle, *That if he came to victuall Dampfront, hee should finde him there the Porter to keep him out*: Where to the Earle returnes this answer, *Tell the Duke, to morrow by daybreake, hee shall haue me there on a white horse, ready to giue him the Combat, and I will enter Dampfront if*

*I can : And to the end he shall know me, I will weare a shield, without any deuice.*

Roger replies, *Sir you shall not neede to take that paines, for to morrow morning, you shall haue the Duke in this place, mounted on a bay horse ; And that you may know him, he shall weare on the poynt of his Launce, a streamer of taffata, to wipe your face.* Herewith returning, each side prepares for the morning : When the Earle, busie in ordering his battailes, was aduertised by two Horse-men, that came crossing the field, how *Damp-fronte*, for certaine was rendered to the Duke ; whereupon in great rage, hee presently departs with his Army : whereof a part, was (in passing a streight) cut off, by *Viconte Neel*, who for that seruice, redeemed his former offence, and was restored to the Dukes fauour, whom hee euer after faithfully serued. Those of *Damfronte*, desperate of succour, presently yeeld themselves to the Duke, who with his engines and forces remooues from thence to *Hambrieres*, a frontire Towne of Count *Martels*, and by the way (had it not beene by himselfe discouered) hee had beene vtterly ouerthrowne by an ambush, which gaue him much to doe, and lost him very many braue men. Wherewith hee grew so inraged, that hee rushed into the troupes of his enemies ; made at Count *Martell*, strake him downe with his sworde, claue his helmet, and cut off an eare : but yet hee escaped out of the preasse, though diuers were taken, and the *Aniouins* vtterly defeited.

The Duke Marries *Matilde* daughter of *Baldouin* the fift, Earle of *Flaunders*.—Whilst thus hee was trauailed with an outward enemy, two more, were found at home, to conspire against him : *William Guelan*, Earle of *Mortagne*, descended from *Richard* the second : And *William* Earle of *Eu*, and *Montreul*, issuing from *William*, the brother of the same *Richard*, and of *Esselin*, Countesse of *Montreul* : the first vpon suspition, the other vpon prooffe, of an intention, was banished, and their estates seized : the Earledome of *Mortaigne* hee gaue to *Robert* : that of *Eu* to *Odo* (after Bishop of *Bayeux*) both his bretheren

by the mother. These assaults from abroad, these scornes, conspiracies, and vnder-workings at home, he passed before hee was full 22 yeares of age: and thus his enemies made him, that sought to vndoe him. But now, more to vnder-set and strengthen his State, against future practises, hee convokes an assemblie of his Prelates, Barrons, and Gentlemen, causing them to receiue their oath of Fealtie, and raze their Castles; which done, hee married *Matilde*, the daughter of *Baldouin* the fift, Earle of *Flaunders*, but not without contrist and trouble: for his Vncle *Mauger*, Arch-bishop of *Roan*, excommunicates him, for matching within the forbidden degrees of kindred, she being daughter to *Elinor*, daughter to *Richard* the second, and so his fathers sisters daughter. 'To expiate for which offence (vpon a dispensation from Pope *Victor*) they were inioyned the building of certaine hospitals for blinde people: and two abbyes, the one for men, the other for women: which were erected at *Caen*.

The reasons why the king of France warres with the *Normans*. —This match, and the ouer-marching his enemies, set him so high a marke of enuey in the eye of *France*, which naturally loued not the *Normans*, (whom in reproach they vsually called *Trewans*) as they easily incensed their King, who of himselfe was forward enough, to abate a power, growne so out of proportion with the rest of the Princes of his Dominions, to finde a quarrell (which confiners easily doe) to set vpon him: and to make it looke the fairer, pretends to correct the insolencies of the *Normans* committed vpon his Territories, and to releiue Count *Martell* opprest by the Duke; besides alleadging, *It concerned him in honour and iustice, to haue that Prouince, which held of his Crowne, to bee gouerned by a Prince of lawful blood, according to Christian order and Lawes Ecclesiasticall*: And therefore resolueth vtterly to exterminate the Duke, and establish a legitimate Prince in the Duchie. For which effect, two armies are gathered from all parts of his Kingdome; the one sent along the riuier

*Scin*, the other into the Country of *Bessen*, as meaning to encompass him.

The defeiture of the Army of the King of *France* by the *Normans*.—The Duke likewise deuides his forces into two parts, sends his brother *Odo*, Earl of *Eu*, *Walter Guifford* Earle of *Longueuill*, and others with the one, to the Countrie of *Caux*; himselfe with the other takes towards *Eureux* (to make head to the King that was at *Mante*) and withdrawes all cattle and prouisions out of the flat Country, into Cities and Fortresses, for their owne store, and disfurnishment of the enemye. The Kings army marching from *Beauuois* to *Mortimer*, and finding there a fat Country full of all prouisions, betooke them to make good cheere, and rests there all that night; thinking the *Norman* forces were yet with the Duke at *Eureux*; which the Army in *Caux* conducted by *Otho* vnderstanding, marched all night, and by breake of day gaue them so hot an alarum, and so sudaine, as put them all in a rout, leauing horse, and armour, and all to the assaylants; who made such a destruction of them, that of forty thousand, not the fourth part escaped.

With this defeiture, the King of *France* is againe returned home, with great rage and grieve, and the Duke, with the redemption of the prisoners, recouers his peace, and the Castle of *Thuilliers*, taken from him in his vnder-age. Count *Martell* though much dismayed with the Kings ouerthrow, yet leaues not to make some attempts for the recouering his Townes; but with no successe. The Duke hee saw was too well beloued and followed, for him to doe any good without a stronger ayme. Wherefore the next Spring, he goes againe importune the King of *France*, to aide him against the Duke: who (he said) *Was now growne so insolent upon this peace, and the victory he had stolne, and not wonne, that there was no liuing for his neighbours neere him*: Besides, the *Normans* had the *French* in such derision, and base esteeme, as they made their act (at *Mortimer*) their onely sport, and the subiect of their rimes: as

if a King of *France*, vpon the losse of a few men, was retired, and durst not breake a dishonorable peace.

The Army of the King of *France* ouerthrowne at *Varneville* by the *Normans*.—With which instigation, and being stung with the touch of reproach, hee raises another Army far mightier then before, wherein were three Dukes, and twelue Earles, and notwithstanding the solemne peace made, and so lately sworne with the Duke, hee enters *Normandy* in the haruest time, ouerrunnes and spoiles all the Country, along the coast to *Bessin*: from whence marching to *Bayeux*, and *Caen*, with purpose to passe the riuier *Diue* at *Varneville*, to destroy the Countries of *Ange*, *Liseux*, and *Roumoys*, euén to *Roan*, and finding the case-way long, and the bridge narrow, caused his vant-gard to passe ouer first: and to secure his Arier-gard, conducted by the Duke of *Berry*, himselfe stayes behinde in *Caen*, till his people, and their carriages were passed. Duke *William* (who all this while, stores his fortresses with men and victual) makes himselfe as strong in the Towne of *Fallaise*, as he could; hath no Army in the field, but a running camp to be ready to take all aduantages: lets the fury of the storme spend it selfe, and hauing aduertisement of this passage, marched all night with ten thousand men, and in the morning earely, sets vpon the Arier-gard, with so sudaine a cry and fury, as they who were before on the Case-way hearing this noyse behind, thrust forward their fellowes, hasting to get ouer the bridge, with such a crowd and presse, as they brake it, and many were drowned in the riuier. They who were got ouer, could not returne to ayde the rest; nor the King (by reason of the Marshes on both sides) yeeld any succor to his people; but stood a spectator of their slaughter, and the taking of sixe of his Earles, of whom one was the exiled Earle of *Eu*, whom the King (fauouring his great worth) had made Count *De Soissons*.

The grieue of this ouerthrow, shortly after gaue the King of *France* his death, and the Duke of *Normandy* a ioyfull peace,

which hee nobly imployed in the ordering and adorning his State: building, endowing, and decking Monasteries and Churches: gathering reliques from all parts to furnish his Abbyes at *Caen* (where he also erected a Tombe for himselfe and his wife) feasting and rewarding his Nobles and men of worth: whereby he so possest him of the hearts of his people generally, as they were intirely his, for what hee would.

The Duke comes to visit his kinsman.—*Harold* goeth ouer into *Normandy*.—His entertainment.—His promises to the Duke.—During this calme of his life, hee makes a iourney ouer into *England*, as if to visite King *Edward* his kinsman: who, in regard of the preservation, and breeding hee had in *Normandy*, by Duke *Richard* the second (Grandfather to them both) gaue him most Royall entertainment: And here he shewed himselfe; and here (no doubt) hee found matter for his hopes to worke on. In this enterview he discovered *England*, being to be presupposed, he came not to gather cockle-shels, on the shore. Nor was it long after ere *Harold* (whether of purpose to ratifie some paction closely contriued betwixt them: or by casualty of weather driuen into *France*, and so faine to make it seeme a iourney of purpose to the Duke, is not certainly deliuered) was gallantly entertained in *Normandy*, presented with all shewes of Armes, brought to *Paris*, and there likewise feasted in that Court. And at his returne to *Rouen*, something was concluded, either in likelyhood to deuide the Kingdom betweene them, or that *Harold* being a coast-dweller, and had the strongest hand in the State, should let in the Duke, and do his best to help him to the Crowne, vpon conditions of his owne greatnesse, or whatsoeuer it was; promises were made and confirmed by oathes vpon the Euangelists, and all the sacred Reliques at *Rouen*, in the presence of diuers great persons. Besides for more assurance, *Harold* was fyanced to *Adeliza*, the Dukes daughter, and his brother *Wolnot*, left a pledge for the performance.

The Dukes speech to the assembly of the States of *Nor-*

*mandy*.—The subtile proceeding of the Duke with his Nobles. —This intercourse made the trans-action of the fate of *England*, and so much was done, either by King *Edward* or *Harold* (though neithers act, if any such were, was of power to prejudice the State, or alter the course of a right succession) as gaue the Duke a colour to claime the Crowne, by a donation made by Testament, which being against the Law and Custome of the Kingdome, could be of no validity at all. For the Crowne of *England* being held, not as Patrimoniall, but in a succession by remotion (which is a succeeding to another place) it was not in the power of King *Edward* to collate the same by any dispositiue and testamentary will, the right descending to the next of blood, onely by the Custome and Law of the Kingdome: For the Successour is not sayd properly to be the heire of the King, but the Kingdome, which makes him so, and cannot bee put from it by any act of his Predecessour. But this was onely his claime; the right was of his owne making, and no otherwise. For as soone as hee had heard of the death of King *Edward*, with the Election, and Coronation of *Harold*, (for they came both together) hee assembles the States of *Normandy*, and acquaints them with the right he had to *England*, *Soliciting an extention of their vtmost meanes for his recouery thereof, and auengement of the periurd usurper Harold; shewing them apparant probability of successe, by infallible intelligence hee had from the State, his strong party therein, with the debility and distraction of the people: What glory, wealth, and greatnesse, it would adde to their Nation, the obtayning of such a Kingdome, as was that opportunely layd open for them, if they apprehended the present occasion.* All which remonstrances notwithstanding, could induce but very few to like of this attempt, and those such who had long followed him in the warres, exhausted their estates, and content to runne vpon any aduenture that might promise likelihood of aduancement. The rest were of diuers opinions: Some, that it was sufficient to hold and defend their

owne Country; without hazarding themselues, to conquer others; and these were men of the best ability: others were content to contribute, but so sparingly, as would little aduance the businesse: and for the most part they were so tyred with the former warres, and so desirous to embrace the blessing of peace, as they were vnwilling to vndergoe a certaine trouble, for an vncertaine good. And with these oppositions, or faint offers, the Dukes purpose, at first, had so little way, as did much perplex him: At length, seeing this protraction, and difficulty in generall: hee deales with his neerest and most trusty friends in particular, being such as he knew affected the glory of action, and would aduenture their whole estates with him. (As *William fitz Auber*, *Conte de Bretteuille*, *Gualter Guifford* Earle of *Longueuille*, *Roger de Beaumont*, with others, especially his owne brothers, *Odo* Bishop of *Bayeux*, and *Robert* Earle of *Mortaigne*: these in full assembly he wrought to make their offers: which they did in so large a proportion; and especially *William fitz Auber* (who made the first offer, to furnish forty Ships with men and munition; the Bishop of *Bayeux* forty, the Bishop of *Mans* thirty, and so others, according, or beyond their abilities) as the rest of the assemblie, doubting if the action succeeded without their helpe (the Duke arryuing to that greatnesse) would beare in minde, what little minde they shewed to aduance his desires, beganne to contribute more largely. The Duke, finding them yeelding, though not in such sort as was requisite for such a worke; dealt with the Bishops, and great men apart, so effectually, as at length hee got of them seuerally, which of altogether hee could neuer haue compassed; and causing each mans contribution to bee registred, inkindled such an emulation amongst them, as they who lately would doe nothing, now striued who should doe most.

The French likewise ayde the Duke.—And not onely wan hee the people of his owne Prouinces, to vndertake this action, but drew by his faire perswasions and large promises,

most of the greatest Princes and Nobles of *France*, to adventure their persons, and much of their estate with him; as *Robert fitz Haruays*, Duke of *Orleance*, the Earles of *Brittaine*, *Ponthieu*, *Bologne*, *Poictou*, *Mayne*, *Neuers*, *Hiesms*, *Aumal*, *Le Signior de Tours*, and euen his mortall enemy *Martel*, Earle of *Aniou*, became to bee as forward as any. All which, hee sure could neuer haue induced, had not his vertues and greatnesse gained a wide opinion and reputation amongst them. Although in these aduancements and turnes of Princes, there is a concurrency of dispositions, and a constitution of times prepared for it: yet is it strange, that so many mighty men of the *French* Nation, would adventure their liues and fortunes to adde *England* to *Normandy*, to make it more then *France*, and so great a Crowne to a Duke, who was too great for them already. But where mutations are destined, the counsels of men must bee corrupted, and there will fall out all aduantages to serue that businesse.

The reason of the Dukes power.—The King of *France*, who should have strangled this disseigne in the birth, was a child, and vnder the curature of *Baldouin*, Earle of *Flanders*, whose daughter the Duke had married, and was sure to haue rather furtherance then any opposition that way: Besides, to amuze that Court, and dazell a young Prince, he promised faithfully, if hee conquered this Kingdome; to hold it of that King, as he did the Dutchie of *Normandy*, and do him homage for the same; which would adde a great glory to that Crowne. Then was he before-hand with Pope *Alexander* (to make religion giue reputation and auowment to his pretended right) promising likewise to hold it of the Apostolique Sea, if he preuailed in his enterprize. Whereupon the Pope sent him a Banner of the Church, with an *Agnus* of Gold, and one of the haire of Saint *Peter*. The Emperour *Henry 4.* sent him a Prince of *Almaine* with forces, but of what name, or his number, is not remembred: so that we see it was not *Normandy* alone that subdued *England*, but

a collected power out of all *France* and *Flanders* with the aydes of other Princes. And by these meanes, made he good his vndertaking; and within eight moneths was ready furnished with a powerfull Army at *Saint Valery* in *Normandy*, whence hee transported the same into *England* in 896 ships, as some write. And this was the man, and thus made to subdue *England*.

1066. *Anno Reg. 1.* Reason for the yealding of the Clergie.—And now having gotten, the great and difficult battaile, before remembred, at *Hastings*, the foureteenth of October 1065. he marched without any opposition to *London*, where *Edwin* and *Morchar*, Earles of *Northumberland*, and *Mercland* (brothers of eminent dignity and respect in the Kingdome) had laboured with all their power to stirre the hearts of the people for the conseruation of the State, and establishing *Edgar Atheling*, the next of the Royall issue, in his right of the Crowne: whereunto other of the Nobility had likewise consented; had they not seene the Bishops auerse or wauering. For, as then, to the Clergie, any King (so a Christian) was all one: they had their Prouince apart, deuided from secular domination: and of a Prince (though a stranger) who had taken vp so much of the world before hand, vppon credit and fame of his piety and bounty, they could not but presume well for their estate: and so were content to giue way to the present Fortune.

What mooued the Nobles to yeeld.—The Nobility, considering they were so borne, and must haue a King: not to take him (that was of power to make himselfe) would shew more of passion then prouidence: and to be now behind hand to receiue him, with more then submission, was as if to withstand: which (with the distrust of each others faith) made them striue and run headlong, who / should be first to pre-occupate the grace of seruitude, and intrude them into forraine subiection.

The Commons (like a strong vessell that might haue beene for good vse) were hereby left, without a sterne, and could not

moue irregularly. So that all estates in generall either corrupted with new hopes, or transported with feare, forsooke themselves, and their distressed Country. Vppon his approach to *London*, the Gates were all set open: the Arch-bishop of *Canterbury*, *Stigand*, with other Bishops, the Nobility, Magistrates, and People, rendring themselves in all obedience vnto him: and hee returning plausible protestation of his future Gouernment, was on *Christmas* day, then next following, Crowned King of *England*, at *Westminster*, by *Aldred*, Arch-bishop of *Yorke*, for that *Stigand* was not held Canonically inuested in his Sea; and yet thought to haue beene a forward mouer of this alteration.

The Coronation and Oath of *William* 1.—King *Williams* submission to the orders of the Kingdome of *England*.—Heere, according to the accustomed forme, at his Coronation, the Bishops and Barons of the Realme, tooke their oaths, to be his true and loyall subiects, and he reciprocally (beeing required thereunto by the Arch-bishop of *Yorke*) made his personall oath, before the Altar of Saint *Peter*, *To defend the Holy Church of God, and the Rectors of the same: To gouerne the Vniuersall People, subiect vnto him, iustly: To establish equall Lawes, and to see them duly executed.* Nor did hee euer claime any power by Conquest, but as a regular Prince, submitted himselfe to the orders of the Kingdome: desirous rather to haue his Testamentary Title (howsoever weake) to make good his succession, rather then his sword. And though the stile of *Conqueror* by the flattery of the time, was after giuen him; hee shewed by all the course of his gouernment hee assumed it not: introducing none of all those alterations (which followed) by violence, but a milde gathering vpon the disposition of the State, and the occasions offered, and that by way of reformation. And now taking Hostages for his more security, and order for the defence and gouernment of his Kingdome, at the opening of the Spring next, hee returnes into *Normandy*, so to settle his affaires there, as they might not distract him

from his businesse in *England*, that required his whole powers.

King *William* returnes into *Normandy* with the chiefe Nobility of *England*.—And to leaue heere all behind him, hee commits the rule of the Kingdome, to his brother the Bishop of *Bayeux*, and to his Cosin *Fitz* (or *Oserne*) *Auber*, whom hee had made Earle of *Hereford*; taking with him all the chiefe men of *England*, who were likest to be heads to a reuolt: As *Edgar Atheling*, the Archbishop *Stigand*, lately discontented: *Edwin*, and *Morchar*, with many other Bishops and Noblemen: Besides, to vnburthen his charge, and dis-impester his Court; hee tooke backe with him all the *French* Aduenturers, and such as were men, rewarding them as farre as his treasure would extend, and the rest he made vp in faire promises.

In his absence, which was all that whole Summer, nothing was here attempted against him, but onely that *Edric*, surnamed the *Forrester*, in the County of *Hereford*, called in the Kings of the *Welsh*, to his ayde, and forraged only the remote borders of that Country: The rest of the Kingdome stood quiet, expecting what would become of that new world, wherein as yet they found no great alteration, their Lawes and liberties remayning the same they were before, and might hope by this accession of a new Prouince; the State of *England* would be but enlarged in dominion abroad, and not impayred in profit at home, by reason the Nation was but small, and of a plentiful and not ouer-peopled Country, likely to impester them.

King *William* returnes into *England*.—Hauing disposed his affayres of *Normandy*, he returnes towards winter, into *England*, where he was to satisfie three sorts of men; *First*, such Aduenturers, with whom hee had not yet cleared: *Secondly*, those of his owne people, whose merits or neerenesse, looked for recompence, whereof the number being so great, many must haue their expectation fed, if not satisfied: *Thirdly*, the people of this Kingdome, by whom hee must now subsist: For beeing not able with his owne Nation so to impeople the same, as to hold

and defend it (if hee should proceed to an extirpation of the naturall Inhabitants) hee was likewise to giue them satisfaction.

Wherein, he had more to do, then in his battell at *Hastings*; seeing all remunerations, with supplies of money, must be raised out of the stocke of this Kingdome, which could not but be irkesome to the State in generall, and all preferments and dignities conferred on his, to be either by vacancies, or displacing others, which must needs breed very feeling grieuances in particular. And yet wee finde no great men thrust out of their roomes, but such as put themselues out, by reuolting, after his establishment, and their fealty giuen; as appeares by the controuersie betweene *Warren the Norman*, and *Sherburn of Sherburn Castle in Norfolke (Camden Norf.)*, which Castle, though the King had giuen to *Warren*, yet (when *Sherburne* alledged, *How he neuer bare Armes against him: that hee was his subiect as well as the other, and held his Lands by that law which he had established amongst all his subiects*, the King gaue iudgement against *Warren*, and commanded, that *Sherburn* should hold his Land in peace. So that it seemes, hee contented himselfe and his, for the time, onely with what he found heere ready, and with filling vp their places, who were slaine in the battaile; or fled, as many were, with the sonnes of *Harald* out of the Kingdome (*M.S.*). Such Gentlemen as he could not presently preferre, and had a purpose to aduance, hee dispersed abroad into Abbeyes, there to liue till places fell out for them: and 24. he sent to the Abbey of *Eley*: whereby he not onely lessened the multitude of attendants and suitors at Court; eased that eye-sore of strangers, but also had them a watch ouer the Clergie, who then were of great and eminent power in the Kingdome; and might preuaile with the people.

1067. *Anno Reg. 2.* The *English Nobility* forsake the Kingdome.—The King of *Scots* enters league with the *English Nobility* and married *Edgars* sister.—But the *English Nobility*, incompatible of these new occurrences; found notwithstanding, such a disproportion of grace, and darkning of their dignities,

by the interposition of so many, as must needes lessen their splendour ; that many of the chieftest, doubting to be more impayred in honour and estate, conspired together, and fled some into *Scotland*, and some into *Denmarke*, to try if by ayde from abroad, they might recouer themselues, and their fortunes againe at home. Amongst which, the chiefe was *Edgar Atheling* (tearmed *Englands Darling*, which shewed the peoples zeale to his blood,) who with his mother *Agatha*, and his two sisters, *Margaret* and *Christin*, intending to retyre into *Hungary* (their natiue Countrey) were driuen by tempest on the coast of *Scotland*, where they were in all Hospitable manner entertained by *Malcolin* the third, whose former sufferings in his exile, had taught him to compassionate others like distresses ; and whom it concerned now to looke to his owne, his neighbours house beeing thus on fire : and to foster a party against so dangerous an incommer, that was like to thrust them all out of doore. Which induced him not onely to entertaine this Prince, dispossess of his right, but to enter league with him for the publike safety ; And to inchaine it the stronger, he takes to wife *Margaret*, the sister of *Edgar*, (a Lady indued with all blessed vertues) by whom the bloud of our ancient Kings was preserued, and conioyned with the *Norman* in *Henry* the second, and so became *English* againe. Vnto *Edgar* in *Scotland*, repayred the Earles *Edwin* and *Morchar*, *Hereward*, *Gospatric*, *Siward*, with others : and shortly after *Stigand* and *Aldred*, Arch-bishops, with diuers of the Clergie : who in the third yeare of this Kings reigne (1068. *Anno Reg.* 3), raised very great commotions in the North, beyond *Humber*, and wrought most egarly to recouer their lost Countrey : but being now too late, and the occasion not taken before the setling of the gouernment, whilst it was new, and branling, they preuailed nothing, but gaue aduantage to the Conquerour, to make himselfe more then hee was : For all conspiracies of Subiects, if they succeed not, aduance the Soueraigntie : and nothing gaue roote to the *Norman* planting heere, more then the petty reuolts made

by discattered troupes, in seuerall parts, begun without order, and followed without resolution ; whereas nothing could be done for a generall recouery, but by a generall sublevation of the people, for which all wary preuention was vsed, and they had waites enough laid on, to hold them downe. And these Lords imbroiled themselues and held him doing in the North, yet hee hauing all the South parts settled vnder his dominion, with well practised and prepared Forces, there could bee little hope of Good, whilst all their great Estates furnisht the *Normans*, both in state and meanes to ruine them. The Earledome, and the Lands which *Edwin* held in *Yorkeshire*, were giuen to *Alain*, Earle of *Brittaine*, kinsman to the Conqueror ; The Archbishopricke of *Canterbury*, confer'd on *Lanfranc*, Abbot of *Caen* : That of *Yorke*, on *Thomas* his Chaplain, and all the rest both of the Clergy and others, which were out, had their places within, supplied by *Normans*.

And after King *William* had appeased a commotion in the West, which the sonnes of *Harold*, with forces out of *Ireland* had raised, and also repressed the rebellion of *Excester* and *Oxford*, he takes his iourney in person Northward with all expedition (lest the enemy there, should grow too high in heart and opinion, vppon the great slaughter of his people, made at *Yorke* ; and the defeiture of his brother and Lieutenant, *Robert* Earle of *Mortaine*, slaine with seauen hundred *Normans* at *Durham* :) where, at his first comming he so wrought, that hee eyther discomfeited, or corrupted the Generalls of the *Danicque* forces (newly arriued to ayde the Lords, sent by *Swaine*, King of *Denmarke*, vnder the conduct of his two sonnes, *Harold* and *Knute*, with a Nauy of three hundred sayle :) and after sets vpon the Army of the Lords, weakened both in strength and hope, by this departure of their Confederates, and puts them to flight. Which done, hee vtterly wasted, and layd desolate, all that goodly Country betweene *Yorke* and *Durham*, the space of 60 miles, as it might be no more a succour to the enemy ; And the like

course he used on all the Coasts where any apt landings lay for inuasions ; and so returnes to *London*.

Most of the Lords after his defeat, came in, vpon publique faith giuen them, and were conducted to *Barkhamsted* by the Abbot *Fredricke* ; where, vpon their submission and Oath of Allegiance re-taken, they had their pardon, and restitution of grace granted by the King, who it seemes was so willing to acquiet them, that againe hee takes his personall Oath before the Archbishop *Lanfrancke*, and the Lords, *To obserue the ancient Lawes of the Realme, established by his Noble Predecessors, the Kings of England, and especially those of Edward the Confessor*. Whereupon these stormy dispositions held calme a while.

1074. *Anno Reg. 8*.—But long it was not ere many of these Lords (whether vpon intelligence of new hopes, from Prince *Edgar* (who was still in *Scotland*), or growne desperate of new displeasure at home, finding small performance of promises made, rupture of Oath, and all other respects, brake out againe. The Earle *Edwyn*, making towards *Scotland*, was murdered by his owne people. The Lords *Morchar* and *Hereward*, betooke them to the Isle of *Elie*, meaning to make good that place for that Winter ; whether also repaired the Earle *Syward*, and the Bishop of *Durham* out of *Scotland*. But the King who was no time-giuer vnto growing dangers, besets all the Isle with flat boates on the East, and makes a bridge of two miles long on the West, and safely brought in his people vpon the enemy, who seeing themselues surprized ; yeelded all to the Kings mercy, except *Hereward*, who desperately marched with his people through the Fens ; and recouered *Scotland* : The rest were sent to diuers Prisons, where they died, or remayned during the Kings life.

Those Lords who persisted loyall vpon this last submission, were all employed and well graced with the King, as *Edric* the Forrester (and first that rebelled in his Reigne) was held in cleare trust, and neere about him. *Gospatrice* he made Earle

of *Northumberland*, and sent him against *Malcolin*, who in this time, subdues the Countries of *Tisdall*, *Cleveland*, and *Cumberland*: *Waltheof*, sonne to the Earle *Syward*, hee held so worthy to be made his, as hee married him to his Neece *Judith*, though hee had beene a principall Actor in the Northerne commotion (and in defending the City of *Yorke* against him, is sayd to haue striken off the heads of diuers *Normans*, one by one, as they entred a breach, to the admiration of all about him); shewing therein that true touch of the noblest nature, to loue vertue euen in his enemies.

And now seeing *Scotland* to bee the especiall retraite for all Conspirators, and discontented in his Kingdome, yeelding them continuall succour, and assistance, and where his competitor *Edgar* liued, to beget and nurse perpetuall matter for their hopes, and at hand for all aduantages; hee enters that Kingdome with a puissant Army; which, encountring with more necessities then forces, soone grew tyred, and both Kings, considering of what difficulties the Victory would consist, were willing to take the safest way to their ends, and vpon faire ouertures, to conclude a peace; Articling for the bounds of each Kingdome, with the same title of Dominion, as in former times: All delinquents, and their partakers generally pardoned.

*Scotland* before this time generally spake a kind of *Irish*.—Titles of honour in *Scotland*.—Heere with the vniuersall turne of alteration thus wrought in *England*, *Scotland* (being a part of the body of this Isle) is noted to haue likewise had a share; and as in the Court of *England*, the *French* tongue became generally spoken; so in that of *Scotland* did the English, by reason of the multitude of this Nation, attending both the Queene and her brother *Edgar*, and daily repayingr theither for their safety, and combination against the Common enemy: of whom diuers, abandoning their natiue distressed Countrey, were by the bounty of that King preferred; and there planted, spread their off-spring into many noble families, remaying to

this day : The titles for distinguishing degrees of honour ; as of Duke, Earle, Baron, Rider or Knight, were then (as is thought) first introduced ; and the nobler sort began to be called by the title of their *Signories* (according to the *French* manner) which before bare the name of their Father, with the addition of *Mac*, after the fashion of *Ireland*. Other innouations, no doubt, entred there likewise at the opening of this wide mutation of ours : fashion and immitation like weedes growing in euery soyle.

1075. *Anno Reg.* 9.—1076. *Anno Reg.* 10.—1077. *Anno Reg.* 11.—Shortly after this late made peace, Prince *Edgar* voluntarily came in, and submitted himselfe to the King, beeing then in *Normandy*, and was restored to grace, and a faire maintenance, which held him euer after quiet. And it made well at that time for the Fortune of the King, howsoeuer for his owne, beeing thought to haue ill-timed his affayres (eyther through want of seasonable intelligence, or despayre of successe) in making too soone that submission, which was later or neuer to be done. For in this absence of the King, *Roger Fits Auber*, the young Earle of *Hereford*, contrary to his expresse Commandement, gaue his sister in marriage to *Ralph Waker*, Earle of *Northfolke*, and *Suffolke*, and at the great Solemnization thereof, the two Earles conspired with *Eustace* Earle of *Boloigne* (who secretly came ouer to this Festiuall) and with the Earle *Waltheof*, and other *English* Lords, to call in the *Danes*, and by maine power to keepe out and dispossesse the King. Who hauing thus passed ouer so many gulfes of forraine dangers, might little imagine of any wracke so neere home : and that those, whom hee had most aduanced, should haue the especiall hand in his destruction : But no rewards are benefits (that are not held so,) nor can euer cleare the accounts with them that ouer-value their merits. And had not this conspiracy beene opportunely discovered (which some say, that [was] by the Earle *Waltheof*, mooued with the vglinesse of so foule an ingratitude) they had put him againe to the winning

of *England*. But now the fire bewrayed before it flamed, was soone quenched by the diligence of *Odon* the Kings Vice-gerent, the Bishop of *Worcester* and others, who kept the Conspirators from ioyning their Forces: So that they neuer came to make head, but were eyther surprized, or forced to flye. The Earle *Roger Fitz Auber* was taken, and some say, executed; and so was shortly after the Earle *Waltheof*, whose dissent from the act, could not get him pardon for his former consent, though much compassion in respect of his great worthinesse. But the wide distent of these tumors, fed from many secret veines, seemed to be of that danger, as required this extreimity of cure, especially in a part so apt for infection, vpon any the like humours.

For this Conspiracy seemes to take motion from a generall league of all the Neighbour Princes, here about, as may well be gathered by their seuerall actions. First in the King of *France* by defending *Dole* in *Brittaine* (a Castle of *Ralph de Waher*) against the King of *England*, and in likelihood, imploying the Earle of *Bologne* towards the Conspirators: In *Swayne* King of *Denmarke*, by sending a Nauy of two hundred sayle, vnder the conduct of his sonne *Knute* and others. In *Drone* King of *Ireland*, by furnishing the sonnes of *Harold* with sixty-fue ships. In *Malcoline*, and the Kings of *Wales*, by their readinesse to assist. But the *Danes* being on the coast, and hearing how their Confederates had sped, with the great preparations the King had made, after some pillage taken vpon the coast of *England* and *Flanders*, returned home, and neuer after arriued to disturbe this Land. Though in *Anno Reg. 19. Knute*, then King of *Denmarke*, after the death of *Swayne* (intending to repayre the dishonour of his two last aduentures past) and to put for the Crowne of *England*, his predecessours had holden, prepared a Nauy of a thousand sayle, and was aided with sixe hundred more by *Robert le Frison* Earle of *Flanders* (whose daughter he had married). But the windes held so contrary for two yeares together, as

vterly quasht that enterprize; and freed the King, and his successors for euer after, from future mollestation that way.

1078. *Anno Reg. 12.* But this businesse put the State to an infinite charge, the King entertaining al that time (besides his *Normans*) *Hugh*, brother to the King of *France*, with many companies of *French*. Finding the *English* (in respect of many great Families allied to the *Danes*) to incline rather to that Nation, then the *Norman*, and had experience of the great and neere intelligence continually passing betweene them.

1079. *Anno Reg. 13.* The Kings of *Wales* doe homage to King *William*.—*Robert* of Normandy titl'd *Courtois*.—And these were al the warres he had within the Kingdome, sauing in *An Regni 13.* he subdued *Wales*, and brought the Kings there, to do him homage. His warres abroad, were all about his Dominions in *France*, first raised by his owne son *Robert*, left Lieutenant gouernor of the Dutchy of *Normandy*, and County of *Mayne*, who in his Fathers absence, tasting the glory of command, grew to assume the absolute rule of the Prouince, causing the Barrons there, to do him homage (as Duke) not as Lieuetenant, and leagues him with the King of *France*, who working vpon the easinesse of his youth, & ambition, was glad to aprehend that occasion to disioynt his Estate, who was growne too great for him. And the profuse largesse, and disorderly expence, whereto *Robert* was addicted, is nourished by all wayes possible as the meanes to imbarke him in those difficulties, of still getting mony, that could not but yeeld continuall occasion to entertaine both his owne discontent and theirs, from whom his supplies must be raised. And though thereby he purchased him the title of *Courtois*, yet he lost the opinion of good gouernment, and constrained the Estates of *Normandy*, to complaine to his Father of the great concussion, and violent exactions he vsed amongst them.

1080. *Anno Reg. 14.* *Robert* rebels against his Father.—The King vnderstanding the fire thus kindled in his owne house, that had set others all in combustion, hastes with his

Forces into *Normandy*, to haue surprized his son, who aduertized of his coming, furnisht with two thousand men at armes, by the king of *France*, lay in ambush where he should passe; sets vpon him, defeited most of his people, and in the persuite hapned to incounter with himselfe, whom he vnhorsed, and wounded in the arme, with his Launce; but perceiuing by his voyce it was his Father, hee hasted to remount him, humbly crauing pardon for his offence: which the Father (seeing in what a case he was) granted, howsoever he gaue; and vpon his submission tooke him with him to *Rouen*, whence, after cured of his hurt, returned with his son *William* (likewise wounded in the fight) into *England*.

1081. *Anno. Reg. 15.*—Long was it not ere he was againe informed of his sons remutining, and how hee exacted vppon the *Normans*, vsurpt the intire gouernment, and vrged his Fathers promise thereof, made him before the King of *France*, vpon his conquest of *England*: which caused his little stay heere, but to make preparations for his returne into those parts: whether in passing he was driuen on the coast of *Spaine*, but at length arriuing at *Burdeaux*, with his great preparations, his son *Robert* came in, and submitted himselfe the second time: whom he now tooke with him into *England*, to frame him to a better obedience, imploying him in the hard and necessitous warres of *Scotland* (the late peace beeing betweene the two Kings againe broken) and after sent him backe, and his young son *Henry*, with the association of charge and like power (but of more trust) to the gouernment of *Normandy*.

1082. *Anno Reg. 16.* *Louis* and *Henry* sons of the kings of *France* and *England*.—After the two Princes had beene there a while, they went to visite the King of *France* at *Constance*, where feasting certaine dayes, vpon an after dinner, *Henry*, wan so much at Chesse of *Louis*, the Kings eldest son, as hee growing into Choller called him the sonne of a Bastard, and threw the Chesse in his face. *Henry* takes vpp the Chesse-board, and strake *Louis*, with that force, as drew bloud, and

had killed him, had not his brother *Robert* come in the meane time, and interposed himselfe: whereupon they suddenly tooke horse, and with much adoe they recouered *Pontioise*, from the Kings people that pursued them. This quarrell arising, vppon the inter-meeting of these princes (a thing that seldome breeds good blood amongst them) re-enkindled a heate of more rancor in the Fathers, and beganne the first warre betweene the *English* and *French*. For presently the King of *France*, complots againe with *Robert* (impatient of a partner), enters *Normandy*, and takes the Citty of *Vernon*.

1086. Anno Reg. 20. King *William* denies to doe homage for *England*, to the King of *France*.—The king of *England* inuades *France*, subdues the Country of *Zaintonge* and *Poictou*, and returnes to *Rouen*, where the third time, his sonne *Robert* is reconciled vnto him, which much disapoynts and vexes the King of *France*, who thereuppon, summons the king of *England* to do him homage for the kingdome of *England*, which he refused to do, saying, He had it of none but God, and his sword. For the Dutchy of *Normandy* hee offers him homage: but that would not satisfie the king of *France*, whom nothing would, but what hee could not haue, the Maisterie: and seekes to make an occasion the motiue of his quarrell: and againe inuades his territories, but with more losse then profit. In the end, they conclude a certaine crazie peace, which held no longer then King *William* had recouered a sicknesse, whereinto (through his late trauell, age, and corpulencie) he was falne; at which time, the King of *France*, then young and lusty, ieasting at his great belly, whereof he sayd hee lay in at *Rouen*, so irritated him, as being recouered, hee gathers all his best Forces, enters *France* in the chiefest time of their fruits, making spoyle of all in his way, till he came euen to *Paris*, where the King of *France* then was, to whom he sends, to shew him of his vp-sitting, and from thence marches to the Citty of *Mants*, which he vtterly sackt, and in the destruction thereof, gate his owne, by the strayne of his

horse, among the breaches, and was then conueyed sicke to *Rouen*, and soe ended his warres. (1087. *Anno Reg.* 21.)

His gouernment in peace.—What were the Lawes of *England*.—The original of the Common Law now vsed.—The Law of *England* put into a forraine language.—Now for his gouernment in peace, and the course hee held in establishing the Kingdome thus gotten; first after hee had repress't the conspiracies in the North, and well quieted all other parts of the State (which now beeing absolutely his, hee would haue to bee ruled by his owne Law) hee beganne to gouerne all by the Customes of *Normandy*. Whereupon the agreedue Lords, and sadde people of *England*, tender their humble petition, *Beseeching him in regard of his oath made at his Coronation: And by the soule of Saint Edward, from whom he had the Crowne and Kingdom: vnder whose Lawes they were borne and bred; that he would not adde that misery, to deliuer them vp to be iudged by a strange Law they understood not.* And so earnestly they wrought, that hee was pleased to confirme that by his Charter, which he had twice fore-promised by his Oath: And gaue commaundement vnto his Iusticiaries to see those Lawes of *Saint Edward* (so called, not that hee made them but collected them out of *Merchen-Law*, *Dane-Law*, and *Westsex-Law*) *To bee inuiolably obserued throughout the Kingdome.* And yet notwithstanding this confirmation, and the Charters afterward granted by *Henry* the first, *Henry* the second and King *Iohn*, to the same effect; there followed a great innouation both in the Lawes and gouernment in *England*; So that this seemes rather to bee done to acquiet the people, with a shew of the Continuation of their ancient customes and liberties, then that they enioyed them in effect. For the little conformitie betweene them of former times, and these that followed vpon this change of State; shew from what head they sprang. And though there might bee some veynes issuing from former originalls, yet the maine streame of our Common law, with the practise thereof, flowed out of *Nor-*

mandy, notwithstanding all obiections can bee made to the contrary. For before these collections of the *Confessors*, there was no vniuersall Law of the Kingdome, but euery seuerall Prouince held their owne customes, all the inhabitants from *Humber* to *Scotland* vsed the *Danique* Law: *Merchland*: the middle part of the country; and the State of the West *Saxons*, had their seuerall constitutions, as beeing seuerall Dominions, and though for some few yeares, there seemed to bee a reduction of the *Heptarchie*, into a *Monarchie*, yet held it not so long together (as wee may see in the succession of a broken gouernment) as to settle one forme of order currant ouer all: but that euery Prouince, according to their particular founders, had their customes apart, and held nothing in common (besides religion, and the constitutions thereof) but with the vniuersality of *Meum & Tuum*, ordered according to the rights of nations, and that *Ius innatum*, the common law of all the world, which wee see to bee as vniuersall, as are the cohabitations, and societies of men, and serues the turne to hold them together in all Countries, howsoeuer they may differ in their formes. So that by these passages, wee see what way we came, when wee are, and the furthest ende wee can discouer of the originall of our Common law; and to striue to looke beyond this, is to looke into an vncertaine Vastnesse, beyond our discerning. Nor can it detract from the glory of good Customes, if they bring but a pedigree of 600 yeares to approue their gentility; seeing it is the equity, and not the Antiquity of lawes, that makes them venerable, and the integritie of the professors thereof, the profession honored. And it were well with mankinde, if dayes brought not their corruptions, and good orders were continued with that prouidence, as they were instituted. But this alteration of the Lawes of *England* bred most heauie doleancies, not onely in this Kings time, but long after: For whereas before, those Lawes they had, were written in their owne tongue, intelligible to all; now are they translated into *Latine* and *French*, and practized wholly in the *Norman* forme

and Languages ; thereby to draw the people of this Kingdome, to learne that speach for their owne neede, which otherwise they would not doe ; And seeing a difference in Tongue, would not continue a difference in affections ; all meanes was wrought to reduce it to one *Idiom*, which yet was not in the power of the Conquerour to doe, without the extirpation, or ouerlaying of Land-bred people ; who being so farre in number (as they were) aboue the Inuadors ; both retaine the maine of the Language, and in few yeares, haue those who subdued them, vndistinguishably theirs. For notwithstanding the former Conquest by the *Danes*, and now this by the *Norman* (the solide bodie of the Kingdome, still consisted of the *English*) and the accession of strange people, was but as riuers to the Ocean, that changed not it, but were changed into it. And though the King laboured that he could to turne all to *French*, *By enioyning their Children heere to use no other Language with their Grammer in schooles, to haue the Lawes practized in French, all petitions and businesse of Court in French, No man graced but hee that spake French*, yet soone after his dayes, all returnes naturall English againe (but Law) and that still held forraine, and became in the ende wholly to be inclosed in that Language : nor haue we now, other marke of our subiection and invassalage from *Normandie*, but onely that, and that still speakes *French* to vs in *England*.

And herewithall, *New Termes, new Constitutions, new Formes of Pleas, new Offices, and Courts*, are now introduced by the *Normans*, a people more invred to litigation, and of spirits more impatient, and contentious, then were the *English* : who (by reason of their continuall warre, wherein Law is not borne, and labour to defend the publicke) were more at vnitie in their priuate : and that small time of peace they had, Deuotion, and good fellowship entertained. For their Lawes and Constitutions before, wee see them plaine, briefe, and simple, without perplexities, hauing neither fold nor pleite, commanding ; not disputing : Their grants and transactions as

briefe and simple, which showed them a cleere-meaning people, retayning still the nature of that plaine realnesse they brought with them, vncomposed of other fashion then their owne, and vnaffected imitation.

The English trials in cases Criminall.—Men of ability cleered by their Oathes.—And for their tryals (in cases Criminall) where manifest prooffe failed, they continued their auncient Custome, held from before their Christianitie (vntill this great alteration) which trials they called *Ordeal*, Or (*signifying*) *Right*, *Deale*, *Parte*, whereof they had these kinds : *Ordeal by fire*, which was for the better sort, & by water for the inferiour : *That of Fire*, was to goe blindfold ouer certaine plough shares, made red hote, and laide an vneuen distance one from another. *That of Water* was either of hote, or cold : in the one to put their armes to the elbow, in the other to bee cast headlong. According to their escapes or hurts, they were adiudged : *Such as were cast into the riuers*, if they sanke were held guiltlesse, if not, culpable, as eiection by that *Element*. These tryals they called the *iudgements of God*, and they were performed with solempne *Oraisons*. In some cases, the accused was admitted to cleere himselfe by receiuing the *Eucharist*, or by his owne *Oath*, or the *Oathes of two or three* ; but this was for especiall persons, and such, whose liuings were of a rate allowable thereunto, the vsuall opinion perswading them, that men of ability held a more regard of honesty.

The English trials.—With these, they had the *triall of Campefight*, or *single combat* (which likewise the *Lumbards*, originally of the same *German Nation*, brought into *Italy*) permitted by the *Law*, in cases either of safety, and fame, or of possessions. All which trials, shew them to be ignorant in any other forme of *Law*, or to neglect it ; Nor would they bee induced to forgoe these Customes, and determine their affaires by *Imperiall* or *Ponti-ficiall* Constitutions, no more then would the *Lumbards* forsake their duellary Lawes in *Italy*, which their Princes (against some of their wils) were constraigned to ratifie, as *Luytprendus*

their King, thus ingeniously confesses : *Wee are vncertaine of the iudgment of God, and we haue heard many by fight, to haue lost their cause, without iust cause ; yet in respect of the Custome of our Nation, we cannot auoyde an impious Law.* But all these Formes of iudgments and trialls, had their seasons : Those of Fire and Water, in short time after the Conquest, grew dis-vs'd, and in the end vtterly abrogated by the Pope ; as deriued from Paganisme : That of Combate continues longer-liued, but of no ordinary vse : And all actions now, both criminall and reall, beganne to be wholly adiudged by the verdict of twelue men, according to the custome of *Normandy*, where the like forme is vsed, and called by the name of *Enquest*, with the same cautions for the Iurors, as it is heere continued to this day. Although some holde opinion that this forme of triall, was of vse in this Kingdome from all Antiquity, and alledge an Ordinance of King *Ethelred* (*Father to the Confessor*) *willing in their Gemote or conuentions, monethly held in every Hundred, twelue graue men of free condition, should with the Greue, the Chiefe Officer amongst them, sweare vpon the Euangelists, to iudge every mans cause aright.* But here we see twelue men were to be assessors with the *Greue* to judge, and no Iurors, according to this manner of triall now vsed ; Besides, had there beene any such forme, we should aswell haue heard thereof in their Lawes and practise, as of those other kinds of *Ordeall*, onely, and vsually mentioned.

The continuation of the Law for the peace.—The Borough Law of the Saxons.—But whatsoever innovations were in all other things ; the gouernment of the peace and security of the Kingdome (which most imported the King to looke vnto) seemes to bee continued as before, and for that businesse hee found heere better Lawes established, by the wary care of our former Kings, then any he could bring. Amongst which especially was the *Borough Law*, whereby euery free man of the Commons stood as surety for each others behaviour, in this sort.

Saxon Lawes.—The Kingdome was deuided into Shieres

or Shares, euery Shiere consisting of so many Hundreds, and euery Hundred of a number of Boroughs, Villages, or Tythings, contayning ten housholders, whereof; *If any one should commit an vnlawfull act, the other nine were to attach and bring him to reason: If he fled, thirty one dayes were enioyned him to appeare: If in the meane time apprehended, he was made to restore the damage done; otherwise the Free-boroughead (to say the Tything-man) was to take with him two of the same Village, and out of three other Villages next adioyning as many (that is, the Tything-man, and two other of the principall men) and before the Officers of that Hundred, purge himselfe and the Village of the fact, restoring the damage done with the goods of the malefactor; which, if they suffized not to satisfie, the Free-borough, or Tything, must make vp the rest, and besides take an oath to be no way accessary to the fact; and to produce the Offendor, if by any meanes they could recouer him, or know where he were. Besides, euery Lord and Maister, stood Borough for all his Family, whereof, if any seruant were called in question, the Maister was to see him answere it in the Hundred, where he was accused. If he fled, the Maister was to yeeld such goods as he had to the King. If himselfe were accused to be ayding or priuie to his seruants flight, he was to cleare himselfe by fve men, otherwise to forfeit all his goods to the King, and his man to be out-lawed. (Lambert.)*

No popular insurrection before the Conquest.—The meanes vsed by the *Norman*, to establish his Conquest.—These linckes thus intermutually fastened, made so strong a chayne to hold the whole Frame of the State together in peace and order, as, all the most polittique regiments vppon Earth, all the inter-leagued Societies of men, cannot shew vs a streighter Forme of combination. This might make the Conquerour, comming vpon a people (thus Law-bound hand and foote) to establish him, so soone, and easily as hee did; This *Borough-law* (being as a Cittadell, built to guard the Common-wealth comming to bee possest by a Conquering Maister) was made

to turne all this Ordinance vpon the State, and batter her selfe with her owne weapon : and this Law may bee some cause, we finde no popular insurrection before the Conquest. For had not this people bene bound with these Fetters, and an idle peace (but had liued loose, and in action) it is like they would haue done as nobly, and giuen as many, and as deepe wounds ere they lost their Country, as euer the *Brittains* did, either against the *Romans*, or the *Saxons*, their predecessours, or themselues had done against the *Danes* ; a people farre more powerfull, and numerous then these. The Conquerour, without this, had not made it the worke of one day, nor had *Normandy* euer bin able to haue yeelded those multitudes for supplies, that many battailes must haue had.

Alteration of the *Gouernment*.—But now. *First, the executing this Law. Secondly, dis-weaponing the Commons. Thirdly, preuenting their night-meetings with a heavy penalty, that euery man at the day closing, should couer his fire, and depart to his rest. Fourthly, erecting diuers Fortresses in fit parts of the Kingdome. Fifthly, collating al officcs, both of command and iudicature, on those who were his ; made his domination such as he would haue it.*

And where before the Bishop and the Alderman were the absolute Iudges to determine all businesse in euery Shiere, and the Bishop in many cases shared in the benifits of the Mulcts with the King, now he confined the Clergy, within the Prouince of their own Ecclesiasticall iurisdiction, to deale onely in busines concerning rule of soules, according to the Cannons, and Lawes Episcopall.

The order of deciding controuersies in the Saxons time.—New orders instituted by the *Normans*.—And whereas the causes of the Kingdome were before determined in euery Shire, and by a Law of King *Edward* Senior, all matters in question should, vpon especiall penalty, without further deferment, be finally decided in their *Gemote*, or conuentions held monthly in euery hundred : now he ordained. *That*

*four times in the yeare, for certaine dates, the same businesses should be determined in such place as he would appoynt, where hee constituted Iudges to attend for that purpose, and others, from whom, as from the bosome of the Prince, al litigators should haue Iustice, and from whom was no appeale. Others he appointed for the punishment of malefactors, called Iusticiarij Pacis.*

*The alteration of Tenures.—The Tenure of Gauelkin.—The customs of Kent preserued by the mediation of the Archbishop Stigand.—What alteration was then made in the tenure of mens possessions, or since introduced, wee may finde by taking note of their former vsances. Our Ancestours had onely two kindes of tenures, Boke-land, and Folk-land, the one a possession by writing, the other without. That by writing was a free-hold, and by Charter, hereditary, with all immunities, and for the free and nobler sort. (Lambert: Freehold.) That without writing, was to hold at the will of the Lord, bound to rents and seruices, and was for the rurall people. The inheritances descended not alone, but after the German manner, equally deuided amongst al the children, which they called Land-skiftan, to say, Part-land, a custome yet continued in some places of Kent, by the name of Gauel-kin, of Gif eal kin: And hereupon some write how the people of that Country, retayned their ancient lawes and liberties, by especiall graunt from the Conquerour, who after his battaile at Hastings, comming to Douer, to make all sure on that side, was incompassed by the whole people of that Prouince, carrying boughes of trees in their hands, and marching round about him like a moouing wood. With which strange and sodaine shew being much mooued, the Arch-bishop Stigand, and the Abbot Egelfin who had raised this commotion by shewing the people in what daunger they were, vtterly to loose their liberties, and to indure the perpetuall misery of seruitude, (vnder the domination of strangers) present themselues, and declared, *How they were the vniuersall people of that Country, gathered together in that manner with boughes in their hands, either as Oliue branches of**

*intercession, for peace and liberty, or to intangle him in his passage, with resolution rather to leaue their liues, then that which was deerer, their freedome.* Whereuppon they say the Conquerour granted them the continuation of their former Customes and Liberties: whereof, notwithstanding they now retaine no other, then such as are common with the rest of the Kingdome.

Villinage (*Geruasius Tilburiensis. Dialog Scacc.*).—For such as were Tenants at the will of their Lords (which now growne to a greater number, and more miserable then before) vppon their petition and compassion of their oppression hee releueed, their case was this. All such as were discouered to haue had a hand in any rebellion, and were pardoned, onely to enioy the benefit of life, hauing all their liuely-hood taken from them, became vassals vnto those Lords to whom the possessions were giuen, of all such lands forfeited by attaindors. And if by their diligent seruice, they could attaine any portion of ground, they held it but onely so long as it pleased their Lords, without hauing any estate for themselues, or their children, and were oftentimes violently cast out vppon any small displeasure, contrary to all right: whereuppon it was ordained, that whatsoeuer they had obtained of their Lords, by their obsequious seruice, or agreed for by any lawfull pact, they should hold by an inuiolable Law, during their owne liues.

A suruey made of the Kingdome.—The next great worke after the ordering his Lawes, was the raising and disposing of his reuennues, taking a course to make, and know the vtmost of his estate, by a generall suruey of his Kingdome, whereof hee had a president by the *Dome* booke of *Winchester*, taken before by King *Alfred*. But as one day informes another, so these actions of profit grew more exact in their after practise: and a larger Commission is granted, a choyce of skilfuller men employed, to take the particulars both of his owne possessions, and euery mans else in the Kingdome, the nature and the quality of their lands, their estates, and abilities; besides the

discriptions, bounds, and diuisions of Shieres, and Hundreds, and this was drawne into one booke, and brought into his treasury, then newly called the Exchequer (according to the soueraigne Court of that name of *Normandy*) before termed here *Taleè*, and it was called the *Dome* booke (*Liber iudicarius*) for all occasions concerning these particulars. (*Geruasius Tilburiensis. de Scacc. Dome booke.*)

The new Forest in *Hampshire*.—All the Forrests and Chases of the Kingdome, hee seized into his owne possession; and exemted them from being vnder any other Law then his owne pleasure, to serue as *Penetralia Regnum*, the withdrawing Chambers of Kings, to recreate them after their serious labours in the State, where none other might presume to haue to doe, and where all punishments and pardons of delinquents were to be disposed by himselfe, absolutely, and all former customes abrogated. And to make his command the more, hee increased the number of them in all parts of the Land, and on the South coast dis-peopled the Country for aboue thirty miles space, making of old inhabited possessions, a new Forrest, inflicting most seuer punishments for hunting his Deere, and thereby much aduances his reuennues. An act of the greatest concussion, and tyranny, he committed in his reigne, and which purchased him much hatred. And the same course held (almost euery King neere the Conquest) till this heauey grievance was allayed by the Charter of Forrests, granted by *Henry* the third. (*Ibid.*)

He imposed no new taxations.—The occasion of paying *Escuage*.—The Custome of Fifes.—Besides these, he imposed no new taxations on the State, and vsed those hee found very moderately, as *Danegelt*, an imposition of two shillings vpon euery hide or ploughland (raised first by King *Ethelred*, to bribe the *Danes*, after to warre vpon them) he would not haue it made an annuall payment, but onely taken vpon vrgent occasion, and it was seldome gathered in his time, or his successors (saith *Geruasius*) yet wee finde in our Annals, a taxe of sixe shillings

vpon euery hide-land, leauied presently after the generall suruey of the Kingdome. *Escuage* (whether it were an imposition formerly layd, though now newly named, I do not finde) was a summe of mony, taken of euery knights Fee: In after times, especially raised for the seruice of *Scotland*; And this also, saith *Geruasius*, was seldome leauied but on great occasion, for stipends, and donatiues to souldiers: yet was it at first a due, reserued out of such lands as were giuen by the Prince for seruice of warre; according to the Customes of other Nations. As in the *Romans* time we finde Lands were giuen in reward of seruice to the men of warre, for terme of their liues, as they are at this day in *Turkey*. After they became patrimonial, and hereditary to their Children. *Seuerus* the Emperour was the first who permitted the children of men of warre, to inioy their Fifes, provided that they followed armes. *Constantine* to reward his principall Captaines, granted them a perpetuity in the Lands assigned them. The estates which were but for life, were made perpetuall in *France*, vnder the last kings of the race of *Charlemaine*. Those Lords who had the great Fifes of the king, sub-diuided them to other persons, of whom they were to haue seruice.

By what meanes hee increased his Reuenues.—The Law for Murther renewed, first made by King *Knute*.—Mulctuary profits, besides, such as might arise by the breach of his Forrest-lawes, hee had, few or none new, vnlesse that of Murther, which arose vppon this occasion. In the beginning of his reigne, the rankor of the English towards the new-come *Normans*, was such, as finding them single in woods, or remote places, they secretly murthered them; and the deed doers (for any the seuerest courses taken) could neuer bee discovered: Whereupon, it was ordained, that the Hundred, wherein a *Norman* was found slaine, and the murtherer not taken, should be condemned to pay to the King, some 36. pounds, some 28. pounds, according to the quantity of the Hundred, that the punishment, being generally inflicted, might particularly deter

them, and hasten the discouery of the Malefactor, by whom so many must (otherwise) be interested.

King *William* seized vpon the Treasure committed to Monasteries.—For his prouisionary reuenues, he continued the former custome held by his Predecessors, which was in this manner. (Geruasius Tilb.) The Kings Tenants, who held the Lands of the Crowne, payd no money at all; but onely Victualls, Wheate, Beifes, Muttons, Hay, Oates, &c: And a iust note of the quality and quantitie of euery mans ratement was taken throughout all the Shieres of the Kingdome, and leauied euer certaine, for the maintenance of the Kings House. Other ordinary In-come of ready moneys was there none, but what was raysed by mulcts, and out of Cities and Castles where Agriculture was not vsed. What the Church yeelded him, was by extent of a power that neuer reached so farre before; and the first hand, he laid vpon that side which weighed heauily, was his seazing vpon the Plate, Iewels, and Treasure within all the Monasteries of *England*, pretending the Rebels and their assistants, conueyed their riches into these religious houses (as into places priuiledged and free from seazure) to defraud him thereof.

Besides this, he made all Bishoprickes, and Abbeys that held Barronies (before that time free from all secular seruices) contributarie to his Warres, and his other occasions. And this may be the cause why they, who then onely held the Pen (the Scepter, that rules ouer the memorie of Kings) haue laid such an eternall imposition vpon his name, of rigour, oppression, and euen barbarous immanitie, as they haue done. When the nature and necessary disposition of his affayres (being as he was) may aduocate for him, and in many things much excuse his courses. But this name of Conquest, which euer imports violence and miserie, is of so harsh a sound, and so odious in nature, as a people subdued cannot giue a Conquerour his due (how euer worthie,) and especiallie to a stranger, whom onely time must naturalize, and incorporate by

degrees, into their liking and opinion. And yet therein this King was greatly aduantaged, by reason of his twenty yeares gouernment, which had much impaired the Memory of former Customes in the yonger sort, and well invred the elder to the present vsances and forme of State, whereby the rule was made more easie to his sons : who (though they were farre inferiour to him in worth) were somewhat better beloued, then he ; and the rather, for that their occasions made them, somewhat to vnwrest the Soueraignty from that height, whereunto hee had strayned it.

His Councillors.—The Bishop of *Bayeux* as an Earle of *Kent*, committed to Prison.—How hee was vnder set with able Ministers for the managing of these great affaires of his, though time hath shut vs out from the knowledge of some of them (it beeing in the Fortune of Kings, to haue their Ministers like Riuers in the Ocean, buried in their glory) yet no doubt, being of a strong constitution of Iudgement, he could not but be strongly furnished in that kind : for weake Kings haue euer weake sides, and the most renowned Princes are alwaies best stored with able Ministers. The principall of highest imploiment, were *Odon*, Bishop of *Bayeux*, and Earle of *Kent* : *Lanfranc* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and *William Fitz Auber*, Earle of *Hereford* : *Odon* supplied the place of Viceroy in the Kings absence, and had the management of the Treasurie. A man of a wide and agile spirit, let out into as spacious a concept of greatnesse, as the heighth of his place could shew him : And is rumored by the infinite accumulation of money (which his auarice and length of office had made) either to buy the Popedome, or to purchase the people of *England* vpon the death of the King his brother : who (vnderstanding hee had a purpose of going to *Rome*, and seeing a mighty confluence of Followers gathering vnto him) made a close prison stay his iourney : excusing it to the Church, that hee imprisoned not a Bishop of *Bayeux*, but an Earle of *Kent*, an Officer accomptant vnto him. Yet,

vpon his death-bed shortly following (after many obsecrations, that hee would, in respect of blood and nature, be a kind mean for the future peace of his sons) he released him.

Reserued for greater mischiefe.—But the Bishop failed his request therein, and became the onely kindle-fire to set them all into more furious combustion. The motiue of his discontent (the engine wherewith all Ambition euermore turnes about her intentions) was the enuy hee bare to *Lanfranc*, whose counsell, in his greatest Affaires, the King especially vsed: and to oppose and ouer-bear him, he tooke all the contrary courses, and part with *Robert*, his Nephew, whom (after many fortunes) hee attended to the holy Warre, and dyed in the siedege of *Antioch*.

*Lanfranc*.—*Lanfranc* was a man of as vniuersall goodnesse, as learning, borne in *Lombardy*, and came happily a stranger, in these strange times to do good to *England*; vpon whose obseruance, though the King might (in regard he raised him) lay some tye, yet his affections could not but take part with his piety and place: in so much as he feared not to oppose against *Odon* the Kings brother, seeking to gripe from the State of his Church: and in all he could, stood so betweene the Kingdome and the Kings rigor, as stayed many precipitious violences, that he (whose power lay as wide as his will) might else haue fallen into. For the Conqueror (howsoever austere to others) was to him alwayes milde and yeelding, as if subdued with grauity and vertue.

The Reformation of the Clergy by *Lanfranc*.—Hee reformed the irregularity, and rudenesse of the Clergy, introducing a more Southerne formality and respect, according to his breeding, and the Custome of his Country: concurring herein likewise to bee an Actor of alteration (though in the best kinde) with this change of State. And to giue entertaynment to deuotion, he did all he could to furnish his Church with the most exquisite ornaments might bee procured: added a more State and conueniency to the structure of religious

houses, and beganne the Founding of Hospitals. Having long struggled, with indefatigable labour, to hold things in an even course, during the whole Reigne of this busie new State. building King, and after his Death, seeing his Successour in the Crowne (established especially by his meanes) to fayle his expectation ; out of the experience of worldly causes, diuining of future mischiefes by present courses, grew much to lament (with his Friends) the teadiousnesse of life, which shortly after hee mildly left, with such a sicknesse, as neither hindred his speech nor memory : a thing hee would often desire of God.

*William Fitz Auber* Earle of *Hereford*, made Lawes in his Prouince.—*William Fitz Auber* (as is deliuered) was a principall Counsellor and instrument in this action for *England* ; wherein he furnished forty ships at his owne charge. A man of great meanes, yet of a heart greater, and a hand larger then any meanes would well suffice. His profuse liberalities to men of armes, gaue often sharpe offence to the King, who could not indure any such improuident expences. Amongst the Lawes hee made (which shewes the power these Earles then had in their Prouinces) hee ordayned, *That in the County of Hereford, no man of war (or souldier) should bee fined for any offence whatsoever about seauen shillings* ; when in other Countries, vpon the least occasion of disobeying their Lords will, they were forced to pay 20. or 25. shil. But his estate seeming to beare no proportion with his minde, and enough it was not to be an eminent Earle, an especiall Counsellor in all the affaires of *England* and *Normandy*, a chiefe Fauorite to so great a Monarch, but that larger hopes drew him away ; designing to marry *Richeld*, Countesse Dowager of *Flanders*, and to haue the gouernement of that Country, during the non-age of *Arnulph* her son ; of whom, with the King of *France*, hee had the tutelary charge committed by *Baldouin* the sixth, Father to *Arnulph* ; whose estate *Robert le Frison* his vnckle (called by the people to the gouernment, vpon the exactions inflicted

on them by *Richeld*) had vsurped. And against him *Fitz Auber* opposing, was with *Arnulph* surprized and slaine.

The death of *William* the first.—And this was in the Fate of the Conqueror, to see most of all these great men, who had beene the especiall Actors in all his Fortunes, spent and extinct before him; As *Beaumont*, *Monfort*, *Harcourt*, *Hugh de Gourney*, *Vicount Neele*, *Hugh de Mortimer*, *Conte de Vannes*, &c. And now himselfe, after his being brought sicke to *Rouan*, and there disposing his estate, ended also his act in the 74. yeare of his age, and the one and twenty of his Reigne.

His Corpes lay vnburied three dayes.—His interment hindred.—Three dayes the Corpes of this great Monarch is sayd to haue laine neglected, while his seruants attending to imbeasle his moueables: in the end, his yongest sonne *Henry*, had it conueyed to the Abbey of *Cane*; where first at the entry into the Towne, they who carried the Corpes, left it alone, and ran all to quench a house on fire: Afterward brought to be intombed, a Gentleman stands forth, and in sterne manner, forbids the interment in that place, claiming the ground to bee his Inheritance, descended from his Ancestors, and taken from him at the building of that Abbey; appealing to *Row*, their first Founder, for Iustice: Whereupon, they were faine to compound with him for an Annuall rent. Such adoe had the body of him after death (who had made so much in his life) to be brought to the earth; and of all he attayned, had not now a roome to contayne him, without being purchased at the hand of another, men esteeming a liuing Dog more then a dead Lyon.

His Issue.—He had a faire Issue by *Maude* his wife, foure sons, and six daughters. To *Robert* his eldest, he left the Dutchy of *Normandy*: to *William* the third son, the Kingdome of *England*: to *Henry* the yongest, his treasure, with an annuall pension to bee payd him by his Brother. *Richard* who was his second son, and his darling, a Prince of great hope, was

slaine by a Stagge hunting in the new Forrest, and began the fatalnesse that followed in that place, by the death of *William* the second, there slaine with an arrow; and of *Richard* the son of *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, who brake his necke.

His eldest daughter *Cicile*, became a Nun; *Constance* married to the Earle of *Brittain*; *Adula* to *Stephen* Earle of *Bloys*, who likewise rendred her selfe a Nun in her age; such was then their deuotion, and so much were these solitary retires, affected by the greatest Ladies of those times: *Gundred* married to *William de Warrein*, the first Earle of *Surrey*, the other two, *Ela* or *Adeliza* and *Margaret* dyed before marriage.

The description of *William* the first.—Now, what hee was in the circle of himselfe in his owne continent, wee finde him of an euen stature, comely personage, of good presence, riding, sitting or standing, till his corpulency increasing with age, made him somewhat vnweildy, of so strong a constitution, as he was neuer sickly till a few moneths before his death. His strength such, as few men could draw his Bow, and being about 50. of his age, when he subdued this Kingdome, it seemes by his continuall actions, hee felt not the weight of yeares vpon him till his last yeare.

What was the composition of his mind; wee see it (the fairest) drawne in his actions, and how his abilities of Nature, were answerable to his vndertakings of Fortune, as pre-ordayned for the great worke hee effected. And though hee might haue some aduantage of the time, wherein wee often see men preuaile more by the imbecility of others, then their owne worth; yet let the season of that world be well examined, and a iust measure taken of his actiue vertues, they will appeare of an exceeding proportion: Nor wanted he those incounters and concurrences of sufficient able Princes, to put him to the triall thereof: Hauing on one side the *French* to grapple withall; on the other the *Danes*, farre mightier in people and shipping then himselfe, strongly sided in this Kingdome, as eger to

recouer their former footing here, as euer, and as well or better prepared.

His deuotion and mercy.—But one Noble man executed in all the time of this Kings Reigne.—For his deuotion and mercy, the brightest Starres in the Spheare of Maiesty, they appeare aboue all his other vertues, and the due obseruation of the first, the Clergy (that loued him not) confesse: the other was seene, in the often pardoning, and receiuing into grace, those (who rebelled against him) as if hee held submission satisfactory, for the greatest offence, and sought not to defeat men, but their enterprizes: For wee finde but one Noble-man executed in all his Reigne, and that was the Earle *Waltheof*, who had twice falsified his Faith before: And those he held Prisoners in *Normandy*, as the Earles *Morchar* and *Syward*, with *Wolnoth*, the brother of *Harold*, and others (vpon compassion of their indurance) he released a little before his death.

Besides, hee was as farre from suspition, as cowardize, and of that confidence (an especiall note of his Magnanimity) as hee gaue *Edgar* his Competitor in the Crowne, the liberty of his Court: And (vpon his suite) sent him well furnisht to the holy Warre, where he nobly behaued himselfe, and attayned to great estimation, with the Emperours of *Greece* and *Almaine*, which might haue beene held dangerous, in respect of his alliances that way, being grand-child to the Emperour *Henry* the third. But these may be as well vertues of the Time, as of Men, and so the age must haue part of this commendation.

His workes of Piety.—He was a Benefactor to nine Abbeyes of Monkes, and one of Nunnes, founded by his Predecessors in *Normandy*, and during his owne time were founded in the same Prouince, seauen Abbeyes of Monkes and sixe of Nunnes; with which Fortresses (as he sayd) he furnisht *Normandy*, to the end men might therein fight against the flesh, and the Diuell. In *England* he Founded a goodly Abbey, where he fought his first Battell, whereof it had the Denomination, and two Nunneries, one at *Hinching-brooke* in *Huntingdon-shiere*,

and the other at *Armthewt* in *Cumberland*, besides his other publique workes.

Magnificent he was in his Festiuals, which with great solemnity and Ceremony (the formall entertayners of reuerence and respect) be duly obserued: Keeping his *Christmas* at *Glocester*, his *Easter* at *Winchester*, and *Pentecost* at *Westminster*: whither he summoned his whole Nobility; that Embassadors and strangers might see his State and largenesse. Nor euer was he more milde and indulgent, then at such times. And these Ceremonies his first Successor obserued; but the second omitted.

*The end of the Life, and Reigne of William the first.*

## *The Life and Reigne of William the second.*

1087. *Anno Reg. 1.* William the second resumes his owne Grants.



*William* the Second, Sonne to *William* the First, not attending his Fathers Funerall, hasts into *England* to recouer the Crowne, where (by the especiall mediation of the Arch-bishop *Lanfranc*, his owne large bounty, and wide promises) he obtayned it, according to his Fathers will; to whom by his obsequiousnesse hee had much indeared himselfe, especially after the abdication of his elder brother *Robert*. Hee was a Prince more gallant then good, and hauing beene bred with the Sword, alwayes in action, and on the better side of Fortune, was of a Nature rough and haughty, whereunto, his youth and Soueraignty added a greater wildenesse. Comming to succeed in a Gouvernement, fore-ruled by Mature and graue Councell, hee was so ouerwhelmed with his Fathers worth and greatnesse, as made him appeare of a lesser Orbe then otherwise he would haue done. And then

the shortnesse of his Reigne, being but of thirteene yeares ; allowed him not time to recouer that opinion, which the errors of first gouernment had lost, or his necessities caused him to commit. For the succession in right of *Primogeniture*, being none of his, and the elder brother liuing: howsoever his Fathers will was, hee must now be put, and held in possession of the Crowne of *England*, by the Will of the Kingdome ; which to purchase (must be) by large conditions of releeuements in generall, and profuse gifts in particular. Wherein he had the more to doe, beeing to deale with a State consisting of a two-fold body, and different temperaments (where any inflammation of discontent, was the more apt to take,) hauing a head whêreto it might readily gather. Which made, that vnlesse hee would lay more to their hopes then another, hee could not hope to haue them firmly his. And therefore seeing the best way to win the *Normans*, was by money ; and the *English*, with liberties, hee spared not at first, to bestow on the one, and to promise the other, more then befitted his estate and dignity ; which, when afterward failing, both in supplies (for great giuers must alwayes giue) and also in performances, got him farre more hatred then otherwise hee could euer haue had, being forced to all dishonorable shifts for raying moneys that could bee deuised, and euen to resume his owne former grants.

*Robert of Normandy* borrowes summes of his brother *Henry* to purchase the Kingdome of *England*.—And to begin at first to take the course to be euer needy, presently after his Coronation, he goes to *Winchester*, where his Fathers Treasure lay, and empties out all that ; which, with great prouidence, was there amassed : whereby, though he wonne the loue of many, hee lost more, beeing not able to content all. And now although his brother *Robert* had not (this great engine) money, hee had to giue hopes ; and there were heere of the *Normans*, as *Odon* his Vnckle, *Roger de Montgomery* Earle of *Shrewsbury*, with others, who were mainly for him, and worke he doth all he can, to batter his brothers fortunes, vpon their

first foundation. And for this purpose borrowes great summes of his younger brother *Henry* (to whom the Father and the Mother had left much treasure) and for the same ingages the Country of *Constantine*, and leauiers an army for *England*. But *William* newly inuested in the Crowne, though well prepared for all assaults, had rather purchase a present peace (by mediation of the Nobles on both sides) till time had better settled him in his gouernment then to raise spirits that could not easily bee allayed. And an agreement betweene them is wrought, that *William* should hold the Crowne of *England* during his life, paying to *Robert* three thousand Markes *Per annum*.

*Robert* hauing closed this businesse, resumes by force the Country of *Constantine* out of his brother *Henries* hands, without discharge of those summes ; for which hee had ingaged it. Whereupon King *William* vpbraydes *Henry* (with the great gaine hee had made by his vsury) in lending mony to depriue him of his Crowne. And so *Henry* got the hatred of both his brothers, and hauing no place safe from their danger where to liue ; surprized the Castle of Mount Saint *Michel*, fortifies him therein, gets ayde of *Hugh Earle of Brittain*e, and for his mony was serued with *Brittaines*, who committed great spoyles, in the Countreyes of *Constantine* and *Bessin*.

*Odon* for malice to *Lanfranc*, seekes to distract the Kings forces.—The King vnderworkes his enemies, by releeing the doleances, and granting former freedoms to the English.—*Odon*, Bishop of *Bayeux*, returning into *England*, after his imprisonment in *Normandy*, and restored to his Earldome of *Kent*, finding himselfe so farre vnder what hee had beene, and *Lanfranc* his concurrent, now the onely man in counsell with the King, complots with as many *Norman* Lords as hee found, or made to affect change, and a new maister, and sets them on worke in diuers parts of the Realme, to distract the Kings Forces : as first *Geffery* Bishop of *Constans* : with his

Nephew *Robert de Moubray* Earle of *Northumberland*, fortifie themselves in *Bristow*, and take in all the Country about: *Roger de Bigod*, made himselfe strong in *Northfolke*: *Hugh de Grandemeuill* about *Lecister*: *Roger de Montgomery* Earle of *Shrewsbury* with a power of *Welshmen*, and other thereabout, sets out accompanied with *William* Bishop of *Durham*, *Bernard de Newmarch*, *Roger Lacie*, and *Ralph Mortimer* all *Normans*, and assaile the Citty of *Worcester*, making themselves strong in those parts. *Odon* himselfe fortifies the Castle of *Rochester*, makes good all the Coast of *Kent*, solicits *Robert* to vse what speede hee could to come with all his power out of *Normandy*: which had hee done in time, and not giuen his brother so large oppertunity of preuention, hee had carried the Kingdome; but his delay yeelds the King time to confirme his Friends, vnder-worke his enemies, and make himselfe strong with the *English*, which hee did by granting relaxation of tribute, with other releiuements of their doleances, and restoring them to their former freedom of hunting in all his woods and Forrests, a thing they much esteemed; whereby hee made them so strongly his, as soone hee brake the necke of all the *Norman* conspiracies (they being egar to reuenge them of that Nation) and heere they learned first to beate their Conquerors, hauing the faire aduantage of this action, which cut the throates of many of them.

1088. *Anno Reg. 2.*—*Mongomery*, being won from his complices, and the seuerall conspirators in other parts repress, the King comes with an Army into *Kent*, where the head of the Faction lay, and first wonne the Castle of *Tunbridge*, and that of *Pemsey*, which *Odon* was forced to yeeld, and promise to cause those which defended that of *Rochester*, which were *Eustace* Earle of *Bologne*, and the Earle of *Mortaigne*, to render likewise the same. But beeing brought thither to effect the businesse, they within, receiuing him, detained him, as hee pretended, prisoner, and held out stoutly against the King vpon a false intelligence giuen of the arriuall of Duke *Robert*

at *Southampton*; but in the end they were forced to quit the place, and retire into *France*, and *Odon* to abiure *England*.

And to keepe off the like danger from hence, he transports his Forces into *Normandy*, there to waste and weaken his brother at home. So, as hee might hold him from any further attempts abroad for euer after. Where first hee obtaines *Saint Valery*, and after *Albemarle* with the whole Country of *Eu*, *Fescampe*, the *Abathie* of mount *Saint Michel*, *Cherburge*, and other places. *Robert* seekes ayde of *Phillip* King of *France*, who comes downe with an army, into *Normandy*, but ouercome with the power of mony wherewith King *William* assayed him, did him little good, and so retired.

1089. *Anno Reg. 3.* Duke *Robert* driuen to peace.—Whereupon Duke *Robert*, in the end, was driuen to a dishonorable peace, concluded at *Caen*, with these Articles. *First*, that King *William* should hold the country of *Eu*, *Fescampe*, and all other places which hee had bought; and were deliuered vnto him, by *William Earle of Eu* and *Stephen Earle of Aumal*, sisters son to *William the first*. *Secondly*, he should aide the Duke to recouer al other peeces which belonged to his Father, and were vsurped from the Dutchy. *Thirdly*, that such Normans, as had lost their estates in *England*, by taking part with the Duke, should be restored thereunto. *Fourthly*, that the suruiuer of ether of them should succeed in the Dominions both of *England* & *Normandy*.

1091. *Anno Reg. 4.* The Kings vndaunted valor.—After this peace made by the mediation of the King of *France*, whilst *William* had a strong Army in the field, Duke *Robert* requested his ayde against their brother *Henry*; who still kept him in the Fort of mount *Michel*, vpon his guard, holding it best for his safety: For being a Prince that could not subsist of himselfe (as an earthen vessell set amongst iron pots) he was euery way in danger to be crusht; and seeing he had lost both his brothers by doing the one a kindnesse, if he should haue tooke to either (their turne being serued) his owne might bee

in hazard; and so betooke him to this defence. Forty dayes the two Princes layde siede to this Castle; And one day, as the King was alone on the shore, there sallies out of the Fort, a Company of horse; whereof three ran at him so violently, and all strooke his horse together with their Launces; as they brake pectorall, girses, and all, that the horse slips away, and leaues the King, and the saddle on the ground: the King takes vp the saddle with both hands, and therewith defends himselfe till rescue came; and being blamed by some of his people for putting himselfe thus in peril of his life to saue his saddle, answered: *It would haue angered him, the Bretons should haue bragged, they had wonne the saddle from vnder him, and how great an indignity it was, for a King to suffer inferiors to force anything from him.*

1092. Anno Reg. 5. The King and his two bretheren agreed. —In the end *Henry* grew to extreame want of drinke and water; although he had all other prouision sufficient within his Fort, and sends to Duke *Robert* that he might haue his necessity supplied. The Duke sends him a Tun of wine, and grants him truce for a day to furnish him with water. Where-with *William* being displeased, Duke *Robert* told him: *It was hard to deny a brother meate and drinke which craved it, and that if hee perisht, they had not a brother.* Wherewith *William* likewise relenting, they sent for *Henry*, and agreement is made: *That he should hold in morgage the country of Constantine, till the mony was payd, and a day appoynted to receiue it at Rouen.*

Duke *Robert* commits his brother *Henry* to prison.—Which accord King *William* the rather wrought, to draw as much from *Robert* as hee might, whom by this voyage he not onely had wasted, but possest himselfe of a safe and continuall landing place, with a part of his Dutchy: and caused him to put from him, and banish out of *Normandy*; *Edgar Atheling*, whom *Robert* held his Pensioner, and as a stone in his hand, vpon all occasions to threaten *William* with anothers right, if his owne preuailed not: And besides, he wrought so,

as either through promise of mony, or some farther ratification to bee made here, hee brought his brother *Robert* with him ouer into *England*, and tooke him along in an expedition against *Malcolin*, who had incroched vpon his territories, during his absence. Which businesse being determined without battell, *Robert*, soone after returnes much discontented into *Normandy*, and as it seemes, without mony to satisfie his brother *Henry*. Who repairing to *Rouen* at a day appoynted, instead of receiuing it, was committed to prison, and before hee could bee released, forced to renounce the Country of *Constantine*, and sware neuer to claime any thing in *Normandy*.

1093. Anno Reg. 6.—*Henry* complaines of this grosse iniustice, to *Philip* King of *France*, who gaue him a faire entertainment in his Court. Where he remained not long, but that a Knight of *Normandy*, named *Hachard*, vndertaking to put him into a Fort (maugre his brother *Robert*) within the Dutchy; conueyed him disguised out of the Court, and wrought so, as the Castle *Dampffront* was deliuered vnto him: whereby shortly after, he got all the Country of *Passays*, about it, and a good part of *Constantine*, by the secret ayde of King *William*, *Richard de Riuieres*, and *Roger de Manneuile*.

Duke *Robert* leuiues Forces, and eagerly wrought to recouer *Dampffront*, but finding how *Henry* was vnder set, inueighs against the perfidie of his brother of *England*: in so much as the flame of rancor burst out againe more then euer. And ouer passes, King *William* with a great army, but rather to terrifie, then to doe any great matter, as a Prince that did more contend then war: and would be great with the sword, yet seldome desired to vse it; if he could get to his ends by any other meanes, seeking rather to buy his peace then win it.

Many skirmishes interpassed, with surprizements of Castles, but in the end a treaty of peace was propounded: wherein to make his conditions, what he would; King *William* seemes hard to bee wrought, and makes the more shew of Force; sending

ouer into *England* for an Army of thirty thousand men, which being brought to the shoare, ready to bee shipped : an offer was made to bee proclaimed by his Lieuutenant, that giving ten shillings a man, whosoeuer would, might depart home to his dwelling ; whereby was raised so much as discharged his expence, and serued to fee the King of *France*, vnder-hand, for his forbearing ayde to Duke *Robert*, who seeing himselfe left by the *French*, must needes make his peace as the other would haue it.

1094. *Anno Reg. 7.*—The King of *Scots* & his son *Edward* slaine, causes Queene *Margaret* to dy with griefe.—Now for his affaires at home, the vncertaine warres with *Wales* and *Scotland*, gaue him more businesse then honour. Beeing driven in the one to incounter with mountaines in stead of men, to the great losse and disaduantage of his people, and in the other with as many necessities. *Wales* he sought to subdue ; *Scotland* so to restraints, as it might not hurt him. For the last, after much broyle, both Kings, seeming more willing to haue peace then to seeke it, are brought to an interuiew. *Malcolin* vpon publicke faith, and safe conduct, came to *Glocester* ; where, vppon the haughtinesse of King *William*, looking to bee satisfied in all his demands, and the vnyieldingnesse of King *Malcolin*, standing vppon his regality within his owne, though content to bee ordered for the confines, according to the iudgment of the Primate of both Kingdomes ; nothing was effected, but a greater disdain, and rankor in *Malcoline*, seeing himselfe despised, and scarce looked on by the King of *England*. So that vpon his returne armed with rage ; hee raises an Army, enters *Northumberland*, which fouer times before he had depopulated ; and now the fifth, seeking vtterly to destroy it, and to haue gone farther, was with his eldest sonne *Edward* slaine, rather by fraude then power of *Robert Mowbray* Earle of that Country : The griefe of whose deaths, gaue *Margaret*, that blessed Queene hers. (*Roger Houeden.*) After whom, the State elected *Dufnald*,

brother to *Malcolin*, and chased out all the *English*, which attended the Queene, and were harbored, or preferred by *Malcolin*. King *William* to set the line right, and to haue a King there which should bee beholding to his power, aides *Edgar*, the second son to *Malcolin* (who had serued him in his wars) to obtaine the Crowne due vnto him in right of succession: by whose meanes *Dafnald* was expeld, and the State receiued *Edgar*, but killed all the ayde hee brought with him out of *England*, and capitulated that hee should neuer more entertaine *English* or *Norman* in his seruice.

1095. *Anno Reg. 7.*—This businesse settled; *Wales* struggling for liberty, and reuenge, gaue new occasion of worke: whether hee went in person, with purpose to depopulate the Countrey: but they (retiring into the Mountaines and the Isle of *Anglesey*) auoyded the present fury. But afterward, *Hugh Earle* of *Shrewsbury*, and *Hugh Earle* of *Chester*, surprizing the Isle (their chiefest retreat) committing there barbarous examples of cruelty, by exœcations, and miserable dismembring the people; which immanity, was there suddenly auenged on the Earle of *Shrewsbury*, with a double death, first shot into the eye, and then tumbling ouer boord into the sea, to the sport and scorne of his enemy the King of *Norway*, who either by chance, or of purpose, comming vppon that coast from taking in the *Orcades*, encountred with him and that Force he had at sea.

These were the remote businesses, when a conspiracie breake out within the body of the Kingdome, complotted by *Richard Mowbray Earle* of *Northumberland*, *William d'Ou* and many others, which are sayd to haue sought the destruction of the King and the aduancement of *Stephen Earle* of *Albemarle*, his Aunts sonne to the Crowne; which gaue the King more trouble then danger: For by the speedy and maine prosecution of the businesse (wherein he vsed the best strength of *England*) it was soone ended, with the confusion of the vndertakers. But it wrought an ill effect in his Nature, by hardening the same to an extreame rigor: for after the feare was past, his wrath, and

cruelty were not ; but (which is hideous in a Prince) they grew to bee numbred amongst incurable diseases.

The Earle was committed to the Castle of *Windsor*, *William d'Ou*, at a Councell at *Salisbury* being ouercome in Duell (the course of triall) had his eyes put out, and his priuy members cut off. *William de Alueric*, his Sewer, a man of goodly personage, and allyed vnto him, was condemned to be hanged : though *both in his confession to Osmond the Bishop there, and to all the people as he passed to his Execution*, he left a cleare opinion of his innocency, and the wrong he had by the King.

But now ; whilst these fractures heere at home, the unrepayrable breaches abroad (were such) as could giue the King no longer assurednesse of quiet, then the attempters would : and that all the Christian World was out, eyther at discord amongst themselues, or in faction, by the schisme of the Church : Pope *Vrban*, assembling a generall Councell at *Cleirmont* in *Auergne*, to compose the affayres of Christendome, exhorted all the Princes thereof to ioyne themselues in Action, for the recouery of the Holy Land, out of the hands of Infidels. Which motion, by the zealous negotiations of *Peter* the Hermit of *Amiens* ; tooke so generally (meeting with the disposition of an actiue, and religious world) as turned all that flame, which had else consumed each other at home, vpon vnknowne Nations that vndid them abroad.

*Peter* the Hermit gets 300000. men to recouer the Holy Land.—Such, and so great grew the heat of this action, made by the perswasion of the Iustice thereof, with the State and glory it would bring on earth, and the assurednesse of Heauen to all the pious vndertakers, that none were esteemed to containe any thing of worth, which would stay behind. Each giues hand to other to leade them along, and example addes number. The forwardnesse of so many great Princes, passing away their whole estates, and leauing all what the dearenesse of their Countrey containd, drew to this warre 300000. men ; all

which, though in Armes, passed from diuers Countries and Ports, with that quietnesse, as they seemed rather Pilgrimes, than Souldiers.

*Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Nephew and Heire to the Duke of *Lorraine*, a Generous Prince, bred in the Warres of the Emperour *Henry* the Fourth, was the first that offered vp himselfe to this Famous Voyage; and with him his two Brothers, *Eustace* and *Baudouin*, by whose examples were drawne *Hugh le Grand*, Count de *Vermondois*, brother to *Phillip* King of *France*; *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, *Robert le Frison* Earle of *Flanders*; *Stephen* Earle of *Blois* and *Charters*; *Aimar* Bishop of *Puy*; *William* Bishop of *Orange*; *Raimond* Earle of *Tholouse*; *Baudouin* Earle of *Hainaut*: *Baudouin* Earle of *Rethel*; and *Garnier* Earle of *Gretz*; *Harpin* Earle of *Bourges*; *Ysoard* Earle of *Die*; *Rambaud* Earle of *Orange*; *Guillaum* Conte de *Forrests*; *Stephen* Conte d'*Aumaul*; *Hugh* Earle of *S<sup>t</sup>. Pol*; *Rotron* Earle of *Perche*, and others. These were for *France*, *Germany* and the Countries adioyning. *Italy* had *Bohemond* Duke of *Apulia*; and *England*, *Beauchampe* with others, whose names are lost; *Spaine* onely had none; beeing afflicted at that time with the *Sarazins*.

1097. *Anno Reg.* 10.—Most of all these Princes and great Personages to furnish themselues for this expedition, sold, or ingaged their possessions. *Godfrey* sold the Dutchy of *Bologne* to *Hubert* Bishop of *Liege*; and *Metz* to the Citizens: Besides, he sold the Castle of *Sarteny*, and *Monsa*, to *Richard* Bishop of *Verdun*; and to the same Bishop, *Baudouin* his brother sold the Earledome of *Verdun*. *Eustace* likewise sold all his liuely-hood to the Church: *Harpin* Earle of *Bourges*, his Earledome to *Phillip* King of *France*; and *Robert* morgaged his Dutchy of *Normandy*, the Earledome of *Maine*, and all hee had, to his brother King *William* of *England*. Whereby the Pope not onely weakned the Empire, with whom the Church had (to the great affliction of Christendome) held a long and bloody businesse, about the inuestitures of Bishops; tooke away and

infeebled his partisans, abated, as if by *Ostracisme*, the power of any Prince that might oppose him, but also aduanced the State Ecclesiasticall, by purchasing these great Temporalities (more honorable for the sellers then the buyers) vnto a greater meanes then euer. For by aduising the vndertakers, seeing their action was for CHRIST and his Church, rather to make ouer their estates to the Clergy, of whom they might againe redeeme the same, and be sure to haue the fairest dealing, then vnto Lay-men ; hee effected this worke. VVhereby the third part of the best Fiefs in *France* came to be possest by the Clergy ; and afterwards vpon the same occasion, many things more vnto them in *England*, especially when *Richard* the first vndertooke the voyage, who passed ouer diuers Mannors to *Hugh* Bishop of *Durham* (and also, for his money) created him Earle of *Durham*, as appeares in his life.

An Emperour of *Germany*, two Kings of *France* with their wiues, two Kings of *England*, and a King of *Norway* went all thither in person.—This humour was kept vp, and in motion almost 300. yeares, notwithstanding all the discouragements, by the difficulties in passing, the disasters there through contagion arising from a disagreeing clime ; and the multitudes of indigent people, cast oftentimes into miserable wants. It consumed infinite Treasure, and most of the brauest men of all our VVest world, and especially *France*. For *Germany* and *Italy*, those who were the Popes friends, and would haue gone, were stayed at home by dispensation to make good his partie against the Emperour, who notwithstanding still struggled with him ; but in the end, by this meanes the Pope preuailed. Yet these were not all the effects this voyage wrought : The Christians who went out to seeke an enemy in *Asia*, brought one thence : to the daunger of all Christendome, and the losse of the fairest part thereof. For this long keeping it in a Warre, that had many intermissions with fits of heates and coldnesses (as made by a league, consisting of seuerall Nations, emulous and vnconcurrent in their courses) taught such as were of an entire

body, their weaknesses, and the way to Conquer them. This was the great effect, this voyage wrought.

1099. *Anno Reg. 12.*—And by this meanes King *William* here was now ridde of an elder brother, and a Competitor; had the possession of *Normandy* during his reigne, and more absolutenesse, and irregularity in *England*. Where now, in making vp this great summe to pay *Robert*, he vsed all the extreame meanes could be deuised: as hee had done in all like businesses before. Whereby he incurred the hatred of his people in generall, and especially of the Clergy, being the first King which shewed his successors an euill precedent of keeping their Liuiings vacant, and receiuing the profits of them himselfe, as he did that of *Canterbury*, foure yeares after the death of *Lanfranc*; and had holden it longer, but that being dangerously sicke at *Glocester*, the sixt yeare of his Reigne, his Clergie, in the weaknesse of his body, tooke to worke vpon his minde, so as he vowed, vpon his recouery to see all vacancies furnished; which he did, but with so great adoe, as shewed that hauing escaped the daunger hee would willingly haue deceiued the Saint: An *Anselme*, an *Italian* borne, though bred in *Normandy*, is in the end preferred to that Sea. But, what with his owne stiffenesse, and the Kings standing on his regalitie, he neuer enioyed it quietly vnder him. For betweene them two, began the first contestation about the inuestitures of Bishops, and other priuiledges of the Church, which gaue much to doe, to many of his successors. *Anselme* not yeelding to the Kings will, forsooke the Land; whereuppon his Bishopricke was reassumed; and the King helde in his hands at one time, besides that of *Canterbury*, the Bishoprickes of *Winchester*, *Sarum*, and eleuen Abbeyes, whereof he tooke all the profits.

The Kings shew of religion.—Hee vsually sold all spirituall preferments to those would giue most, and tooke fines of Priests for Fornication: he vexed *Robert Bluet* Bishop of *Lincolne* in suite, till he paid him 5000. pounds. And now the

Clergy, vpon this taxe, complayning their wants, were answered, *That they had Shrines of gold in their Churches, and for so holy a worke as this warre against infidels, they should not spare them.* Hee also tooke money of Iewes, to cause such of them as were conuerted, to renounce Christianity, as making more benefit by their vnbeleefe, then their conuersion. Wherein hee discouered the worst peece of his nature, *Irreligion.*

The antiquity of Informers.—This *Ranulph* gaue a thousand pounds for his Bishopricke, and was the Kings Chancellor.—Profusion euer in want.—Besides his great taxations layd on the Layetie, he sets informers vpon them, and for small transgressions made great penalties. These were his courses for raying moneys, wherein he fayled not of fit ministers to execute his Will, among whom was chiefe, *Ranulph* Bishop of *Durham*, whom he had corrupted with other bishops, to counterpoysse the Clergy, awe the Layety, and countenance his proceedings. All which meanes, he exhausted, eyther in his buildings (which were the new Castle vppon *Tine*, the City of *Carleil*, *Westminster-Hall*, and the walles of the Tower of *London*) or else in his prodigall gifts to strangers. Twice he appeased the King of *France* with money, and his Profusion was such, as put him euermore into extreame wants.

This one Act, shewes both his violence and magnanimity: As he was one day hunting, a Messenger comes in all haste out of *Normandy*, and tells him how the City of *Mans* was surprised by *Hely Conte de la Flesche* (who by his wife pretended right there vnto, and was ayded by *Fouques d'Angiers*, the ancient enemy to the Dukes of *Normandy*) and that the Castle which held out valiantly for him, was, without present succour, to be rendered. He sends backe the Messenger instantly, wills him to make all the speed he could, to signifie to his people in the Castle, that hee would be there within eight dayes, if Fortune hindred him not. And sudainely he askes of his people about him, which way *Mans* lay, and a *Norman* being by shewed him: Presently he turnes his

Horse towards that Coast, and in great haste rides on : when some aduised him to stay for fit prouisions, and people for his iourney, hee sayd ; *They who loue me, will follow me.* And comming to imbarke at *Dartmouth*, the Maister told him the weather was rough, and there was no passing without eminent danger ; *Tush*, sayd he, *set forward, I neuer yet heard of King that was drowned.*

By breake of day he arriued at *Harfieu*, sends for his Capitaines and men of Warre to attend him all at *Mans*, whither hee came at the day appointed. Conte *de la Flesche*, hauing more right then power, after many skirmishes, was taken by a stratagem, and brought prisoner to *Rouen* ; where, more inraged then dismayde with his fortune, he let fall these words ; That had hee not beene taken with a wile, hee would haue left the King but little Land on that side the sea ; and were hee againe at liberty, they should not so easily take him. Which being reported ; the King sent for him, *Set him at libertie, gaue him a faire Horse, bad him goe his way, and doe his worst.* Which act ouercame the Conte more then his taking, and a quiet end was made betweene them. That he affected things of cost, euen in the smallest matters (is shewed) in the report of his finding fault with his seruants, which brought him a new payre of hose, whereof he demanding the price, was told how they cost three shillings : wherewith being angry, hee asked his seruant if that were a fit price of a payre of hose for a King, and willed him to goe presently and to buy those of a marke ; which being brought him, though they were farre worse, yet he liked them much better in regard they were sayd to haue cost more. An example of the Weare of time, the humour of the Prince, and the deceit of the seruant.

The King returnes into *England* with great iollity, as euer bringing home better fortune out of *Normandy*, then from any his Northerne expeditions : Feasts his Nobility with all Magnificence, in his new Hall, lately finished at Westminster, wherewith he found much fault for being built too little ;

saying, *It was fitter for a Chamber, then a Hall for a King of England*, and takes a plot for one farre more spacious to be added vnto it. And in this gayetie of State, when hee had got about all his businesse, betakes him wholly to the pleasure of peace, and being hunting with his brother *Henry* in the New Forrest, *Walter Terell*, a Norman, and his kinsman, shooting at a Deere (whether mistaking his marke, or not, is vncertaine) strake him to the heart. And so fell this fierce King, in the 43. yeare of his age, when he had reigned nigh 12. yeares. A Prince, who for the first two yeares of his reigne (whilst held in, by the graue Councell of *Lanfranc*, and his owne feares) bare himselfe most worthily, and had beene absolute for State; had he not after sought to bee absolute in power, which (meeting with an exorbitant will) makes both Prince and People miserable.

*The end of the Life and Reigne of William the second.*

## *The Life, and Reigne, of Henry the first.*

1100. Anno Reg. 1.



**H**ENRY the youngest sonne of *William* the first, beeing at hand, and borne in *England* (which made much for him) was elected and crowned within foure dayes after his Brothers death; it being giuen out, that *Robert*, who should haue succeeded *William*, was chosen King of *Ierusalem*, and not like to giue ouer that Kingdome for this. Wherefore to settle *Henry* in the possession of the Crowne, all expedition possible was vsed, lest the report of *Roberts* returning from the Holy warres (beeing now in *Apulia*, comming home) might be noysed abroad to stagger the State; which seemed generally willing to accept of *Henry*. The first actions of his gouernement

tended all, to baite the people, and sugar their subiection (as his predecessor) vpon the like interposition had done, but with more moderation and aduisednesse: This beeing a Prince better rectified in judgement, and of a Nature more alayed, both by his sufferings, hauing sighed with other men vnder the hand of oppression, that taught him patience; and also, by hauing somewhat of the Booke, which got him opinion, and the Title of *Beauclarke*.

The ministers of exactions punished.—First, to fasten the Clergy, *Hee furnishes with fit men, all those Vacancies which his Brother had kept empty, recalls Anselme home to his Bishopricke of Canterbury, and restores them to all whatsoever Priuiledges had beene infringed by his Predecessour.* And for the Layety, *Hee not onely pleased them in their releiuements, but in their passion, by punishing the chiefe Ministers of their exactions,* which euermore eases the spleene of the people, glad to discharge their Princes of the euills done them (knowing how they cannot worke without hands) and lay them on their Officers, who haue the actiue power, where themselues haue but the passiue, and commonly turne as they are moued.

*Ralph* Bishop of Durham committed to prison.—Dissolute persons expelled the Court.—*Ralph* Bishop of *Durham*, chiefe Counsellor to the late King, a man risen by subtlety of his tongue (from infamous condition, to the highest employments) was committed to a streight and loathsome prison, beeing famed to haue put his Maister into all these courses of exaction and irregularities, and remaines amongst the examples of perpetuall ignominy. All dissolute persons are expelled the Court: the people eased of their impositions, and restored to their lights in the night, which after the *Couerfeu* Bell were forbidden them vppon great penalty, since the beginning of *William* the first. Many other good orders for the gouernment of the Kingdome are ordayned, and besides to make him the more popular and beloued, he matches in the Royall blood of *England*, taking to wife *Maude*, daughter of *Margueret*, late

Queene of Scots, and Neece to *Edward Atheling*, descended from *Edmond Ironside*. A Lady that brought with her the inheritance of goodnesse she had from a blessed mother, and with much adoe was won from her Cloyster, and her vow to God, to descend to the world, and be a wife to a King.

1101. *Anno Reg. 2.* *Robert* Duke of Normandy returnes from the Holy warre.—The agreement between *Henry* and his brother.—Thus stood he entrenched in the State of *England*, when his brother *Robert* returning from the Holy warres, and receiued with great applause into his Dutchy of *Normandie*, shakes the ground of all this businesse; the first yeare threatning, the second, arriuing with a strong Army at *Portsmouth*, to recouer the Crowne, appertayning vnto him by the course of succession, hauing a mighty party in *England* of the *Norman* Nobility; who eyther mooued with Conscience of their discontent (a sicknesse rising of selfe opinion, and ouer expectation) made any light occasion the motiue of reuolt. The Armies on both sides meete, and are ready to encounter, when, for auoyding Christian blood, a treaty of peace was mooued, and in the end concluded with these Articles: 1. *That seeing Henry was borne since his father was King of England, which made him the eldest son of a King, though the last of a Duke and now inuested in the Crowne by the act of the Kingdome, he should enioy the same during his life, paying to Robert 3000. markes per annum.* 2. *And Robert suruiuing, to succeed him.* 3. *That all, who had taken part with Robert should haue their pardon, and receiue no detriment.*

1102. *Anno Reg. 3.* *Henry* claymes the inuestitures of Bishops.—*Anselme* oppugnes the Kings prerogatiue.—The King sends to the Pope.—This businesse thus fairely passed ouer, *Robert* of a Generous and Free Nature, staves and Feasts, with his brother here in *England*, from the beginning of August till Michaelmas, and then returnes into *Normandie*. When *Henry*, ridde of this feare, takes to a higher straine of Regality, and now stands vpon his Prerogatiue, for the inuestitures of

Bishops, and collation of other Ecclesiasticall estates, within his Kingdome, oppugned by *Anselme*, who refused to consecrate such as he preferred, alledging it to be a violation of the sacred Rites and Ceremonies of the Church, lately decreed concerning this businesse : in so much as the King dispatches an Ambassage to Pope *Paschal*, with declaration of the right hee had to such inuestitures, from his Predecessours the Kings of *England*, who euermore conferred the same without interruption, till now of late.

1103. *Anno Reg 4.* *Anselme* followes.—*Anselme* followes after these Ambassadors, goes likewise to *Rome*, to make good the opposition. The King banishes him the Kingdome, and takes into his hands his Bishopricke. The Pope stands stifly to the power assumed by the Church, but in the end, seeing the King fast, strong, and lay too farre off out of his way to bee constrained (and hauing much to doe at that time with the Emperour and other Princes, about the same businesse) takes the way of perswasion to draw him to his will, soliciting him with kind Letters, full of protestations, to further any designes of his that might concerne his State, if he would desist from this proceeding.

The King and *Anselme* accorded.—The King prest with some other occasions, that held him in, and hauing purposes of that Nature, as by forbearance of the Church, might be the better effected, consents to satisfie the Popes will ; and becomes an example to other Princes, of yeelding in this case. *Anselme* is re-called, after a yeares banishment, and the Ambassadors returne with large remunerations.

1104. *Anno Reg. 5.* The Earle of Shewsburies combination.—Whilest these things were managing at *Rome*, there burst out heere a flame, which consumed the parties that rayseed it, and brought the King more easily to his ends, then otherwise he could euer haue expected. *Robert de Belesme*, Earle of *Shrewsbury*, sonne to *Roger de Montgomery* (a very fierce youth) presuming of his great estate, and his Friends, fortifies his

Castles of *Shrewsbury*, *Bridgenorth*, *Tickhill* and *Arundell*; with some other peeces in *Wales* belonging to him; and combines with the Welch, to oppose against the present State (out of a desire to set all in combustion, for his owne ends, that were altogether vncertayne) which put the King to much trauell and charge; but within thirty dayes, by employing great forces, and terrors mixt with promises, hee scattered his complices, and tooke all his Castles; except that of *Arundell*, which rendred vppon condition, that the Maister might bee permitted to retire safe into *Normandie*; which the King easily granted, seeing now hee was but the body of a silly naked Creature, that had lost both Feathers and Wings. And it made well for the King, his going thither. For, from the losing of his owne estate in *England*, and thereby aduancing the Kings reuenues, hee goes to lose *Normandy* also, and brings it to this Crowne. For, as soone as he came thither, hee fastens amity with one of like condition and Fortunes as himselfe (an exiled man), whose insolency had likewise stript him out of all his estate in *England*, and much wasted that in *Normandy*, which was *William Earle of Mortaigne*, sonne to *Robert*, halfe brother to King *William* the first. Who being also Earle of *Cornewall*, made sure likewise, to haue that of *Kent*: which his Vncle *Odon* lately held; but being denied it, and also euicted by Law, of certayne other parcels of Land, which hee claymed, retires with great indignation into *Normandy*, where not only he assaults the Kings Castles, but also vsurpes vpon the State of *Richard*, the young Earle of *Chester*, then the Kings Ward. These two Earles combine themselues, and with their Adherents committed many out-ragious actions, to the great spoyle and displeasure of the Countrey, whereof, though they complayned to Duke *Robert*, they found little remedy. For, he being now growne poore by his out-lauishing humour, began it seemes, to be little respected: or else false from action, and those greatneses his expectation had shewed him, was (as commonly great mindes dasht with ill Fortunes

are) false likewise in spirit, and given over to his ease. Whereupon the people of *Normandy* make their exclamations to the King of *England*, who sends for his brother *Robert*, *Reprehends him for the sufferance of these disorders ; advises him to act the Part of a Prince, and not a Monke :* and in conclusion, whether by detention of his Pension, or drawing him, being of a facile Nature, to some act of releasing it : sends him home so much discontented, as he joins with these mutinous Earles, and by their instigation, was set into that flame, as he raised all his utmost forces to be revenged on his brother.

1105. *Anno Reg. 6.* England wins Normandy.—The King, touched in Conscience with the foulness of a fraternal warre (which the world would take, he being the mightier, to proceed out of his designs) stood doubtful what to do, when Pope *Paschall*, by his Letters written with that eloquence (sayeth *Malmesbury*) wherein hee was quicke, perswaded him, *That heerein hee should not make a civil Warre, but doe a Noble and memorable benefite unto his Countrey :* Whereby (paid for remitting the Inestitures) he held himselfe countenanced in this businesse ; whereon, now he sets with more alacrity and resolution. And after many difficulties, and losse of diuers worthy men, in a mighty battaile, neere the Castle of *Tenechbray*, his enemies with much ado were all defeated. Whereby *England* won *Normandy*, and on the same day, by Computation (wherein fortie yeares before) *Normandy* over-came *England ;* such are the turnings in the affaires of men.

*Robert* Duke of Normandy is imprisoned by King *Henry*.

1106. *Anno Reg. 7.*—And here *Robert*, who stood in a faire possibility of two Crownes, came to be deprived of his Duchy and all hee had, brought prisoner into *England*, and committed to the Castle of *Cardiffe*. Where, to adde to his misery, he had the misfortune of a long life (surviving after he lost himselfe 26. yeares) whereof the most part he saw not, having his eyes put out, whereby he was onely left to his thoughts, a punishment barbarously inflicted on him, for attempting an escape.

Hee was a Prince that gaue out to the world, very few notes of his ill, but many of his Noblenesse and valour, especially in his great voyage, wherein hee had the second command, and was in election to haue beene the first preferred to the Crowne of *Ierusalem*, and missed it hardly. Onely the disobedience in his youth shewed to his Father (which yet might proceede from a rough hand borne ouer him and the animation of others, rather then his owne Nature) sets a staine vppon him: and then, his profusion (which some would haue liberality) shewed his impotency, and put him into those courses that ouerthrew him. All the Reuenues of his Dutchy, which should serue for his maintenance, hee sold or engaged, and was vppon passing the Cittie of *Roan* vnto the Cittizens, which made him held vnfit for the gouernment, and gaue occasion to his Brother to quarrell with him.

King *Henry* Duke of Normandy.—And thus came *Henry* freed from this feare, an absolute Duke of *Normandy*: had many yeares of quiet, gathered great Treasure, and entertained good intelligence with the Neighbour Princes. *Scotland*, by his Match, and doing their Princes good, hee held from doing him hurt; clearing them from vsurpations. *Wales*, though vnder his Title, yet not subiection, gaue him some exercise of action; which hee ordered with great wisdom. First hee planted within the bodie of that Countrey, a Colony of Flemings, who at that time much pestred this Kingdome: being admitted here in the reigne of King *William* the first, marrying their Countrie-women, and vsing their helpe in the action of *England*; where they dayly encreased, in such sort, as gaue great displeasure to the people. By this meanes, both that griuance was eased, and the vse of them made profitable to the State: for being so great a number, and a strong people, they made roome for themselues, and held it in that sort, as they kept the *Welch*, all about them, in very good awe. Besides, the King tooke for hostages the chiefe mens sonnes of the Countrey, and hereby

quieted it. For *France* he stood secure, so long as *Philip* the first liued: who, wholly giuen ouer to his ease and luxury, was not for other attempts, out of that course: but his sonne hee was to looke vnto, whensoever he came to that Crowne.

1107. *Anno Reg. 8.*—With the Earle of *Flanders* hee had some debate, but it was onely in words, and vpon this occasion. King *William* the first, in retribution of the good his father in law, *Baldouin* the first had done, by ayding him in the action of *England*, gaue him yearely three hundred markes, and likewise continued it to his sonne after him. Now, *Robert* Earle of *Flanders*, of a collaterall line, returning emptie from the Holie warres, and finding this summe paide out of *England* to his Predecessors, demaunds the same of King *Henrie*, as his due; who not easie to part with money, sends him word; That it was not the custome of the Kings of *England* to pay tribute: If they gaue pensions, they were temporary, and according to desert. Which answer so much displeased the Earle, that though himselfe liued not to shew his hatred, yet his Sonne did, and ayded afterward *William*, the sonne of *Robert Curtoys*, in his attempts, for recouery of the Dutchy of *Normandy*, against King *Henry*.

King *Henry* quarrells with the king of *France*.—Thus stood this King in the first part of his reigne: in the other, hee had more to doe abroad then at home, where hee had by his excellent wisdom so settled the gouernment, as it held a steady course without interruption, all his time. But now *Lewis le Grosse*, succeeding his father *Phillip* the first, gaue him warning to looke to his State of *Normandy*: and for that hee would not attend a quarrell, hee makes; taking occasion about the City of *Gisors*, scituate on the Riuer *Epre*, in the confines of *Normandy*, whilst *Louys* was troubled with a stubborne Nobility, presuming vpon their Franchises, within their owne Signiories; whereof there were many, at that time about *Paris*, as the Contes of *Crecy*, *Pissaux*, *Dammartini*,

*Champaigne* and others, who by example, and emulation, would bee absolute Lords, without awe of a Maister, putting themselves vnder the protection of *Henry*; who beeing neere to assist them, fostred those humors, which in sicke bodies most shew themselves. But after *Louys*, by yeares gathering strength, dissolued that compact, and made his meanes the more, by their confiscations.

1108. *Anno Reg.* 9.—The Popes Oath to the Emperour.—The Emperour *Hen.* 5 marries *Maude*.—History of *France*.—The king of *France* accords the Pope and Emperour.—Now to entertaine these two great Princes in worke, the quarrel betweene the Pope and the Emperour, ministred fresh occasion. The Emperour *Henry* the fift, hauing (by the Popes instigation) banded against his Father, *Henry* the fourth, who associated him in the Empire, and held him prisoner in that distresse, as hee dyed; toucht afterwards with remorse of this act, and reproach of the State, for abandoning the rights of the Empire, leauies sixty thousand foote, and thirty thousand horse, for *Italy*; constraines the Pope and his Colledge to acknowledge the right of the Empire in that forme as *Leo* the fourth had done to *Otho* the second, and before that, *Adrian* to *Charlemaigne*, according to the Decree of the Councell of *Rome*, and made him take his Oathe of fidelity betweene his hands, as to the true and lawfull Emperour. The Pope, so soone as *Henry* was departed home, assembles a Councell, nullifies this acknowledgement, as done by force, and shortly after deceased. The Emperour, to make himselfe the stronger against his successours, enters into alliance with the King of *England*, takes to wife his daughter *Maude*, beeing but fve yeares of age. After this, *Calixte* son of the Conte de *Burgogne*, comming to be Pope, and being French (vnto their great applause) assembles a Councell at *Reimes*; where, by Ecclesiasticall sentence, *Henry* the fift is declared enemy of the Church and degraded of his Emperiall Dignity. The King of *England*, seeing this Councell was held in *France*,

and composed chiefly of the *Gallicane* Church, desirous to ouer-maister *Louys*, incenses his sonne in law the Emperour (stung with this disgrace) to set vppon him (as the Popes chiefe pillar) on one side, and he would assaile him on the other. The Emperour easily wrought to such a businesse, prepares all his best forces : the King of *England* doth the like. The King of *France* seeing this storme comming so impetuously vppon him, wrought so with the Princes of *Germany*, as they, weighing the future mischiefe of a warre vndertaken in a heate with the importance of a kinde Neighbour-hood, aduise the Emperour not to enter there-into, till hee had signified to the King of *France*, the causes of his discontent. Whereupon an Embassage is dispatched : The King of *France* answeres, *That hee griued much to see the two greatest Pillars of the Church, thus shaken with these dissensions, whereby might be feared, the whole frame would be ruined : that he was a friend to them both, and would gladly bee an inter-dealer for concord, rather then to carry wood to a fire too fierce already, which he desired to extinguish for the good and quiet of Christendome.* This Embassage wrought so, as it dis-armed the Emperour, glad to haue *Louys* a mediator of the accord betweene the Pope and him : to the great displeasure of the King of *England*, who expected greater matters to haue risen by this businesse. The accord is concluded at *Wormes*, to the Popes aduantage, to whom the Emperour yeelds vp the right of inuestitures of Bishops and other Benefices. But this was onely to appease, not cure the malady.

King *Henry* aydes Conte *Theobald* against the king of *France*.—The King of *England* disappoynted thus of the Emperours assistance proceedes notwithstanding in his intentions against *Louys*. And seeing he fayled of outward Forces, he sets vp a party in his Kingdome, to confront him : ayding *Theobald Conte de Champagne*, with so great power, as he stood to doe him much displeasure : besides, hee obtayned a strong side in that kingdome, by his alliances : for *Stephen*

Earle of *Blois*, had married his sister *Adela*, to whom this *Theobald* was brother, and had won *Foulke*, Earle of *Aniou* (an important neighbour, and euer an enemy to *Normandie*) to bee his, by matching his sonne *William* to his daughter.

The King of *France* combines with the Earle of *Flanders*, against King *Henry*.—*Louys* on the other side, fayles not to practise all meanes to vnder-worke *Henries* estate in *Normandie*, and combines with *William* Earle of *Flanders*, for the restoring of *William*, the sonne of *Robert Curtoys*, to whom the same appertayned by right of inheritance; and had the fayrer shewe of his actions, by taking hold on the side of Iustice.

Great and many were the conflicts betweene these two Princes, with the expence of much blood and charge. But in the end, beeing both tyred, a peace was concluded, by the mediation of the Earle of *Aniou*. And *William* son to King *Henry*, did homage to *Louys* for the Dutchy of *Normandy*; And *William* the sonne of *Robert Curtoys*, is left to himselfe, and desists from his clayme.

1116. *Anno Reg. 17*.—Queene *Maud* liued not to see this disaster.—Vpon the faire cloze of all these troubles, there followed presently an accident, which seasoned it with that sowernesse of grieve, as ouer-came all the ioy of the successe. *William* the young Prince, the onely hope of all the *Norman* race, at seuentene yeares of age, returning into *England*, in a ship by himselfe, accompanied with *Richard* his base brother, *Mary* Countesse of *Perch*, their sister; *Richard* Earle of *Chester*, with his wife, the Kings Neece, and many other personages of honour, and their attendants, to the number of 140. besides 50. Marriners, setting out from *Barbsfleet*, were all cast away at sea: onely a Butcher escaped. The Prince had recouered a Cock-boat, and in possibility to haue beene saued, had not the compassion of his sisters cryes, drawne him backe to the sinking ship to take her in, and perish with his Company.

Which sudden clap of Gods iudgement, comming in a calme of glory, when all these bustlings seemed past ouer, might make

a conscience shrink with terror, to see oppression and supplantation repaid with the extinction of that, for which so much had been wrought, and the line Masculine of *Normandy* expired in the third inheritor (as if to begin the fate, layd on all the future succession hitherunto; wherein the third Heire in a right descent, seldome or neuer enjoyed the Crowne of *England*, but that eyther by vsurpation or extinction of the male blood, it receiued an alteration;) which may teach Princes to obserue the wayes of Righteousnesse, and let men alone with their rights, and God with his prouidence.

*Robert de Mellents* conspiracie.—After this heauy disaster, this King is sayd neuer to haue beene seene to laugh, though within fīue moneths after, in hope to restore his issue, he married *Adalicia*, a beautifull young Lady, daughter to the Duke of *Lovaine*, and of the house of *Lorraine*, but neuer had child by her, nor long rest from his troubles abroad. For this rent at home, crackt all the chayne of his courses in *France*. *Normandy* it selfe became wauering, and many adhered to *William* the Nephew: his great confederates are most regayned to the King of *France*: *Foulke* Earle of *Aniou* quarrels for his daughters Dower: *Robert de Mellent* his chiefe Friend and Counsellor, a man of great imployment, fell from him, conspired with *Hugh* Earle of *Monfort* and wrought him great trouble.

1123. *Anno Reg. 25*.—*Maud* the Emperesse married to *Geffery Plantagenet*.—But such was his diligence and working spirit, that hee soone made whole all those ruptures againe. The two Earles himselfe surprizes; and *Aniou*, death: which beeing so important a neighbour, as we may see, by matching a Prince of *England* there, the King fastens vpon it with another alliance, and descends to marry his daughter (and now onely child, which had beene wife to an Emperour, and desired by the Princes of *Lombardy* and *Lorraine*) to the now Earle *Geffery Plantagenet*, the sonne of *Foulke*.

1126. *Anno Reg. 28*.—The King of *France* to Fortifie his opposition, entertaynes *William* the Nephew, where now all

the danger lay ; and aydes him in person, with great power, to obtayne the Earledome of *Flanders*, whereunto he had a fayre Title, by the defaillance of issue in the late Earle *Baldouin*, slayne in a battell in *France* against King *Henry*. But *William* / as if heire also of his fathers fortunes, admitted to the Earldome, miscarried in the rule, was depriued, and slaine in battaile ; and in him all of *Robert Curtoys* perished.

1133. *Anno Reg.* 34.—And now the whole care of King *Henrie*, was the settling of the succession vppon *Maude* (of whome hee liued to see two sonnes borne) for which he conuokes a Parliament in *England*, wherein an Oath is ministred to the Lords of this Land, to bee true to her and her heires, and acknowledge them as the right inheritor of the Crowne. This Oath was first taken by *David*, King of *Scots*, vncle to *Maude*, and by *Stephen*, Earle of *Bollogne* and *Mortaine*, Nephew to the King, on whom hee had bestowed great possessions in *England*, and aduanced his brother to the Bishoprick of *Winchester*. And to make all more fast, this Oath was afterward ministred againe at *Northampton* in another Parliament.

So that now all seemes safe and quiet, but his owne sleepes, which are saide to haue beene very tumultuous, and full of affrightments, wherein hee would often rise, take his sword, and be in act, as if he defended himselfe against assaults of his person, which shewed, all was not well within.

His gouernment in peace.—The first vse of Progresses.—His gouernment in peace, was such as rankes him in the list amongst our Kings of the fairest marke : holding the Kingdome so well ordered, as during all his reigne, which was long, he had euer the least to doe at home. At the first, the competition with his brother, after, the care to establish his succession, held him in, to obserue all the best courses, that might make for the good and quiet of the State ; hauing an especiall regarde to the due administration of Iustice, that no corruption or oppression might disease his people, whereby

things were carried with an euennesse, betweene the Great men and the Commons, as gaue all, satisfaction. Hee made diuers Progresses, into remote parts of the Land, to see how the State was ordered. And for that purpose, whensoever he was in *England*, hee kept no certaine residence, but solemnized the great Festiualls in seuerall, and farre distant places of the Kingdome, that all might partake of him.

The beginning of Parliaments.—He assembles the first Parliament after the Conquest.—His reformation.—And for that hee would not wrest any thing by an Imperiall power from the Kingdome (which might breed vlcers of dangerous nature) he tooke a course to obtaine their free consents to serue his occasions, in their generall assemblies of the three Estates of the Land, which hee first conuoked at *Salisburie*, *Anno Reg.* 15. and which had from his time the name of Parliament, according to the manner of *Normandie*, and other States, where Princes keepe within their circles to the good of their people, their owne glorie, and security of their posterity.

His meanes to raise monies.—Hee was a Prince that liued formally himselfe, and repressed those excesses in his subiects which those times entertained, as the wearing of long haire, which though it were a gayetie of no charge (like those sumptuous braueries, that waste Kingdomes in peace) yet for the vndecencie thereof, hee reformed it, and all other dissolutenesse. His great businesses, and his wants taught him frugality, and wearinesse of expence; and his warres beeing seldome inuasiue, and so not getting, put him often to vse hard courses for his suppliments of treasure. Towards the marriage of his daughter with the Emperour, and the charge of his warre, hee obtained (as it might seeme at his first Parliament at *Salisbury*) *Anno Reg.* 15. three shillings vpon euerie hide-land, but hee had no more in all his reigne, except one supply for his warres afterward in *France*. Hee kept Bishoprickes and Abbeyes voyde in his hands; as that of *Canterbury*, fīue yeares together. By an Act of Parliament

at *London*, Anno Reg. 30. hee had permission to punish Marriage, and incontineney of Priestes, whome (for fines notwithstanding) he suffered to enioy their wiues : but heereby he displeased the Clergie, and disappointed that reformation.

Punishments which were Mutilation of members, hee made pecuniary. And by reason of his often and long beeing in *Normandie*, those prouisions for his house, which were vsed to bee paide in kinde, were rated at certaine prizes and receiued in money, by the consent of the State, and to the great content of the Subiect; who by reason that many dwelling farre off throughout all Shiures of *England*, were much molested with satisfying the same otherwyse. He resumed the liberties of hunting in his Forrests which / tooke vp much fayre ground of the Kingdome; and besides renewing for penalties, made an Edict, *That if any man in his owne priuate woods, killed the Kings Deere, hee should forfeit his woods to the King.* But he permitted them inclosures for Parkes, which vnder him seemes to haue had their Originall, by the example of that of his at *Wood-stocke*, the multitude whereof grew to be afterwards a disease in the Kingdome. (*Tilburiensis de Scaccario.*)

His expences.—His expences were chiefly in his Warres, and his many and great Fortifications in *Normandy*. His buildings were the Abbey of *Reading*, the Mannor of *Wood-stocke*, and the great inclosure of that Parke, with a stone wall seauen miles about.

His Counsellors.—The magnificent buildings of *Roger* Bishop of *Sarum*.—The most eminent men of his Councell were *Roger* Bishop of *Sarum*, and the Earle of *Mellent*, both men of great experience in the affayres of the World. *Roger* was euen as Vice-Roy, had the whole management of the Kingdome in his absence, which was sometimes three and foure yeares together. Hee had managed the Kings money and other affayres of his house, when hee was a poore Prince, and a priuate man; whereby hee gayned an especiall trust with him

euver after, and discharged his part with great policy and vnderstanding; had the title of *Iusticiarius totius Angliæ*. Of whose magnificence and spacious minde, wee haue more memorialls left in notes of stone, then of any one Man, Prince, or other of this Kingdome. The ruines yet remayning of his stately structures, especially that of the *Deuises* in *Wiltshire*, shewes vs the carkasse of a most *Roman-like* Fabricke. Besides, hee built the Castles of *Mamsbury* and *Shirburne*, two strong and sumptuous peeces: new walled and repayred the Castle of *Salisbury*, and all these hee liued to see rent from him, and seased into the next Kings hands, as beeing things done out of his part, and lye now deformed heapes of rubble. Besides, hee walled old *Salisbury* and repayred the Church there.

*Robert Mellent* an especiall Counsellor to *Hen. 1.*—The example of frugality in great men doth much good in a Kingdome.—*Robert Earle of Mellent*, was son of *Roger Beaumont*; who of all the great men which followed *William* the first in his ciuill Warres of *Normandy*, refused to attend him in his expedition for *England*, though with large promises inuited thereunto, saying, *The inheritance left him by his predecessors, was sufficient to maintaine his estate at home; and he desired not to thrust himselfe into other mens possessions abroad.* But his Son *Robert* was of another minde, and had a mighty estate both in *England* and *Normandy*. Was a man of great direction in Counsell, and euver vsed in all the weighty affayres of the State. His frugality both in apparell and dyet, was of such example, beeing a man of eminent note, as did much good to the Kingdome in those dayes. But in the end hee fell into disgrace, (the fate of Court, and eminency) opposed against the King, and dyed bereft of his estate.

King *Henries* death.—Besides these, the King was serued with a potent and martiall Nobility, whom his spirit led to affect those great designes of his in *France*, for the preseruatiō of his State in *Normandy*. Whither in the 32. yeare of his reigne, hee makes his last voyage to dye there, and in his

passage thither, happened an exceeding great Eclipse of the Sun, which was taken to fore-signifie his death; for that it followed shortly after, in the thirty five yeare of his reigne.

His personage.—He was of a gracefull personage, quick-eyed, browne hayre (a different complexion from his brothers) and of a close compacted temperament, wherein dwelt a minde of a more solide constitution, with better ordered affections. Hee had, in his youth, some taste of learning; but onely, as if to set his stomacke, not to ouer-charge it therewith. But this put many of his subiects into the fashion of the booke, and diuers learned men flourished in his time.

His issue.—He had by *Maude* his wife the daughter of *Malcolin* the third, King of *Scotland*, none other children but *Maude* and *William*, of whom any certayne mention is made: but hee is sayd to haue had of children illegitimate seuen sonnes, and as many daughters, which shewes vs his incontinency: two of which sonnes of most especiall note, *Robert* and *Raynold* were Earles, the one of *Glocester* (a great Champion and defender of his sister *Maud* the Empresse) the other Earle of *Cornwall*, and Baron of *Castle-combe*. His daughters were all married to Princes and Noble men of *England* and *France*, from whom descended many worthy Families, as diuers Writers report.

*The end of the Life, and Reigne of Henry the first. |*

## *The Life, and Reigne, of King Stephen.*

1135. Anno Reg. I.



HE Line Masculine of the *Norman* extinct, and onely a daughter left, and she married a *Frenchman*, *Stephen* Earle of *Bologne* and *Mortagne*, sonne of *Stephen* Earle of *Blois*, and of *Adela* daughter to *William* the first, was (notwithstanding the former oath

taken for *Maud*) elected by the State, and inuested in the Crowne of *England*, within thirty dayes after the death of *Henry*. - Vpon what reasons of Councell, wee must gather out of the circumstances of the courses held in that time.

Reasons why *Maude* was not crowned.—Reasons why *Stephen Earle of Bullogne* was crowned King.—Some imagine, *The States refused Maude, for not beeing then the custome of any other Kingdom Christian (whose Kings are annoynted) to admit women to inherit the Crowne*; and therefore they might pretend to be freed from their oath, as being vnlawfull. But *Roger*, Bishop of *Salisbury*, one of the principall men then in Counsell, yeelded another reason for the discharge of this oath, which was *That seeing the late King had married his daughter out of the Realme, without the consent thereof, they might lawfully refuse her*. And so was *Stephen*, hauing no title at all, but as one of the blood, by meere election, aduanced to the Crowne. For if he could clayme any right in the Succession, as beeing the sonne of *Adela*, then must *Theobald*, Earle of *Blois*, his elder brother, haue beene preferred before him; and *Henry Fitz Emprese* (if they refused the Mother) was neerer in blood to the right Stem, then eyther. But they had other reasons that ruled that time. *Stephen was a man, and of great possessions, both in England and France, had one brother Earle of Blois, a Prince of great estate; another, Bishop of Winchester (the Popes Legat in England, of power eminent), was popular for his affabilitie, goodly personage, and actiuenesse*: and therefore acceptable to the Nobility, who, at that time, were altogether guided by the Clergy; and they (by the working of the Bishop of *Winchester*, induced to make choyce of him) hauing an opinion, that by preferring one, whose Title was least, would make his obligation the more to them; and so, they might stand better (secured of their liberties) then vnder such a one, as might presume of an hereditary succession. And to be the more sure there, before his admittance to the Crowne, he takes a priuate oath before the Bishop of *Canterbury*, to confirme the

*ancient liberties of the Church* ; and had his brother to vndertake betwixt God and him, for the performance thereof.

King *Stephen* possesses the Treasure of *Henry 1.*—His first Parliament at *Oxford*.—But being now in the possession of the Kingdome, and all the Treasure his Vncle had in many yeares gathered, which amounted to *one hundred thousand pounds of exquisite siluer, besides plate and iewells, of inestimable value* : After the Funerals performed at *Reading*, hee assembles a Parliament at *Oxford*, wherein, *Hee restored to the Clergy, all their former liberties and freed the Laity from their tributes ; exactions, or whatsoever grievances opprest them*, confirming the same by his Charter, which faythfully to obserue, hee tooke a publike oath before all the Assembly : Where, likewise the Bishops swore fealty vnto him, but with this condition ; *So long as hee obserued the Tenour of this Charter*.

And now as one that was to make good the hold that he had gotten, with power, and his sword, prepares for all assaults, which he was sure to haue come vpon him. And first grants licence, to all that would, *to build Castles vpon their owne Lands*, thereby to Fortifie the Realme, and breake the force of any ouer-running inuasion, that should master the field : Which in settled times might be of good effect, but in a season of distraction and part-taking, very dangerous. And being to subsist by Friends, hee makes all he could : *Creates new Lords, giues to many great Possessions, and hauing a full purse spares for no cost to buy loue and fidelitie* : A purchase very vncertaine when there may be other conueyances made of more strength to carry it.

Two wayes he was to looke for blowes : From *Scotland* on one side, and *France* on the other : *Scotland* wanted no instigations : *Dauid* their King mooued both by Nature and his oath to his Neece, turnes head vppon him : *Stephen* was presently there, with the / shew of a strong Armie, and appeased him with the restitution of *Cumberland*, and his sonne *Henry* Prince of *Scotland*, with the Earledome of *Huntingdon* : which,

with that of *Northumberland* (as Scottish Writers say) was to descend vnto him by the right of his Mother *Maude*, who was daughter to *Waltheof* Earle of *Huntingdon*, and of *Iudith* Neece to *William* the first, by whose gift he had that Earldome, and was the sonne of *Syward* Earle of *Northumberland*. And for this the Prince of *Scotland*, tooke his Oath of fealty to King *Stephen* which the father refused to doe, as hauing first sworne to *Maude* the Empresse. Though otherwise hee might be indifferent, in respect that *Stephen* had married likewise his Neece, which was *Maude* daughter to the Earle of *Bologne* and of *Mary* sister to this King *Dauid*, who by this meane was Vncle both to *Maude* the Queene, and *Maude* the Empresse.

The King, returning from this Voyage, found some defection of his Nobilitie, which presently put him into another action, that entertayned him sometimes : After which, hee falls dangerously sicke, in so much as hee was noysed to bee dead, by which sicknesse, hee lost more then his Health : For his Friends, put in danger thereby, cast to seeke another party to beare them vp : it weakened *Aniou*, and sets him on to surprize certayne peeces in *Normandy*, to prepare for the recouerie of his VViues right, and made all this Kingdome wauer. Thus was his first yeare spent, which shewed how the rest of eighteene would prooue, wherein wee are to haue no other representations, *But of reuolts, beseiging of Castles, surprizings, recouerings, losings againe, with great spoiles, and destruction* ; in briefe, a most miserable face of a distracted State, that can yelde no other notes of instruction, but such as are generall in all times of like disposition ; and therefore heerein wee may the better forbear the rehearsall of many particulars, beeing all vnder one head of action, and like Nature.

1137. *Anno Reg. 2.*—*Robert* Earle of *Glocester* the naturall sonne of *Henry* the first.—The King, hauing recouered, would make the world know hee was aliue, and presently passes with Forces into *Normandy*, ouer-came the Earle of *Aniou* in

battaile; after makes peace with him, and vpon renouncing of the claime of *Maude*, couenants to giue him 5000. markes per annum: he entertaines amity with King *Louys* the seuenth, and causes his sonne *Eustace* to doe him homage for the Dutchy of *Normandv*, wherein he was inuested: besides, to content his elder brother *Theobald*, Earle of *Blois*, hee giues him a pension of 2000. markes, and so returnes againe into *England*, to a VVarre against *Scotland*, which, in the meane time, made incursions on this Kingdome; where whilst hee was held busie in worke, *Robert* Earle of *Glocester*, base sonne to *Henry* the first, a man of high spirit, great direction, and indefatigable industry (an especiall actor that performed the greatest part, in these times, for his sister *Maude*) had surprized the Castle of *Bristow*, and procured Confederates to make good other peeces abroad in diuers parts: as *William Talbot* the Castle of *Hereford*; *Paynel* the Castle of *Lodlow*; *Louell* that of *Cary*; *Moone* the Castle of *Dunster*; *Robert de Nichol* that of *Warham*, *Eustace Fitz Iohn* that of *Walton*, and *William Fitz Allan* the Castle of *Shrewsbury*.

King *Stephen* represses the Conspirators.—*Stephen* leaues the prosecution of the *Scottish* VVarres to *Thrustan* Archbishop of *Yorke*, whom he made his Lieutenant, and furnished with many Valiant Leaders, as *Walter* Earle of *Albemary*, *William Peuerell* of *Nottingham*; *Walter* and *Gilbert Lacies*: Himselfe brauely attended, bends all his power to repress the Conspirators, which hee did in one expedition; recouers all the Castles (by reason of their distance, not able to succour one another) and draue the Earle of *Glocester* home to his sister into *Aniou*.

He defeited the Scots. 1138. *Anno Reg. 3.*—No lesse successes had his forces in the North, against the *Scots*, whom in a great battaile they dis-comfeited and put to flight: Which great Fortunes meeting together in one yeare, brought foorth occasion of bad, in that following: for now presuming more of himselfe, he fell vpon those rockes that rent all his greatnesse.

He calls a Councell at *Oxford*, where occasion was giuen to put him out with the Clergie, that had onely set him into the State. The Bishops vpon the permission of building Castles, so out-went the Lords in Magnificence, strength, and number of their erections, and especially the Bishop of *Salisburie*, that their greatnesse was much maligned by / them, putting the King in head, that all these great Castles, especially of *Salisbury*, the *Vies*, *Shyrburne*, *Malmesbury*, and *Newarke*, were onely to entertayne the party of *Maude*: whereupon the King, whose feares were apt to take fire, sends for the Bishop of *Salisbury* (most suspected) to *Oxford*. The Bishop, as if fore-seeing the mischief comming to him, would gladly haue put off his iourney, and excused it by the debility of his age, but it would not serue his turne: thither he comes, where his seruants, about the taking vp of Lodgings, quarrell with the seruants of the Earle of *Brittaine*, and from words fall to blowes, so that in the bickering, one of them was slaine, and the Nephew of the Earle dangerously VVounded. Whereupon the King sends for the Bishop, to satisfie his Court, for the breach of peace, made by his seruants: The satisfaction required, was *the yeelding vp the keyes of his Castles, as pledges of his fealty*; but that being stood vpon, the Bishop with his Nephew, *Alexander* Bishop of *Lincolne*, were restrayned of their liberty, and shortly after sent as prisoners to the Castle of the *Deuises*, whither (the Bishop of *Eley*, another of his Nephewes) had retired himselfe before. (1140. *Anno Reg.* 5.—The King seizes vpon the Bishops Castles and Treasure.) The King seizes into his hands his Castles of *Salisbury*, *Shyrburne*, *Malmesbury*, & after three dayes assault, the *Deuises* was likewise rendred; besides, he tooke all his Treasure, which amounted to fortie thousand markes.

The Popes Legat a Bishop takes part with Bishops against the King his brother. (*Malmesbury*).—This action being of an extraordinary strayne, gaue much occasion of rumour; some said: *The King had done well in seizing vpon these Castles; it*

being unfit, and against the Canons of the Church, that they who were men of Religion and peace should raise Fortresses for Warre, and in that sort as might be preiudiciall to the King. Against this was the Bishop of Winchester, the Popes Legat, taking rather the part of his function, then that of a brother: saying: *That if the Bishops had transgressed, it was not the King but the Canons, that must iudge it: that they ought not to be deprived of their possessions, without a publique Ecclesiasticall Councell; that the King had not done it, out of the zeale of Iustice, but for his owne benefit, taking away that which had beene built vpon the Lands, and by the charge of the Church to put it into the hands of Lay-men, little affected to Religion.* And therefore to the end, the power of the Canons might bee examined, hee appoynts a Councell to bee called at Winchester, whither the King is summoned: And thither repayre most of all the Bishops of the Kingdome, where first is read the Commission of the Legatine power, granted by Pope *Innocent* to the Bishop of Winchester, who there openly vrges the indignity offered to the Church, by the imprisoning of these Bishops: *An act most haynous and shamefull for the King, that in the peace of his Court, through the instigation of euill ministers, would thus lay hands vpon such men, spoile them of their estates: Which was a violence against God. And that seeing the King would yeeld to no admonitions hee had at length called this Councell, where they were to consult what was to be done: that for his part, neither the loue of the King, though his brother, nor the losse of his liuing, or danger of his life, should make him faile in the execution of what they should decree.*

The King, standing vpon this cause, sends certayne Earles to this Councell, to know why hee was called thither: Answered was made by the Legat: *That the King, who was subiect to the faith of CHRIST, ought not to take it ill, if by the ministers of CHRIST, he was called to make satisfaction, being conscious of such an offence as that age had not knowne: that it was for times of the Gentiles, for Bishops to be imprisoned, and deprived of their*

*possessions ; and therefore they should tell the King his brother, That if he would vouchsafe to yeeld consent to the Councell, it should be such by the helpe of God, as neither the Roman Church, the Court of the King of France, nor the Earle Theobald, brother to them both (a man wise, and religious) should, in reason dislike it: That the King should doe aduisedly to render the reason of his act, and vndergo a Canonick iudgement: that hee ought in duty to fauour the Church, into whose bosome being taken, hee was aduanced to the Crowne without any military hand.*

The Kings Reply.—With which answer the Earles departed, attended with *Alberic de Ver*, a man exercised in the Law ; and hauing related the same, they returned with the Kings reply : which *Alberic* vtters, and urges the iniuries Bishop Roger had done to the King: how he seldome came to his Court: that his men, presuming on his power, had offred violence to the nephew and seruants of the Earle of Brittain, and to the seruants of *Herui de Lyons*, a man of that Nobility and stoutnes, as would neuer voutsafe to come vpon any request to the late King and yet for the loue of this, was desirous to see England : where, to haue this violence offred was an iniury to the King, and dishonour to the Realme ; that the Bishop of Lincolne, for the ancient hatred to the Earle of Brittain, was the author of his mens sedition: that the Bishop of Salisbury secretly fauoured the Kings enemies ; and did but subtly temporize, as the King had found by diuers circumstances: especially when Roger de Mortimer, sent with the Kings forces in the great danger of Bristow, hee would not lodge him one night in Malmesbury: that it was in euery mans mouth, as soone as the Emperesse came, he and his Nephewes would render their Castles vnto her. That he was arrested, not as a Bishop, but a seruant to the King, and one that administred his procurations, and receiued his monies. That the King tooke not his Castles by violence, but the Bishop voluntarily rendred them, to auoid the calumnie of their tumults rayed in his Court: If the King found some mony in his Castles,

he might lawfully seize on it, in regard Roger had collected it out of the reuenues of the King his Vncle and predecessor: and the Bishop willingly yeelded vp the same, as well as his Castles, through feare of his offences; and of this, wanted not witnesses of the Kings part, who desired that the couenants made betweene him and the Bishop, might remaine ratified.

Against this, Bishop Roger opposes: *That he was neuer seruant to the King, nor receiued his monies; and withall added threatnings, as a man, not yet broken, though bent with his fortunes: that if he found not iustice for his wrongs in that Councell, hee would bring it to the hearing of a greater Court.*

The Legat mildly, as he did other things, said: *That all what was spoken against the Bishops, ought first to be examined in the Ecclesiasticall Councell, whither they were true or no, before sentence should haue bin giuen against them contrary to the Canons; and therefore the King should (as it is lawfull in iudiciall trials) reuest the Bishops in their former Estates, otherwise by the law of Nations being disseised, they shall not hold their Plea.*

After much debate, the Kings cause was (vpon a motion) put off till the next day, to the end the Arch-bishop of Roan, an especiall instrument for the King, might bee there; who deliuering his opinion, said: *That if the Bishops could rightly proue by the Canons, they ought to haue Castles, they should hold them; but if they could not, it proceeded of great improbity to strue to do otherwise. And be it (said he) their right to haue them; yet in a suspected time, according to the manner of other Nations, all great men ought to deliuer the keyes of their Fortresses, to be at the Kings pleasure, who is to fight for the peace of all. But it is not their right by the decree of the Canons to haue castles; and if by the Princes indulgence it be tollerated, yet in a time of necessity, they ought to deliuer the Keyes.*

The Legats and Archbishops submission.—The Lawyer Alberic addes; *That it was signified to the King, how the Bishops threatned, and had furnished some to go to Rome against him.*

*But, said he, the King would haue you know, that none of you presume to do it: for if any go out of England, contrary to his will, and the dignitie of the Kingdome, it will be hard returning.* In conclusion the Councell brake vp, nothing was done. The Bishops durst not excommunicate the King, without the Popes priuity; and besides, they saw the swords too busie about them; yet failed not the Legat, and the Arch-bishop to prosecute their parts, and from authority, fell to prayer; and (at the Kings feete, in his Chamber) *besought him, that he would pittie the Church, pittie his owne soule and his fame; not to suffer dissention to be, betweene the Kingdome and the Priesthood.* The King returned them faire words, but held what he had gotten.

Shortly after, through grieve, dyed the Bishop of *Salisbury*, and (according to the fate of ouer-eminant and greedy Officers) vnpittied. He was a man (in his latter time) noted of much corruption, and vnsatiable desire of hauing. For whom, the present King in the beginning of his Reigne had done very much, making one of his Nephewes Chancellour, the other Treasurer, and vpon his suite, gaue to himselfe the Borough of *Malmsbury*; insomuch as the King would say to his Familiars about him: *If this man will begge thus still, I will giue him halfe the Kingdome but I will please him: and first shall hee be weary of crauing, ere I of granting.* And sure the King had great reason to suspect his adhering to *Maude*, whose part hee began to fauour: onely, out of the hatred he bare to *Winchester*; who yet was content to forsake his owne brother, in regard, by his / ingagement he was preferred to the Crowne, rather then to lose his good will, and the rest of the Clergy.

*Maude* the Empresse conducted into *England*.—But yet this breaking of the King into the Church (which had made him) vtterly dissolued him. For presently heereuppon all his power fell asunder: The Empresse found now a way open to let her in, and the Earle of *Glocester* presuming of a sure side,

conducted her into *England* onely with 150. men : put her into the Castle of *Arundell*, and himselfe (attended but with twelue horse) passed away cleare through all the Country to *Bristow* and from thence to *Glocester*, where he had leisure without opposition, to rayse all the Country to take part with the Empresse ; who, from *Arundell* Castle, was afterward (by the Legat himselfe, and the Kings permission) conueyed to *Bristow* : receiued with all obedience, grew daily in strength as she went, and came at length to her brother (who had taken in *Hereford*, made himselfe strong with the Welsh, and settled those parts) to gather vp more of the Kingdome, by shewing herselfe and her power in diuers places.

*Stephen*, hauing no part cleare (by reason the Castles, vpon which hee spent both his time and meanes, lay so thicke blockes in his way) as hee could not make that speede to stop this streame, as otherwise he would : holding it not safe to goe forward, and leaue dangers behind, that might ouer-take him. And first hee layes siege to the Castle of *Wallingford*, which, *Brian* sonne to the Earle of *Glocester*, held against him : then to the Castle of *Bristow* and other places, working much, but effecting little : which seeing, to get time and stagger the swift proceeding of this new receiued Princesse, hee causes a treaty of peace to be propounded at *Bathe*, where the Legat (who likewise earnestly solicited the same) with the Arch-bishop of *Canterbury*, were appointed Commissioners for the King ; and the Earle of *Glocester* for the Empresse ; but nothing was effected, both returne to make good their sides. The Empresse seekes to recouer more, the King what he had lost. And lest the North parts might fall from him, and the King of Scots come on, hee repaires thitherward : And finding the Castle of *Lincolne* possest by *Ralph* Earle of *Chester*, who had married a daughter of the Earle of *Glocester*, and holding it not safe to bee in the hands of such a Maister, in such a time, seekes to take it in by force. The Earle of *Chester*, who held newtrall, attempting nothing against the King, tooke it ill, and stood

upon his defence: but being ouer-layd by power, conueyes himselfe out of the Castle, leaues his brother and wife within to defend it, and procures ayde of his Father in Law the Earle of *Glocester*, to succour him.

The Earle takes in hand this businesse, sets out of *Glocester* with an army of *Welchmen* and others, attended with *Hugh Bigod* and *Robert de Morley*, ioynes with the Earle of *Chester*, marches to *Lincolne*, where, in the battaile, King *Stephen* was taken, carried prisoner to *Glocester*, presented to the Empresse, and by her sent to bee kept in the Castle of *Bristow*, but in all Honourable fashion, till his attempts to escape layde fetters on him.

Shee labours the Legat for the Crowne of *England*.— Hereupon the Empresse (as at the top of her fortune) labours the Legat to bee admitted to the Kingdom, as the daughter of the late King, to whom the Realme had taken an oath to accept for soueraigne in the succession; and wrought so, as a Parle was appointed for this purpose, on the Playne neere to *Winchester*, where in a blustering sad day (like the fate of the businesse) they met; and the Empresse swore, and made affidation to the Legat, that all the great businesses, and especially the donation of *Bishopricks* and *Abbeys*, should bee at his disposing if he (with the Church) would receiue her as Queene of *England*, and hold perpetuall fidelity vnto her. The same oath and affidation tooke likewise her brother *Robert* Earle of *Glocester*, *Brian* his sonne, Marques of *Wallingford*, *Miles* of *Glocester* (after Earle of *Hereford*) with many others for her. Nor did the Bishop sticke to accept her as Queene (though she neuer came to bee so), and with some few other, made likewise affidation for his part, that so long as shee infringed not her couenant, hee would also hold his fidelity to her.

The next day, shee was receiued with solemne procession into the Bishops Church at *Winchester*, the Bishop leading her on the right hand, and *Bernard* Bishop of *Saint Davids* on the left. There were present many other Bishops, as *Alexander*

Bishop of *Lincolne*, / and *Nigel* Bishop of *Eley* (the Nephewes of *Roger*, lately imprisoned) *Robert* Bishop of *Bathe*, and *Robert* Bishop of *Worcester*, with many Abbots.

The Legats speech to the Clergy, to Crowne the Emperesse.— Within a few dayes after came *Theobald* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, to the Emperesse inuited by the Legat; but deferred to doe fealty vnto her, as holding it vnworthy his person and place, without hauing conferred first with the King. And therefore hee, with many Prelats, and some of the Laiety (by permission obtained) went to the King to *Bristow*. The Councell brake vp, the Emperesse keepe her Easter at *Oxford*, being her owne Towne. Shortly vppon Easter a Councell of the Clergy is againe called to *Winchester*, where the first day the Legat had secret conference with euery Bishop apart, and then with euery Abbot and other, which were called to the Councell. The next day he makes a publike speech, *Shewing how the cause (of their Assembly) was to consult for the peace of their Country, in great danger of utter ruine. Repeats the flourishing reigne of his Vncle, the peace, wealth and honour of the kingdom in his time; and how that renowned King, many yeares before his death, had receiued an oath both of England and Normandy, for the succession of his daughter Maude and her issue; but, saith he, after his decease, his daughter being then in Normandy, making delay to come into England, where (for that it seemed long to expect) order was to be taken for the peace of the Country, and my brother was permitted to Reigne. And although I interposed my selfe a surety betweene God and him, that hee should honour and exalt the holy Church, keepe and ordaine good Lawes; Yet, how he hath behaued himselfe in the Kingdome, it grieues me to remember, and I am ashamed to reapeate. And then recounts he all the Kings courses with the Bishops, and all his other mis-gouernments. And then, sayd he, euery man knowes I ought to loue my mortall brother, but much more the cause of my immortall Father; and therefore seeing God hath shewed his iudgement on my brother, and suffered him*

*(without my knowledge) to fall into the hand of Power: that the Kingdome may not miscarry for want of a Ruler, I haue called you all hither by the power of my Legation. Yesterday the cause was moued in secret, to the greatest part of the Clergy, to whom the right appertaines to elect and ordaine a Prince. And therefore after hauing inuoked (as it is meete,) the Diuine ayde, Wee elect for Queene of England the daughter of the peacefull, glorious, rich, and in our time the incomparable King; and to her, we promise our faith and allegiance.*

When all, who were present, eyther modestly gaue their voyce, or by their silence contradicted it not, the Legat addes: *The Londoners, who are (in respect of the greatnesse of their City) as among the optimacy of England, wee haue by our messengers summoned, and I trust they will not stay beyond this day: to morrow we will expect them.*

The Londoners came, were brought into the Councell, shewed *How they were sent from the Communalty of London, not to bring contention, but prayer, that the King their Lord might be freed from captiuity, and the same did all the Barons (receiued within their Liberties) earnestly beseech of my Lord Legate, and all the Clergy there present.* The Legat answeres them at large and loftily, according to his speech the day before, and added, *That the Londoners who were held in that degree in England, ought not to take their parts, who had forsaken their Lord in the Warre, by whose Councell the Church hath beene dishonoured, and who fauoured the Londoners but for their owne gaine.*

Then stands there up a Chaplaine to Queene Maude, wife to Stephen, and deliuers a letter to the Legat, which he silently read, and then sayd aloud, *That it was not lawfull in the assembly of so many reuerend and religious persons the same should be publikely read, containing matter reprehensible.* The Chaplaine not to faile in his message, boldly reads the Letter himselfe, which was to this effect: *That the Queene earnestly intreats all the Clergy there Assembled, and namely the Bishop of Winchester, the Brother of her Lord, to restore him vnto the*

*Kingdome, whom wicked men, which were also his subiects, held Prisoner.*

To this the Legat answeres (as to the *Londoners*) and shortly after the Councell brake vp, wherein many of the Kings part were excommunicated: namely *William Martell*, an especial man about the King, who had much displeased the Legat.

Hereupon a great part of *England* willingly accepted of *Maude*, in whose businesses her brother *Robert* imployes all his diligence and best care, *reforming Iustice, restoring the Lawes of England, promising relieuements, and whatsoever might be to win the people*; the Legat seconding all his courses.

The Legat leaues the Empresse.—Is intreated with teares by the Queene regnant.—But now, shee being at the poynt of obtaining the whole Kingdome; all came suddenly dasht by her ouer-hauty and proud carriage, and by the practise of the *Londoners*, who adhering to the other side, began openly to inueigh against her, who had displeased them, and they had plotted to surprize her in their Citie; whereof shee hauing notice, secretly withdrawes herselfe (accompanied with her Vncle *Dauid*, King of *Scots*, who was come to visit her and her brother *Robert*) vnto *Oxford*, a place of more security. The Legat himselfe takes, or makes an occasion to bee slacke in her cause, vpon her denying him a suite for his Nephew *Eustace*, the sonne of *Stephen*, about the inheritance of his Earledome of *Mortaigne* in *Normandy*. Besides, the Queene regnant, watchfull ouer all oportunities, found meanes to parle with the Legat, *Sets vpon him with her teares, intreaty, promises and assurance for the Kings reformation*; in so much as she recalled him to the affection of Nature, brought him about againe to absolue such of the Kings part, as he had lately excommunicated.

The Empresse besieged at *Oxford*, the Earle of *Glocester* taken Prisoner.—The Earle of *Glocester* seeing this suddaine and strange relaps of their affaires, striues by all meanes to hold vp Opinion, and re-quicken the Legats disposition, which

to keepe sound, was all. Hee brings the Empresse to *Winchester*, settles her, and her guard, in the Castle, where she desires to speake with the Legat, who first delayes, then denies to come. Whereupon they call their best friends about them. Queene *Maude* and the Lords incompasse the Towne, and cut off all victuall from the Empresse, so that in the end, the Earle of *Glocester* wrought meanes to haue her conueyed from thence to the *Vies*, but himselfe was taken, and in him most of her.

This sets the sides both euen againe into the Lists of their tryall: the two Prisoners are to redeeme each other; The disproportion of the quality betweene them, shewed yet there was an euenesse of power, and the Earle would not consent to the Kings deliuey (who onely in that was to haue the Precedence) but vppon most secure cautions. The Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and the Legat, vndertooke to yeelde themselues Prisoners for him, if the King released him not, according to his promise: But that would not serue the turne, till they both had written their Briefes to the Pope, to intimate the course that was taken heerein, and deliuered the same vnto him, vnder their hands and seales. So that, if the King should, as he might not care, to hold the Bishops in Prison: yet the Pope, if hard measure were offered, might relieue them. Which shewes the aduantage of credit in the businesse, lay on this side, and the King was to haue his fetters though at liberty.

1142. *Anno Reg. 7.*—The Queene and *Eustace*, her sonne the Prince, vpon the enlargement of *Stephen*, remaine pledges in the Castle of *Bristow* till the Earle were released, which was done vppon the Kings comming to *Winchester*. VVhere the Earle in familiar conference, was, by all art possible, solicited to forsake the party of *Maude*, with promise of all preferments of honour and estate: but nothing could mooue him beeing fixt to his courses, and rather would hee haue beene content to remayne a perpetuall Prisoner, then that

*Stephen* should haue beene released, had not his sister wrought him to this conclusion.

The Legat, after this, calles a Councell at *London*, where the Popes letters, written vnto him, are openly read, which argue him (but mildly) of some neglect of his brothers releasing, and exhort him to vse all meanes Ecclesiasticall and Secular, to set him at libertie.

King *Stephens* complaint.—The King himselfe came into the Councell, complaynes, *How his subiects, to whom hee had neuer denied Iustice, had taken him, and reproachfully afflicted him euen to death.* The Legate, with great eloquence, labours to excuse his owne courses: Alledging, *How hee receiued not the Empresse by his Will, but necessity: that presently vpon the Kings ouer-throw, whilst the Lords were eyther fled, or stood in suspence attending the euent, she and her people came thundring to the Walls of VVinchester: And that, what pact soeuer hee had made with her for the right of the Church, shee obstinately brake all: Besides, hee was certainly informed, that shee and hers had plotted, both against his dignity and life: But | God in his mercy, contrary to her desire, had turned the businesse so, as he escaped the danger, and his brother was deliuered out of bands. And therefore he, from the part of God, and the Pope, willed them, with all their vtmost power, to ayde the King, annoynted by the consent of the People and the Sea Apostolique, and to Excommunicate all the disturbers of the peace that fauoured the Countesse of Aniou.*

There was in the Councell a Lay Agent for the Empresse, who openly charged the Legat, *That in respect of the faith he had giuen the Empresse, to passe no act there preiudiciall to her Honour: hauing sworn vnto her neuer to ayde his brother with aboue twenty souldiers; that her comming into England, was vppon his often Letters vnto her: and his cause it was, that the King was taken and held prisoner.* This, and much more sayd the Agent with great austerity of words, wherewith the Legat seemed not to bee mooued at all, nor would stoope to reply.

But both parts thus set at liberty, were left to worke for themselues, holding the State broken betweene them; and no meanes made to interpose any barre to keep them a sunder. Their borders lay euery where, and then the ingagements of their Partakers, who (looke all to be sauers or to recouer their stakes when they were lost, which makes them neuer giue ouer) entertayne the contention. But the best was, they were rather troubles then Warres, and cost more labour then blood. Euery one fought with Bucklers, and seldome came to the sharpe in the field, which would soone haue ended the businesse.

The Earle of *Glocester* gets to *Normandy*.—Some few moneths after these enlargements, stood both sides at some rest, but not idle, casting how to compasse their ends. The Empresse at the *Vies* with her Councell, resolues to send ouer her brother into *Normandie*, to sollicite her husband the Earle of *Aniou*, to come to ayde her with forces from thence: Her brother the better to secure her in his absence, setles her in the Castle of *Oxford*, well furnished for all assaults: and takes with him the sonnes of the especiall men about her, as pledges to hold them to their fidelity. *Stephen* seekes to stop the Earles passage, but could not, and then layes siege to the Castle of *Oxford*; which held him all the time that the Earle was abroad. *Geffery* Earle of *Aniou*, desirous rather to haue *Normandy* (whereof, in this meane time, hee had attayned the most part, and in possibility of the rest) then to aduenture for *England*, which lay in danger, refused to come in person, but sends some small ayde, and his eldest sonne *Henry*, being then but eleuen yeares of age, that he might looke vpon *England*, and be shewed to the people to try if that would mooue them to a consideration of his right: which prooued of more effect then an Army.

The Earles returne with the Empresses eldest sonne *Henry*.—The Earle of *Glocester* safely returning, makes towards *Oxford* to relieue the Empresse, who had secretly conueyed her selfe disguised out at a posterne Gate, onely with foure

persons got ouer the Thames, passed on foote to *Abington*, and from thence conueyed to *Wallingford*, where her brother and sonne met her, to her more comfort after hard distresses.

1143. *Anno Reg. 8.*—*Stephen* seeing his enemy thus supplied, and like to grow, labours to win friends, but money failes, which made diuers of his Lords, and especially his mercenaries, whereof he had many out of *Flanders*, to fall to the rifling of Abbeyes, which was of dangerous consequence: And for Armies there was no meanes: onely about Castles, with small powers, lay all the businesse of those times, and they beeing so many were to small effect, but onely to hold them doing, which was for many yeares.

The Earle of *Glocester* dyes.—The Earle of *Glocester*, the chiefe pillar of the *Empresse*, within two yeares after his last comming out of *Normandy* died, and shortly after *Miles* Earle of *Hereford*, an especiall man of hers, which had vtterly quasht her, but that in stead of a brother shee had a sonne grew vp to bee of more estimation with the Nobility, and shortly after of ablenesse to vndergoe the trauailes of Warre. His first expedition at sixteene yeares of age was Northward to combine him with *David* King of *Scots* his great Vncle, to whom his mother had giuen the Country of *Northumberland*. After him followes *Stephen* with an Army to *Yorke*, least he should surprize that City, and to intercept him in his returne: but according to his vsuall manner, and *French-like*, after the first heate of his vndertakings, which were quicke and braue, hee quailes: nothing was effected, and both returne without incountring.

An. 1151.—Now to aduance the State and meanes of *Henry*, Fortune, as if in loue with young Princes, presents this occasion. *Louys* the seuenth, King of *France*, going in person to the Holy warres, and taking with him his wife *Elenor*, the onely daughter and heire of *William* Duke of *Guien*, grew into such an odious conceite of her, vppon the notice of her lasciuious behaviour in those parts, as the first worke hee doth vppon his comming backe, hee repudiates, and turnes her home with

all her great dowry, rather content to lose the mighty estate she brought him then to enjoy her person. With this great Lady matches *Henry* before he was twenty yeares of age, (beeing now Duke of *Normandy*, his father deceased, who had recouered it for him) and had by her the possession of all those large and rich Countries, appertayning to the Dutchy of *Guien*, besides the Earledome of *Poictou*. Whereuppon *Louys* enraged to see him enlarged by this great accession of State, who was so neere, and like to be so dangerous and eminent a neighbour, combines with *Stephen*, and aydes *Eustace* his sonne (whom hee married to his sister *Constance*) with maine-power, for the recouery of *Normandy*, wherein hee was first possest. But this young Prince, furnished now with all this powerfull meanes, leaues the management of the affayres of *England* to his friends, defends *Normandie*, wrought so, as the King of *France* did him little hurt ; and *Eustace* his Competitor, returned home into *England*, where shortly after he dyed, about 18. yeares of his age, borne neuer to bee out of the calamities of Warre, and was buried at *Feuersham* with his mother, who deceased a little before, and had no other joy nor glory of a Crowne but what we see. *Stephen*, whilst Duke *Henry* was in *Normandy*, recouers what hee could, and at length besieges *Wallingford*, which seemes in these times to haue beene a peece of great importance and impregnable, and reduced the Defendants to that extremity, as they sent to Duke *Henry* for succour, who presently thereuppon, in the midst of VVinter, arriues in *England* with 3000 foote, and 140 horse. VVhere first, to draw the King from *Wallingford*, he layes siege to *Malmesbury*, and had most of all the great men in the VVest, and from other parts comming in vnto him. *Stephen*, now resolved to put it to the tryall of a day, brings thither all the power hee could make ; and far ouer-went his enemy in number ; but flouds and stormes, in an vnseasonable VVinter, kept the Armies from incountring, till the Bishops, doubtfull of the successe, and seeing how dangerous it was for

them, and the whole State, to haue a young Prince get the maistry by his sword, mediated a peace, which was after concluded in a Parliament at *Winchester*, vpon these conditions.

1. *That King Stephen, during his naturall life, should remaine King of England, and Henry enioy the Dukedome of Normandy, as descended vnto him from his mother, and be Proclaimeed Heire apparent to the Kingdome of England, as the adopted sonne of King Stephen.*

2. *That the partizans of either, should receiue no damage, but enioy their Estates according to their ancient Rights and Titles.*

Resumptions.—3. *That the King should resume into his hands all such parcels of inheritance belonging to the Crowne, as had beene alienated by him, or usurped in his time. And that all those possessions which by intrusion had beene violently taken from the owners since the dayes of King Henry, should be restored vnto them who were rightly possessed therein, when the sayd King reigned.*

4. *That all such Castles as had bin built by the permission of Stephen, and in his time (which were found to be 1117) should be demolished, &c.*

There is a Charter of this agreement in our Annals, which hath other Articles of reseruatiō for the Estates of particular persons. And first for *William*, the second sonne of *Stephen*, to enioy all the possessions his Father held before hee was King of *England*, and many other particulars of especiall note.

After this pacification and all businesse here, settled, Duke *Henry* returnes into *Normandie* and likewise there concludes a peace with the King of *France*, and for that hee would be sure to haue it, buyes it, with twenty thousand markes.

A. 1154. He reigned 18 yeares, and ten moneths.—And now King *Stephen* hauing attayned (that hee neuer had) Peace (which yet, it seemes / hee enioyed not a yeare after) vses all the best meanes hee could to repayre the ruines of the State, makes his progresses into most parts of the Kingdome, to reforme the mischiefes that had growne vp vnder the sword:

And after his returne calls a Parliament at *London*, to consult of the best meanes for the publicke good. After the Parliament, hee goes to meete the Earle of *Flanders* at *Douer*, who desired conference with him, and hauing dispatcht him, falls presently sicke, dyes within few dayes after, and was buried (in the Abbey he founded) at *Feuersham*, with the vnfortunate Princes.

A man so continually in motion, as wee cannot take his dimension, but onely in passing, and that but on one side, which was Warre: On the other, wee neuer saw but a glance of him, which yet, for the most part, was such, as shewed him to bee a very worthy Prince for the Gouernment. He kept his word with the State concerning the relieuement of Tributes, and neuer had *Subsidy* that we find.

But which is more remarkeable, hauing his sword continually out, and so many defections and rebellions against him, *He neuer put any great man to death*. Besides it is noted, that notwithstanding all these miseries of Warre, *There were more Abbeyes built in his Reigne, then in an hundreth yeares before*, which shewes, though the times were bad, they were not impious.

*The end of the Life and Reigne of King Stephen.*

[See Appendix A., vol. v., for note and Author's quaint Errata apology.—G.]

## *The Life and reigne, of Henry the second; And first of the Line of Plantagenet.*

1155. *Anno Reg. i.*



**T**HAT short time of peace, before the death of *Stephen*, had so allayed the spirit of contention, and prepared the Kingdome (wearied and defaced with Warre) to that disposition of quietnesse: as *Henry Plantagenet* (though a *French-man* borne, and at that time, out of the Land: long detain'd with contrary Winds,

yet a Prince of so great possessions abroad, as might make him feared, to bee too mighty a maister at home ; or doubtfull, where hee would set his seate : Whether carry *England* thither, (or bring those great States to this) was, notwithstanding generally admitted (without any opposition or capitulation, other then the vsuall oath) to the Crowne of *England* : which he receiued at the hands of *Theobald*, Arch-bishop of *Canterbury*, the twentieth day of December, *Anno* 1154 about the three and twentieth yeare of his age.

Expulsion of Strangers.—And though he were a Prince *Young, Actiue, Powerfull, and had all that might make him high and presuming* : Yet the necessity of his owne affayres, were so strong raines to hold him in, from all exorbitant courses : as made him wary to obserue at first, all meanes to get, and retaine the loue and good opinion of this Kingdome, by a regular and easie Gouvernment : beeing sure to haue the King of *France* perpetually awake, for all aduantages (both in regard of daily quarrells, common to mighty neighbours ; as also for matching with her that came out of his bed, and brought away those mighty Prouinces from that Crowne, whereby he comes now to ouer-match him) beeing thus inuested in this powerfull Kingdome of *England*. Where, after hauing made a choyce of graue Counsellors, such as best vnderstood the state thereof ; hee beganne at a Councell or Parliament held at *Wallingford*, with an Act (that both serued his owne turne, and much eased the stomacks of his people) *which was the expulsion of Strangers*, wherewith the Land was much pestered, by reason of the late warres that had drawne great numbers of them, and especially of *Flemings* and *Picards*, whom King *Stephen* especially trusted in his greatest actions, after hee grew doubtfull of the *English* fidelity, and had made their Leader *William d'Ipres*, Earle of *Kent*, who likewise was turned home, and his estate seized into the Kings hands.

Resumption of Crowne Lands.—Then, that he might subsist by his owne meanes, without pressure of his subiects, (whose

voluntary seruices, and contributions, would yeeld him more in measure, then if exacted) *he lookes to the State, and ordering of his reuenues, reformes the Exchequer, and reuokes all such Lands belonging to the Crowne, as had any way bin alienated or usurped.* And though some of the great Lords stood out for the holding what they had in possession, as / *Hugh de Mortimer* for his Castles of *Clebury, Wigmore, and Bridgenorth*; and *Roger Fitz Miles*, Earle of *Hereford* for the City and Lands of *Glocester*: Yet the King tooke them by force as appertayning to the Crowne. Besides, he resumed the Castle of *Skarborough*, which *William* Earle of *Albemarle* held, and diuers other Lands and Castles in *Yorkshire*, possessed by priuate men. *Hugh Bigot* resigned his Castles into the Kings hands. And more, he tooke from *William* Earle of *Mortaine*, and *Warren*, base sonne to King *Stephen*, the Castle of *Pemsey*, the City of *Norwitch*: with other Townes and Castles, notwithstanding himselfe granted the same, in his agreement with *Stephen*: alledgeing, *They were of the Demaynes of the Crowne, and could not be aliened.* Onely he suffered him to enioy such lands, as his Father, King *Stephen* held in *England*, in the time of *Henry* the first.

Then goes hee Northward and recouers the City of *Carlile*, seizes all *Cumberland* into his hands; and after takes the Towne of *New-Castle*, with the Castle of *Bamberge*, and so resumed all *Northumberland*, which his Mother (the Empresse) had before granted to *Dauid* King of *Scots*, her Vncle (Grandfather to *Malcolin*, who now reigned) as being not in his Mothers power, nor his, to giue away any part of the Kingdome. Notwithstanding, he was content, *Malcolin* should enioy the Earledome of *Huntingdon*, which King *Stephen* had giuen to *Henry* Prince of *Scotland*, Father to *Malcolin*, as beeing a peece in the heart of *England*, whereof he could make no vse, but at the Kings pleasure: and besides, was a meanes, to hold him his Homager, and to performe those seruices belonging to that Earledome.

The King resumes the Earledome of *Aniou*.—And the same course tooke hee with the Alienations, and vsurpations formerly made of the Demaynes of the Duchy of *Normandy*, and forced *Theobald* Earle of *Blois*, to resigne into his hands two Castles, and *Petroch* Earle of *Perch*, other two. These *reuocations*, whereby so many were indamaged in their estates, and *Grants*, both of his *Predecessors*, and his owne vtterly nullified, might seeme, to be an act of great iniustice, and in a new *Gouernment*, of little safety. But in regard, the Common-wealth had thereby a benefit; and but few (though great) interested, it passed as a worke vniuersally necessary, seeing his Maintenance otherwise, must bee made vp out of publicke taxations; which would turne to a generall grieuance. But the resuming of the Earledome of *Aniou* out of his brother *Geffryes* hands, contrary to his oath, cannot but be held a straine beyond conscience and good nature. For his father *Geffrey Plantagenet* desirous to leaue some estate to his second son *Geffrey*, ordayned by his Testament, That when *Henry* had recovered the Kingdome of *England*, the other should haue the County of *Aniou*; and in the meane time, put *Geffrey* in possession of the Castles and Townes of *Chinon*, *Lodun*, and *Mirabell*, whereby hee might, both haue mayntenance for his estate, and a readier meanes to come to the rest when occasion serued. And lest his sonne *Henry* should not performe his Wil, he got certaine bishops, and other nobles to sweare, that they would not suffer his body to be interred, till *Henry*, who was then absent, had sworne to fulfill his Testament: *Henry*, rather then to suffer his Fathers body to lye vnburied, with great vnwillingnesse takes this oath. But afterwards being inuested in the Crowne of *England*, and *Geffrey* seazing vpon the Earledome of *Aniou*, he passes ouer into *France*, and not onely takes from him the Earledome, but also those three Townes he had in possession; alledging, It was no reason, a forced oath (vpon such an occasion) should bind him to forgo the inheritance of his Birth-right, being all the Patrimony, that was to descend vnto him from his Father, and though he had recovered

*the Kingdome of England; that was not his Fathers worke, but by an other right. And although he held his brother deare unto him, yet hauing Children of his owne, he was to prouide, that what was his, should descend to them.* But yet was content, to allowe his brother an honorable pension (of a thousand pounds *English*, and two thousand pounds of *Anioun* money nearely) for the mayntenance of his estate; and obtayned of Pope *Adrian* the seuenth (an *English* man borne) a dispensation for his Oath, made in this case.

1156. *Anno Reg. 2.*—His first expedition into *Wales*.—The punishment of Cowardize.—And now the first occasion, that put him here into action of Warre, was the Rebellion of the *Welch*, who, according to their vsuall manner, euer attempted some thing, in the beginning of the Reigne of new Princes, as if to try their spirits, and their owne Fortunes. / Against whom hee goes so prepared, as if he meant to go through with his Worke. Wherein at first, he had much to doe, passing a streight among the Mountaines, where he lost (with many of his men) *Eustace Fitz Iohn*, and *Robert Curcy*, eminent persons; and himselfe noysed to bee slaine, so much discouraged that part of the Army, which had not passed the Streights, as *Henry* an Earle of *Essex*, threw downe the Kings Standard (which he bare by inheritance) and fled; but soone, the King made it knowne, hee was aliue, discomfited his enemies, and brought them, to seeke their peace with submission. The Earle of *Essex* was after accused, by *Robert de Monfort* for this misdeede, had the Combate, was ouercome, pardoned yet of life, but condemned to be shorne a Monke, put into the Abbey of *Reading*, and had his Lands seised into the Kings hands.

1158. *Anno Reg. 4.*—It was now the fourth yeare of the reigne of this King; when, *all his affaires were in prosperous course, his State increasing, his Queene fruitfull, and had borne him three sonnes in England, Henry, Richard and Geffrey*: his eldest sonne *William* (to whom he had caused the Kingdome, to take an Oath of fealty) dyed shortly after his comming to

the Crowne, so that now, the same Oath is rendered to *Henry*, and all is secure and well on this side.

The resignation of *Nants* to the King of *England*.—The King of *France*, who would gladly haue impeached the mighty current of this Kings Fortune, was held in, and fettered with his owne necessities: his iourney to the Holy Land, had exhausted all his Treasure, and since his comming home, the Pope had exacted great summes of him for dispensing with his second marriage, which was with *Constantia* daughter to *Alphonso*, King of *Galicia*, a feeble alliance, and farre off, so that all concurred to increase the greatnesse of this King of *England*; who hauing now almost surrounded *France* (by possessing first all *Normandy*, with a great footing in *Brittaine*, by the resignation of *Nants*, with the Country there about, which *Conan* the Duke was forced lately to make vnto him; then the Earledome of *Maine*, *Poictou*, *Touraine*, *Aniou*, (with the Dutchy of *Guien*) hee also layes claime to the rich Earledome of *Tholouse* vpon this Title:

King *Henries* clayme to the Earledome of *Tholouse*.—William Duke of *Aquitaine*, grandfather to *Queene Elionor*, married the daughter and heire of the Earle of *Tholouse*, and going to the holy wars, ingaged that Earledome to *Raymond Earle of St. Gyles*, and neuer returned to redeeme it. William his sonne, father to *Queene Elionor*, eyther through want of meanes, or neglect, delayed likewise the redemption thereof; so that the Earle of *St. Gyles* continuing in possession whilst he liued, left it to his son *Raymond*, of whom King *Louys* of *France* (hauing married *Elionor*, the daughter and heire of the last William) demaunded the restitution, with tender of the summe for which it was ingaged. *Raymond* refuses it, and stands to his possession, as of a thing absolutely sold or forfeited; but being too weake to contend with a King of *France*, fell to an accord, and married his sister *Constance*, widdow of *Eustace sonne* to King *Stephen*, and so continues the possession. Now King *Henry* hauing married this *Elionor*, and with her was to haue

all the Rights shee had, tenders likewise (as the King of *France* had done, in the same case) *the summe formerly disbursed, vpon the morgage of that Earledome*. And withall makes ready his sword to recouer it, and first combines in league and amity, with such, whose Territories bordred vpon it: as with *Raymond Earle of Barcelona*, who had married the daughter and heire of the King of *Arragon*, a man of great Estate in those parts, entertayning him with conference of a match betweene his second sonne *Richard*, and his daughter: with couenant, *that Richard should haue the inheritance of the Dutchy of Aquitaine, and the Earledome of Poictou*. Besides, hee takes into his protection *William Lord of Trancheuille* (possessing likewise) many great Signories in the Countrey: and one who held himselfe much wronged in his Estate, by the Earle of *Tholouse*. [See Appendix B, Vol. V.].

1159. *Anno Reg. 5.*—These aydes prepared, hee leauies an Army, and goes in person to besiege the Citie of *Tholouse*, and takes along with him *Malcolin*, King of *Scots*, who (comming to his Court to doe him homage, for the Earledome of *Huntingdon*, and to make clayme for those other peeces, taken from his Crowne) was entertayned with so many fayre words and promises of King *Henry*, as drew him along to this Warre. /

1160. *Anno Reg. 6.*—Prince *Henry* contracted to *Margaret* daughter to the King of *France*.—The Earle of *Tholouse* vnderstanding the intentions of the King of *England*, craues ayde of his brother in Law the King of *France*, who likewise with a strong Armie, comes downe in person to succour *Tholouse*, and was there before the King of *England* could arriue with his Forces; whereupon, seeing himselfe preuented, and in disadvantage, King *Henry* fell to spoyling the Country, and takes in *Cahors* in *Quercy*, where he places a strong Garrison to bridle the *Tholousains*, and so returnes into *Normandy*, gaue the order of Knight-hood to King *Malcoline* at *Tours*: augments his Forces, and enters the Country of *Beauuoisin*, where hee destroyes many Castles, and commits great spoyles. And to

adde more anoyance to the King of *France*, hee obtained of the Earle *de Auranches*, the two strong Castles *Rochford* and *Monford*, which furnished with Garrisons, impeached the passage twixt *Orleance* and *Paris*; in so much as the Warre and weather grew hote betwixt these two great Princes, and much effusion of blood was like to follow; but that a mediation of peace was made, and in the end concluded, *With a match betweene the young Prince Henry, not seauen yeares of age, and the Lady Margaret eldest daughter to the King of France scarce three: weake linkes, to hold in so mighty Princes. The yong Lady was deliuered rather as an Ostage then a Bride, to Robert de Newburge, to be kept till her yeares would permit her to liue with her husband.* In the meane time, notwithstanding, many ruptures hapned betweene the Parents: *The first whereof grew vpon the King of Englands getting into his owne hand the Castle of Gisors, with two other Castles vpon the Riuer Eata, in the confines of Normandy: deliuered vp before the due time by three Knights Templars, to whom they were committed in trust, till the marriage were consumated.* And this cost some blood: the Knight Templars are persecuted by the King of *France*, and the King of *England* receiues them.

The King seekes to abate the power of the Clergy, and the cause thereof.—But now the aduantage of power lying all on this side, and the King seeing himselfe at large (and how much hee was abroad) beganne to be more at home, and to looke to the Prerogatiues of his Crowne, which as he was informed, grew much infringed by the Clergy: which, since the time of *Henry* the first *Were thought to haue enlarged their iurisdiction beyond their vocation*; and himselfe had found their power, in the election of King *Stephen*, with whom they made their owne conditions, with all aduantages for themselues, whereby they depriued his Mother and her Issue, of their succession to the Crowne. And though afterwards by their mediation, the peace twixt him, and *Stephen* was concluded, and his succession ratified: yet for that, might hee thanke

his Sword, the Iustice of his cause, and strong party in the Kingdome. VVhat they did therein shewed him rather their power, then their affection; and rather put him in minde of what they had done against him at first, then layed any obligation on him, for what they did afterward. And his owne example, seeing them apt to surprise all aduantages for their owne aduancement, made him doubt how they might deale with his Posterity, if they found occasion; and therefore is hee easily drawne to abate their power in what hee could.

Complaints against the Clergy.—To this motion of the Kings dislike, the Lay Nobilitie (emulous of the others authority) layed more weights: alledging *how the immunities of the Clergy tooke vp so much from the Royalty, as his execution of iustice, could haue no general passage in the kingdom: the Church held their Dominion apart, and free from any other authority then their owne; and being exempt from secular punishments, many enormous acts were committed by Clergymen, without any redresse to be had; and it was notified to the King, that since the beginning of his Reigne, There had bin aboue a hundreth Man-slaughters committed within the Realme of England by Priests and men within Orders.*

1161. Anno Reg. 7.—*Thomas Becket* preferred to the Sea of *Canterbury*.—Now had the King, a little before (vpon the death of *Theobald* Arch-bishop of *Canterbury*) preferred *Thomas Becket*, a creature and seruant of his owne, to that Sea. A man whom first, from being Arch-deacon of *Canterbury*, hee made his Chancellor, and finding him *Diligent, Trusty and Wise*, employes him in all his greatest businesses of the State: by which tryall of his seruice and fidelity, hee might expect to haue him euer the readier to aduance his affayres, vpon all occasions. And besides, to shewe how much hee respected his worth and integrity, hee commits vnto him *the education of the Prince, a charge of the greatest consequence in a Kingdome*, which shall be euer sure to finde their Kings / as they are bred. At the beginning of this mans promotion, this reformation of Eccle-

siasticall iurisdiction is set vpon, *a worke (in regard of that time of deuotion) of great difficulty*: the Bishops hauing from the beginning of Christianity, first vnder the *Saxon Kings*, principally swayed the State; and though at the entrance of the *Norman*, they were much abridged of their former liberties, *they held themselves if not content, yet quiet*. For albeit they had not that power in temporall businesse as before; yet, *within their owne circle, they held their owne iurisdiction, and immunities*; and had since, both by the *Law, Ciuill Warres, and the occasion of Forraine affaires, much enlarged them*. So that any restriction, or diminution, of the power they had, could not but touch veynes that were very sensible in that part: especially, *by reason of the vniuersall participation of the spirit that fed them*; and therefore could not bee but a businesse of much trouble.

A Parliament at Westminster. 1163. *Anno Reg. 9.*—The King conuokes a Councill at *Westminster*, and there first propounds to haue it enacted, *That all such of the Clergy as should bee taken and conuicted for any hainous offence, should lose the priuiledge of the Church, and be deliuered to the ciuill Magistrate, to be punished for their offences, as other the Kings subiects were*. For, if after spirituall punishment, no secular correction should bee vsed; there would bee no sufficient meanes to restrayne them from doing mischief: seeing it was not likely, such men would much care for their degrading and losse of Orders, whom the Conscience of their calling did not hold in awe.

The Arch-bishop and his suffragans, with the rest of the Bishops, shewed the King *how they were not to yeeld to any such Act, being against the liberties of the Church, which himselfe had sworne to defend and maintayne*; and therefore humbly besought him, *that hee would not vrge any thing to the preiudice of their iurisdiction, and such immunities as they had hitherto enioyed, both vnder him and his Noble Progenitors*.

The King not liking this answeare demaunds, *Whether they*

would submit themselves to the Lawes and Customes, which the Arch-bishops and Bishops, in the time of his grandfather Henry the first did obserue? They answered, *They would; their Order, the honor of God, and holy Church, in all things saued; with which reseruatiō the King grew more displeased, the Parliament brake vp, and nothing effected at that time, for hee saw the Bishops fast to themselves, and the more by the animation of the Arch-bishop of Canterbury, whom hee thought (in regard of all those his graces bestowed on him) to haue found more yeelding to his courses, and therefore his indignation was most against him: And because hee would make him see what the displeasure of so mightie a King was, who could as well cast downe as aduance: First denies him accesse: then takes from him what hee could possibly, countenances all such as were his opposites, his businesses in any the Kings Courts go against him, the Earle of Clare is supported in a contestation he had with him, about his Homage for the Castle of Tunbridge, and preuailles:* nothing is left vndone, that might bee thought to humble him. And besides the King wrought so, *As he vnties the knot, gaines first the Arch-bishop of Yorke, (the ancient Competitor with Canterbury in dignity) and after, the Bishops of Lincolne, Hereford and the especiall Prelates: and separates them both from the Councell, and company of the Arch-bishop Becket.*

Notice of this iarre being giuen abroade, a Messenger is sent from the Pope, and all the Cardinalls to reconcile it, and *to charge the Arch-bishop to make peace with his Lord the King and promise to obserue his lawes without exception.* The Archbishop pressed with this message, and the aduice of many great men, repaires to the King at Woodstocke, and there *promises in good faith, without any euill meaning, to obserue the Kings Lawes so farre forth as was required.*

A Parliament at Clarendon. 1164. Anno Reg. 10.—The Arch-bishop *Becket*, takes his oath to obserue the Kings Lawes.—The King supposing now, things better prepared for his purpose then before, calls a generall Assembly of the

Bishops and Nobility at *Clarendon*, where *Iohn of Oxford*, the Kings Clerke was President of the Councell: And a very strict charge is giuen from the King, *That they should call to memory the Lawes of his Grandfather Henry the first, and to reduce them into Writing:* which beeing done, hee willed the Arch-bishoppe and Bishops, to set their Seales thereunto. VVhich when the rest were content to doe, *the Arch-bishop Becket refused.* Yet at length, by the perswasion of the Bishops (vrging him to satisfie the Kings pleasure, and appease his wrath, in regard of his present danger, which, by the rushing vp and downe of the Kings seruants with threatning countenances, they suspected themselues likely to fall into) *He tooke his Oath to obserue the Kings Lawes without any reseruatiō.* And for the writing desired to haue a Copy, as if better to aduise there. And taking it into his hand, he turnes to the Clergy, and sayd: *Brethren stand fast, you see the malice of the King and of whom we are to beware.*

The King vseth all meanes to vexe the Arch-bishop.—So the Councell ended, but not the Kings displeasure against the Arch-bishop, whom onely hee found, durst beare vp against his power, the rest all yeelding thereunto, And therefore proceeds he, *by all meanes to vexe and disgrace him, and to aduance his Concurrent the Arch-bishop of Yorke, whom hee solicites the Pope (by his Agents Iohn of Oxford, and Geffrey Riddle) to make his Legat of all England.* Which the Pope (fore-warned, acquainted with this businesse) refused to do: yet at the petition of those Agents, granted *that Legation to the King himselfe, but so as he should do nothing to grieue the Arch-bishop;* which the King tooke as a great indignity, and sent backe his Agents with the Popes Grant.

The Arch-bishop repents him of his oath.—The Arch-bishop *Becket* after his oath at *Clarendon*, so repented, as *he suspended himselfe from the seruice of the Altar, & did sharpe penance till he had obtained absolution from the Pope.* Which (vpon his information of the case) was sent him. After this, as some

write, he attempts to depart out of the Kingdome, contrary to a *Law made at Clarendon (forbidding Archbishops, Bishops and other Persons to depart out of the Realme without the Kings leaue. Which, although they obtained, yet were notwithstanding to secure the King, neither in their going, returning or staying there, to practise any thing preiudicious to his State or Person.)* But being by contrary winds brought backe, he more exasperates the King against him.

A Parliament at *Northampton*.—The *Archbishop* called to account.—After this, he is summoned to an assembly at *Northampton* (holden about the ratification of the acts of *Clarendon*) where (to despise him the more) the Kings horses are placed in his *Inne*; and there, *First had he a case adiudged against him, concerning a Mannor, for which, one Iohn the Kings Marshall contended with him in Law; and besides the losse of the Mannor, was cast in arrerages, five hundred Markes,* which the King was said to haue sent him; but he alledged how it was giuen: yet because hee confessed the receite, and could not prooue the gift, hee was condemned to pay it. *Then was he called to render an account to the King of all such receipts as in the time of his Chancellorship he had receiued for the King, of certaine Bishopricks & Abbeys during their vacancies, which amounted to 3000 markes.* For these accounts, he alledged, *How the King knew well, he was discharged before his election to the See of Canterbury; and how the Prince, the Barons of the Exchequer, and Robert de Lucie, chiefe Iustice of England had made him his acquittance for all accounts, & secular receipts, in the behalfe of the king: & so (free and cleared) was he chosen to the administration of that office, and therefore would pleade the same no more.*

The King, notwithstanding, vrging to haue iudgement passe against him, both for this, his late attempts and disobedience, hee was commanded the next day to attend his Censure. The morning before he was to appeare, hee celebrates earely with great deuotion, the Masse of *S<sup>t</sup>. Stephen Protomartyr*, which

had these words: *Etenim sederunt Principes, & aduersum me loquebantur*; and so committing his cause to God, sets forward to the Court in his Stole, his blacke Canonick hood, carrying the Crosse in his right hand, and guiding his horse with the left. The people seeing him come in this fashion, flocke all about him; he entring the great Chamber, sate downe amongst them, the King beeing within, in his Priuy Chamber with his Councell: from whom first came foorth the Bishop of London, and much blames him for comming so armed to the Court and offered to pull the Crosse out of his hand, but the Archbishop held it so fast that he could not. Which the Bishop of Winchester seeing, said to London, *Brother, let him alone, he ought wel to beare the Crosse.* London replies, *you speak brother against the King and it wil be ill for you.* After this comes foorth the Arch-bishop of Yorke (the heate of whose ancient hatred, sayth Roger Houeden, would not suffer him to speake in peace, and rebukes him very sharply, for / comming in that fashion, as if to a Tyrant, or heathen Prince, and told him, *That the King had a sword sharper then his Crosse, and if he would be aduised by him, he should take it from him.* Canterbury replies, *the Kings sword wounds carnally, but mine strikes Spiritually, and sends the soule to Hell.*

After much debate, the Arch-bishop Becket inuayes against this Violent proceeding against him: *How no age euer heard before, that an Arch-bishop of Canterbury had beene adiudged in any of the Kings Courts for any cause whatsoever, in regard both of his Dignity and Place; and for that hee is the Spirituall Father of the King, and all other his Subiects.* Then to the Bishops, *You see the World rageth against me, the enemy riseth vp; but I more lament, the Sonnes of my Mother fight against me. If I should conceale it, the age to come will declare, how you leaue mee alone in the Battell, and haue iudged against me, beeing your Father, though neuer so much a sinner. But I charge you by vertue of your Obedience, and perill of your Order, that you be not present in any place of iudgement, where my*

*Person or cause comes to bee adiudged. And heere I appeale to the Pope: Charging you farther by Vertue of your Obedience, that if any Temporall man lay hands on mee, you exercise the Sentence of the Church; as it becomes you, for your Father the Arch-bishop, who will not shrinke howsoever, nor leaue the Flocke committed vnto him.*

Complaints against the Archbishop.—Then were all these great complaints of his Contempt, Disobedience and Periury, exhibited, and aggrauated against him before the Assembly, and they cryed generally hee was a Traytor, that hauing receiued so many benefits at the Kings hands, would refuse to doe him all earthly honour, and obserue his Lawes as he had sworne to doe. The Bishops likewise, seeing all thus bent against him, *Renounced their Ecclesiasticall obedience vnto him, cited him to Rome, and condemned him as a periured man and a Traytor.*

Then the Earle of *Leicester* accompanied with *Reginald Earle of Cornwall*, came to the Arch-bishop, and charged him from the King to answere to what was Obiected vnto him, or else to heare his iudgement. *Nay, sonne Earle,* said he, *first heare you: It is not vnkowne to your selfe, how faithfully I haue serued the King, and how in regard therof he preferred me to the place I haue (God is my witnesse) against my will. For I knew mine owne infirmities, and was content to take it vppon me, rather for his pleasure, then Gods cause; therefore now doth God withdraw himselfe, and the King from me. At the time of my election hee made me free from all Court bondage, and therefore touching those things from which I am deliuered, I am not bound to Answer, nor will I. How much the soule is worthier then the body, so much are you bound to obay God, and me rather then any Earthly Creature: neither will Law or Reason permit the Sonnes to condemne the Father: And I refuse to stand eyther to the Iudgement of the King or any other Person; appealing to the presence of the Pope by whom onely on Earth I ought to be adiudged, committing all I haue to Gods protection and his; and*

*vnder this authority I depart of this place.* And so went hee out and tooke his Horse, not without some difficulty in passing, and many reproaches of the Kings seruants.

The Arch-bishop disguised fled out of the Kingdome.— Being gotten out of the Court, a great multitude of the Common people (reioycing to see him deliuered) and diuers of the Clergy conuayed him honourably to the Abbey of Saint *Andrewes*, whence disguised (by the name of *Dereman*) hee escaped ouer into *Flaunders* and so to *France*.

This businesse of the Church, I haue the more particularly deliuered (according to the generall report of the Writers of that time) in regard it lay so chayned to the Temporall affaires of the State, and bewrayed so much of the face of that Age, with the constitution both of the Soueraignty, and the rest of the body, as it could not well bee omitted. Besides, the effects it wrought in the succeeding Reigne of this Prince, the vexation, charge, and grievous burthen it layed vppon him for many yeares, is worthie of note, and shewes vs what spirit had predomination in that season of the VVorld, and what Engines were used in this Oppugnation.

Presently vppon the departure of this Great Prelate, the King sends ouer to the King of *France*, *Gilbert* Bishop of *London*, and *William* Earle of *Arundell*, to intreat him, *not only to forbid the Archbishop his Kingdome, but to be a meanes to the Pope, that his cause might not be fauoured by the Church, being so contumacious a rebell as he was against his Soueraigne Lord.*

The King of *France* notwithstanding this intreaty, sends Fryer *Francis* his Almoner vnder hand to the Pope, to beseech him, as hee tendred the honour of holy Church, and the ayde of the Kingdome of *France*, *to support the cause of Thomas of Canterbury, against the Tyrant of England.*

The King sends Ambassadors to the Pope.—King *Henry* sends likewise with all speed, *Roger* Archbishop of *Yorke*, the Bishops of *Winchester*, *London*, *Chichester* and *Excester*: *Guido Rufus*, *Richard Iuechester*, and *Iohn* of *Oxford*, Clerkes:

*William Earle of Arundell, Hugh de Gundeuile, Barnard de Saint Walleric, and Henry Fitz Gerrard, to informe the Pope of the whole cause, and preuent the Arch-bishops complaint. The multitude and greatnesse of the Commissioners shewed the importance of the Ambassage, and the Kings earnest desire to haue his cause preuaile. They finde the Pope at the City of Sens, to whom, they shewed how peruers and disobedient the Arch-bishop had behaued himselfe to his Soueraigne Lord the King of England; how hee alone refused to obey his Lawes and Customes, which hee had sworne to doe; and that by his peeuish waywardnesse, the Church and Kingdome were like to be disturbed, which otherwise would agree in the reformation thereof, as was fit and necessary; and therefore they besought him, as hee tendred the peace of the Church of England, and the loue of the King their Soueraigne, not to give credit or grace, to a man of so turbulent and dangerous a spirit.*

This Information (notwithstanding earnestly vrged) they found moued not any disposition in the Pope to fauour the Kings cause, so that in the end, *They besought him to send two Legats ouer into England, to examine the particulars of this businesse, and how it had bin carried; and in the meane time, to admit no other information of the cause, but referre it to their relation.* The Pope refuses to send any Legat; the Commissioners depart without any satisfaction. And within foure dayes after, comes the Arch-bishop and prostrates himselfe at the Popes feet: deliuers him a copy of those Lawes, which the King called his *grandfathers Lawes*, which being openly read in the presence of all the Cardinals, Clergy and many other people, *The Pope condemned them for euer, and accursed those who obeyed or any way fauoured them.*

Those Lawes among the Statutes of *Clarendon*, which the Arch-bishop so much oppugned (and most offended the Clergy) were (as by his owne letter to the Bishop of *London* appeares) these especially: *That there should be no appeale to the Apostolike Sea without the Kings leaue. That no Arch-bishop or*

*Bishop should go out of the Realme but by the Kings Permission. That no Bishop excommunicate any, who held of the King, in Capite; or interdict any Officiall of his without the Kings leaue, &c. That Clergymen should be drawne to secular iudgement, That Lay-men (as the King and other) should handle causes of the Church, Tythes, and such like. And these were dangerous incroachments vpon their Liberties.*

1166. *Anno Reg. 12.* The Kings Edicts against the Pope and his agents.—But now the King, seeing his Ambassage to take no effect, and withall, in a manner contemned, presently makes his heauie displeasure, and the scorne hee tooke, knowē by his seuere Edicts, both against the Pope, and the Archbishop, that they might see what edge his secular power had in this: Ordayning, *That if any were found carrying Letter, or Mandate from the Pope, or Arch-bishop, containing any interdiction of Christianity in England, he should be taken, and without delay executed as a traytor, both to the King and Kingdom. That whatsoever Bishop, Priest, Monke or Conuerser in any Order, Clergie, or Layman, should haue and retaine any such letters; should forfeite all their possessions good and chattells to the King, and be presently banished the Realme with their kinne. That no Clergyman, Monke or other should be permitted to passe ouer Sea, or returne out of Normandy into England, without letters from the Iustices heere, or from the King being there; Vppon paine to be taken as a Malefactor, and put in hold. That none should appeale to the Pope. That all Clerkes which had any reuenue in England should returne into the Realme within three months, vpon paine of forfeiting their estates to the King. That | Peter Pence should be collected and sequestred till the Kings pleasure were farther knowne.*

Besides this, hee banishes all that were found to bee any way of kinne to the Arch-bishop, without exception of condition, sex, or yeares. And withall, takes occasion vpon the *Schisme* which was then in the Church, to renounce Pope *Alexander*, and incline to the Emperours faction, which stood thus.

The Election of two Popes.—After the death of *Adrian* the fourth, *Rowland* a *Geneuese*, and a great enemy of the Empire, is by two and twenty Cardinalls elected Pope by name of *Alexander* the third, to which election foure Cardinalls opposed, and made choice of *Octavian* a Citizen of *Rome* that would be called *Victor* the fifth. The Emperor *Frederic Barbarossa* summons these two Popes to a Councell at *Pauia*, to vnderstand and determine their right. *Alexander* makes the old answere, *That the Pope could not be iudged by any man liuing*, refuses to appeare before the Emperour, and withdrawes into *Anagnia*. *Victor* consents to appeare there, or wheresoeuer the Emperour would appoint, so that, hee was the man for that side. But all the other Princes of Christendome (except those of the Emperours faction) acknowledge *Alexander* for Pope as elected by most voyces. And especially by the King of *France* who called him thither; and at *Cocy* vpon *Loyr*, hee and the King of *England* receiued him with all honour and reuerence, in so much, as they are sayde to haue attended vpon his Stirrop, the one on the right hand, the other on the left: after this, he calls a Councell at *Tours*, whither the Kings of *England*, *Spaine* and *Hungary* send their Ambassadors, and there are the constitutions of the Councell of *Pauia*, and the Emperours confirmation of *Victor* nullified, so that *Alexander* hauing his party daily encreasing in *Italy*, was shortly after receiued into *Rome*.

Notwithstanding all this, the King of *England* finding him so auers in this businesse, *Falls off from him, renounces his Authority, turnes to the Emperours faction, seekes to strengthen himselfe with the Princes of Germany, consents to match his daughter Maude to the Duke of Saxony, at the motion of Reginald Arch-bishop of Collen, sent ouer by the Emperor for that purpose, and intertaines a motion for another daughter to be matched with the Emperours sonne.*

Pope *Alexanders* Letter to the Clergy of *England*.—But now, by reason this contrary faction to Pope *Alexander* grew

to bee but feeble, all this working did the King no good, but exasperates the Pope, and sets him on the more to support the cause of the Arch-bishop, *Who solicites the Clergy of England, threatens, intreats, adiuers them not to forsake their hold, nor giue way to the inuador of their liberties, which sought to confound the Priest-hood and the Kingdome: and if they opposed not mainly at the first, but suffered the least breach to bee made vppon them, they were vndone.* Then excommunicates hee all the especiall Ministers of the King that adhered to the *Teutonicque* faction, or helde intelligence with the Arch-bishop of *Collen*: As *Iohn of Oxford, Richard Iuechester, Richard de Lucie, Iossling Balliol, Alan de Neuile*, and with these all such as had entred vppon the goods of the Church of *Canterbury*, which hee called the *Patrimony of the Crucifix, and the foode of the poore*; and there were *Ralph de Brocke, Hugh Saint Clare, and Thomas Fitz Barnard*. Thus are both sides busied in this drie Warre, wherein, though there were no sword, yet it gaue vexation enough.

The King represses the *Welch*.—And yet this was not all the worke that tooke vp the Kings time; for during this dissention, the Welsh againe reuolt, and to suppress them he spent much labour, with the losse of many great men, and was himselfe in that danger, as had not *Hubert Saint Clare* receiued a Wounde for him, by an Arrow aymed directly at his owne person, hee had there finished his part. In this expedition hee is sayd, to haue vsed extreame crueltie.

1166. *Anno Reg. 13.*—After this, hee passes into *Normandy* to bee neere his businesse, which now lay all on that side. And first to entertayne the opinion of Piety (though hee were false out with the Pope) hee obtaynes at an Assembly of his Bishops and Barons of *Normandy, two pence in the pound, of euery mans Lands and goods to be payd that yeare 1166. and a peny of euerie pound to be paid for foure yeares following*, which was leuied for the reliefe of the Christians in the Holy Warre, and sent vnto them. /

Then hee raises forces and takes in certayne Castles in the Countrey of *Maine*, and Marches of *Brittaine*, from diuers Lords and Barons that had disobayed him. And whilst he was busie abroade, *Mathew* sonne to the Earle of *Flaunders* (who had married the Lady *Mary Abbess* of *Ramsey*, daughter to King *Stephen*, and had by her the Countrey of *Bologne*) attempted something on the Coast of *England*, either to try the affections of the people, or to make spoyle and booty, but without any effect at all, the King being too mighty for any such weake vndertaker.

And to distend his power yet wider, falls out this occasion : *Conan* Earle of *Brittaine* dyes, and leaues one onely daughter (which hee had by his wife *Constance* daughter to the King of *Scots*) to succeed him in his State. The King of *England* being then in armes vpon the Marches of *Brittaine*, deales with the Guardians of the young Lady to match her to his third sonne *Geffery*. The Nobilitie of that Countrey beeing then of a rough, and haughtie disposition (giuen to fewds and perpetuall quarrelling one with another) were wrought vpon, and a side is wonne of such as could doe most in this businesse ; which is effected to the great contentation of the King of *England*.

The Death of *Maude* the Empresse.—This fell out to be in the 13. yeare of his Reigne, wherein, as some write, dyed his mother *Maude* the Empresse, a Lady of an high and actiue Spirit : illustrious by her birth, but more by her first match, and most by her sonne, whom she liued to see established in all these mighty States, in the glory of Greatnesse and Peace : Fertile in issue, hauing now had foure sonnes and three daughters, linkes of loue and strength (oftentimes in priuate families) though seldome in Princes ; and shee left him in the best time of his dayes before any great tempest ouertooke him.

Three yeares after this, hee imployes most in *France*, about the ordering and clearing the bounds of his Dominions from vsurpation, or incroachments of neighbour Lords (whom his

greatnesse held in awe) and they must haue no more then hee would: especially hee settles and reformes the state of *Brittaine*, which was very much out of order, and in mutiny about the late Match; which beeing somewhat appeased, hee keepes a solemne Christmas at *Nants*, and Royally Feasts the Nobility of the Countrey.

1169. *Anno Reg.* 16.—Then returnes he into *England*, where, lest Peace (by reason of his long and often absence) might afflict and corrupt his subiects, hee lookes to that Diuine and Almighty worke of Kings, the administration of Iustice, appointing certayne Commissioners as Syndicqs to examine the abuses and excesses committed by his Officers, and grievously punishes the Shriefes of the Land, for extortion and bribery.

His Easter, he keepes at *Windsor*, whither repayres vnto him *William* King of *Scots* who lately succeeded *Malcom* his brother, and brings with him his younger brother *David*, both to congratulate the King of *Englands* returne, and also continue his clayme to those peeces in the North, which hee pretended to be vniustly detained from that Crowne. The King entertaynes him, as he had done his brother with fayre words, and tells him, *How it was not in his power, to do any thing therein, without the consent of the state in Parliament; which if he would attend, there should be that course taken, as hee hoped might giue him satisfaction.* In expectation whereof this King came often into *England*, and once attended the King in an expedition into *France*, as his Predecessor had done before.

The Pope writes to the Bishops of *England*.—But now all this while, the wrath of the Church continues, and the cloud hangs still ouer him, daily threatning the great thunder-bolt. Although it seemed the Pope of himselfe, was not very forward to proceede to that extreimity, but would gladly haue quieted the Arch-bishop otherwise; *Who* (hee sayd) *had taken an ill time for this businesse, the King being mighty, and the Church in trouble;* and therefore writes he his letters to the Bishops of

*London and Hereford, willing them to deale effectually with the King, and to admonish him to desist from intruding vpon the liberties of the Church, and to restore the Arch-bishop to his Sea and Dignity.*

The Bishops answer to the Popes Letter.—The Bishoppes wisely Answered the Popes Letter, in substance thus: *Wee haue (sayed they) done your Holinesse Message, and as much as was decent for the Maiestie of a King, instantly vrged him to satisfie your desire, made by vs: And if hee had erred | from the way of truth and Iustice, that he would not delay to returne thereunto; that he would not inhibit such as were desirous to visit the Church of Rome, hinder appeales, oppresse Churches and Church-men, or suffer others so to doe: That hee would call home our Father the Arch-bishop, &c. and persist in the workes of Piety; that hee by whom Kings Reigne might preserue vnto him his temporall Kingdome, and giue him an eternall in Heauen: And that vnlesse hee would yeelde to your Holy Admonitions, you, who had thitherto endured could in patience forbear no longer.* Besides, we added this of our selues, *how it was to be feared, if he amended not his errors, his Kingdome would not long stand, nor yet prosper.*

*The King receiued your admonitions with many thankses, much temperance and modestie, and answeres to euery point. First, hee protested that in no sort hee auerted his minde from your Holinesse, nor euer purposed so to doe, but so long as you shewed him fatherly Grace, hee would loue you as a Father; reuerence and cherish the Church as his Mother; and humbly obey your sacred Decrees, sauing his owne Dignity, and that of his Kingdome. And if of late he hath not respected you with any reuerence, the cause was that, hauing with all his affection, and all his power stood to you in your necessity, hee was not answered worthily to his deserts vpon his recourse to you by his Ambassadour, but in euery petition had the repulse. And for hindring any which are willing to visit your Holinesse, he answeres hee will not, nor hath hitherto done.*

But for *Appeales*, by the ancient custome of the Kingdome, *Hee challenges that honor, and cumber to himselfe: that no Clergyman for any ciuill cause shall goe out of the Land till hee had tried, whether he may obtaine his right by his Royall Authority, and Iustice at home; which if hee cannot, hee may (without any hinderance) when hee will, make his Appeale. Wherein, if any way hee doth preiudice Your Honour, hee offers, by the helpe of God to correct it, as it shall bee ordered by the Councell of the whole Church of his Kingdome. And for the Emperour, though hee knew him a Schismatique, hee neuer vnderstood hee was excommunicate. But if hee bee by vs informed thereof, or hath entred vnlawfull league with him, or any other, hee promises likewise to redresse the same, by the sayd Ecclesiasticall Councell of his Kingdome. And for our Father, the Lord of Canterbury (hee sayth) that hee neuer expelled him out of his Kingdome, but as hee went out of his owne accord, so also at his pleasure it was free for him to returne to his Church in peace: provided, that his Maiestie might bee satisfied concerning those complaints of his, and haue him to obserue his Royall Dignitie, And if it can bee prooued, that any Church, or Churchman, hath beene opprest by the King, or any of his, hee is ready to make full satisfaction, as shall be thought fit by the whole Councell, of the Church of his Kingdome.*

*This (say they) wee haue receiued in answeere from our Lord the King, and wish wee could haue had it fully according to your desire; but these things we thought good to notifie to your Highnesse, that your Discretion may perceiue what is like to bee the conclusion of this businesse. The King stands vpon the iustification of his owne cause, ready to obey the Councell and iudgement of the Church of England. Whereupon wee thought good to beseech your Highnesse, that you would moderate, for a time, that zeale (which by the fire of the diuine Spirit, is worthily inkindled, to reuenge any iniurie done to the Church of God) and forbear to pronounce any sentence of interdiction, or that last iudgement of abscision, whereby innumerable Churches may*

*be miserably subuerted, and both the King and an infinite number of people with him, irreuocably (which God forbid) auerted from your obedience.*

Then they tell him, *That better it were to haue a member bad, then cut off: abscision brought desperation: A skilfull Chirurgion might recouer an infected part, and how it were fitted to imploy some meanes to heale the Wound, then by cutting off a most noble part of the Church of God, to bring more disturbance to the same that hath too much already. Though the King were stiffe, they ought not to despaire of the grace of God; that a Kings stomacke was then to bee wonne, when hee had wonne, and might not blush to yeelde, when hee had ouercome: Patience, and Meekenesse, must pacifie him, &c. And in conclusion, wee speake foolishly (say they) but yet with all Charitie: if it come to passe, that the Lord of Canterbury loose both his goods; And liue besides in perpetuall exile; | and England, (which God forbid) fall away from your obedience, were it not better to forbear for a time, then with such zeale of seuerity to foster vp a party? what if persecution cannot seperate many of vs from you, yet will not there want knees to bow to Baal, and receiue the Pall of Canterbury at the hands of an Idoll, without choyce of Religion or Iustice: neither will there want suppliers of our Chayres that will obey him with all deuotion, and already many deuoure these hopes; wishing that scandalls may come, and straight wayes bee made crooked.*

Thus much out of their letters, which are the best peeces of History in the world, and shewe vs more of the inside of affayres, then any relations else. And by this we truely see what barres kept these two mighty powers backe from their wills, and yet how loude they threaten, and both afeard of each other.

Prince Henry crowned King. 1170. Anno Reg. 10.—But the King of England stood safe enough, and was like to haue his businesses runne in a strong and entire course, when by casting to make things safer then fast, hee layes open a way both to dis-joynt his owne power, and imbroyle his people with

diuision ; which was by the association of his sonne *Henry* in the gouernment : *an act without example in this Kingdome*, and strange that a Parliament, an assembly of the State, conuoked for the same businesse, would in so wise times, consent to communicate the Crowne, and make the common-wealth a Monster with two heads. But it seemes, the strong desire of the King was such, for the loue hee bare his sonne, as hee would not be denied in this motion, nor hold it a sufficient Security, to haue twice before caused all the Kingdome to take an Oath of Fealty vnto him, and to haue resigned, vnlesse hee were crowned King, as hee was, with all vsuall solemnities the 14 day of *Iune* 1170, by *Roger* Arch-bishop of *Yorke*, and had homage done vnto him that day by the King of *Scots*, *Dauid* his brother, and all the Nobility of *England*. But now with what reseruations this was done, we are not particularly informed : whether there was an equall participation of rule, or onely but of Title ; and that the Father, notwithstanding this Act, was to haue the especiall manage of the Gouernment, and the Sonne, though a King, yet a Sonne, with a limited power. Howsoever, this yong King shewed shortly after, *That a Crowne was no State to be made ouer in trust*, and layd much grieve, and repentance, vppon his Fathers forwardnesse.

What moued the King with this precipitation (to bee before hand with his Graue) may be deemed the ielousie hee had apprehended by his Mothers example, who *for all the Oath of Fealty so often taken for succession*, was yet put by it, through the working of the Clergy ; and now considering in what termes hee stood with them, and that although hee had wonne some few Bishops vnto him, was sure they loued him not, and what they might worke with the people, if himselfe should fayle, made him ouer-doe his worke.

The King of *France*, vnderstanding that his daughter was not Crowned with her husband (which by reason of her tender age was deferred) tooke it ill, and threatens King *Henry* the Father with Warre, if it were not presently done ; which causes

him to make more haste backe againe into *Normandy* (leauing the young King in *England*) to satisfie or preuent this quarrelling Prince.

*Beckets* submission to the King.—And whilst he remayned there, meanes was made that the Arch-bishop of *Canterbury*, (who had beene now six yeares in exile) was brought to haue conference with the King, by the mediation of the King of *France*, *Theobald* Earle of *Blois*, and diuers great Bishops; which the King of *England* was the more willing to accept, in regard hee saw this breach with the Church might much preiudice his temporall businesses, whensoever they should breake out: And how the Arch-bishop continually was working the Pope, and all the great Prelates of the Christian World against him: which, *How much such a party as swayed the Empire of Soules might doe in a time of zeale, against a Ruler of bodies*, was to bee considered. And therefore descends he from the hight of his will to his necessity, and they meete at *Montmirail* before the King of *France*, where the Arch-bishop kneeling at the feete of his Soueraigne Lord the King of *England*, sayd, *Hee would commit the whole cause in controuersie to his Royall Order, Gods honour onely reserued.* |

The Kings offer to *Becket*. *Beckets* reply.—The King (who had beene often vsed to that reseruatiō) grew into some choller, and sayd to the King of *France*, and the rest, *Whatsoever displeaseth this man, he would haue to be against Gods honor, and so by that shift, will challenge to himselfe all that belongs to me: But because, you shall not thinke me to go about to resist Gods honor, and him, in what shall bee fit, looke what the greatest & most holy of al his predecessors haue done to the meanest of mine let him doe the same to me, and it shall suffice.* VVhich answer beeing, beyond expectation, so reasonable, turn'd the opinion of all the company to the Kings cause, in so much as the King of *France*, sayd to the Arch-bishop, *Will you be greater then Saints? better than Saint Peter? what can you stand vpon? I see it is your fault, if your peace be not*

made. The Arch-bishop replies to this effect: *That as the authority of Kings had their beginning by degrees, so had that of the Church, which being now by the providence of God, come to that estate it was, they were not to follow the example of any, that had beene faint or yeelding in their places. The Church had risen, and increased out of many violent oppressions, and they were now to hold what it had gotten. Our Fathers (sayd hee) suffered all manner of afflictions, because they would not forsake the name of Christ, and shall I, to be reconciled to any mans fauour liuing, derogate any thing from his honour?*

The King and *Becket* accorded.—This hauty reply of a subject to so yeelding an offer of his Soueraigne, so much distasted the hearers, as they held the maintenance of his cause, rather to proceede from obstinacy then zeale, and with that impression, the conference for that time, brake vp. But after this, were many other meetings, and much debate about the businesse. And the King of *France* (at whose charge lay the Arch-bishop all this while) came to another conference with them, vppon the Confines of *Normandy*: *Where, the King of England tooke the Arch-bishop apart, and had long speech with him; twice they alighted from their horses, twice remounted, and twice the King held the Archbishops bridel, and so againe they part, prepared for an attonement, but not concluding any.* In the end by mediation of the Arch-bishop of *Rouen*, the matter is quietly ended before the Earle of *Bloys*, at *Amboys*. And thereupon *Henry* the Father, writes to *Henry* the son, beeing then in *England*, in this wise: *Know yee that Thomas Archbishop of Canterbury hath made peace with me (to my will), and therefore I charge you, that he and all his, haue peace; and that you cause to be restored vnto him, and to all such (as for him) went out of England, all their substances, in as full and honourable manner, as they held it, three monthes before their going, &c.* And thus by this letter wee see, in which King, the commaund lay.

*Becket* returnes into *England*.—The Arch-bishop returning

into *England* (not as one who had sought his peace, but enforced it) with larger power to his resolution then before, *Suspends by the Popes Bull, the Archbishop of Yorke from all Episcopall Office, for crowning the young King within the Province of Canterburie, without his leaue, and against the Popes Commandement; and without taking* (according to the custome) *the Cautionarie Oath, for conseruation of the liberties of the Church.* Hee brought also letters to suspend in like manner, *The Bishops of London, Salisburie, Oxford, Chester, Rochester, Saint Asaph, and Landaffe, for doing seruice at the Coronation, and vpholding the Kings cause against him.* And by these letters were they all to remayne suspended, till they had satisfied the Arch-bishop in so much as hee thought fit.

Thus to returne home, shewed that hee had the better of the time, and came all vntyed, which so terrified the Bishops that presently (hauing no other refuge) they repayre to the King in *Normandy*, and shewed him this Violent proceeding of the Arch-bishop, *How since his returne he was growne so imperious as there was no liuing vnder him.* Wherewith the King was so much mooued, as hee is sayd in extreame passion to haue vttered these words; *In what a miserable State am I, that cannot be quiet, in mine owne Kingdome, for one only Priest? Is there no man will ridde me of this trouble?* Whereupon (they report) foure Knights, Sir *Hugh Moruille*, Sir *William Tracy*, Sir *Richard Brittaine*, and Sir *Raynold Fitz Vrs*, (then attending vpon the King, and gessing his desire by his words) depart presently into *England*, to bee the vnfortunate executioners of the same; but by some it seemes rather, these foure Gentlemen were sent with Commission from the King to deale with the Arch-bishop in another manner, *And first to wish him to take his Oath of Fealty to the young King: then to restore these Bishops to the execution of their function: | and thirdly, to beare himselfe with moderation in his place,* whereby the Church might haue comfort vpon his returne, and the Kingdome quietnesse.

The murthering of *Becket*.—But they finding the Arch-bishop not answering their humour, but peremptory and vntractable, without regarding their Masters message, grew into rage, and first from threatning force, fell to commit it, and that in an execrable manner : putting on their armour (to make the matter more hideous) they entred into the Church, whither the Arch-bishop was with-drawne, the Monkes at Diuine Seruice ; and there calling him Traytor, and furiously reuiling him, gaue him many wounds, and at length strake out his braines, that with his blood besprinkled the Altar. His behauiour in this act of death, his courage to take it : his passionate committing the cause of the Church, with his soule, to God and his Saints : the place, the time, the manner and all aggrauates the hatred of the deede, and makes compassion and opinion, to be on this side.

The Murtherers miserable end.—The vnfortunate Gentlemen (hauing effected this great seruice, rifled the Arch-bishops house, and after weighing the foulennesse of what they had committed, and doubtfull whether the King, though they had done him a great pleasure, would seeme so to acknowledge it) withdrew themselues into the North-parts ; and from thence pursued, fled into seuerall Countreyes, where they all within foure yeares after (as is reported) dyed miserable Fugitiues.

The King of *France* informs the Pope of *Beckets* murder.—Soone ranne the rumor of this deed, with full mouth ouer all the Christian world : euery pen that had passion, was presently set on Worke. The King of *France* (himselfe) informes the Pope of the whole manner ; with aggrauation of the foulennesse thereof, and incites him to vse the most exquisit punishment he could, *To vnsheath Peters sword, to reuenge the death of the Martyr of Canterbury, whose blood cries out for all the Church, and whose diuine glory was already reuealed in miracles.*

The Earle of *Blois* informes likewise.—*Theobald* Earle of *Bloys*, a great and graue Prince (elder brother to King *Stephen*) sends likewise his information to the Pope, and shewes him,

*How he was at the peace-making betweene the King of England and this blessed Martyr; and with what a chearefull countenance, with what willingnesse the King confirmed the agreement, granting him power to vse his authoritie as it should please the Pope and him against those Bishops, which had contrary to the right and dignitie of the Church of Canterbury, presumed to intrude the New King into the Royall throne. And this hee would iustifie by his Oath, or howsoever; and in this peace (sayth he) the man of God doubting nothing, puts his necke vnder the sword: this innocent Lambe the morrow vpon Saint Innocents day, suffered Martyrdome: the iust blood was shed, where the shot of our saluation, the blood of Christ is offered. And then, how Court dogs, the Kings familiars and domestickes, were his ministers to execute this horrible act, concluding with an exhortation likewise of reuenge.*

The Arch-bishop of Sens writes to the Pope.—But William Arch-bishop of Sens comes with a more maine out-cry, as if he would wake the Pope, were he neuer so dead a sleepe; and tels him, *How hee was appointed ouer Nations and Kingdomes, to bind their Kings in fetters, and their Nobles with manacles of Iron: that all power both in Heauen and Earth was giuen to his Apostle-ship: bids him looke how the Bore of the Wood had rooted vp the Vineyard of the Lord of Sabaoth, &c. and all, in that most powerfull phrase of holy writ. And after, hauing bitterly enveyed against the King, vses these words: It imports you, O most milde keeper of the Walls of Ierusalem, to reuenge that which is past, and provide for the future. What place shall be safe, if the rage of tyrannie shall imbrew the Sancta Sanctorum with blood, and teare in peeces the Vice-gerents of Christ, the foster children of the Church, without punishment? Arme therefore all the Ecclesiasticall power you may, &c.*

The King declares his innocency by Embassage to the Pope. Pope and Cardinals denied audience, refused conference.—Such and so great was the vprore of the Church, raised vpon

these motives, as notwithstanding the King of *England*, (then the greatest Prince of all the Christian world) imployed the most especial men could be chosen in all his Dominions, *for reputation, learning and iudgement, to declare his innocencie to the Pope: to vow and protest that he was so far from willing such a deede to be done, as hee was from doing it himselfe, and how grievously hee took the matter when he heard thereof*; yet so deep was the impression settled before hand, and his name made so odious at *Rome*, as not onely the Pope denied Audience to his Ambassadors, but euery Cardinall, and all other his Ministers, refused to haue any cō / ference with them. Which, with the hard passage they had in going thither, by the many dangers and restraints they endured, and now the contempt they found there, did (as they signified to the King) much discourage them. Yet for all this, were there those braue Spirits among them, (as great Princes haue alwayes great Ministers) that neuer gaue ouer working to cleare their maisters honour, by Apologies, Remonstrances, and all whatsoever wit could deuise; and dealt so, as they kept off the great confounding blow of the highest Censure, though it were euery day threatned and expected. And hauing (by grauely vrging the mischiefes might follow in the Church, if a King of so great a State and stomacke, should bee driuen to take desparate courses) giuen some pause and allay to the first heate; they timed it out all that Spring, and a great part of the next Summer; when, although they could giue the King no great security, yet they aduertise him of hope. But the sending of two Cardinalls *à Latere*, *Gratianus* and *Viuianus* downe into *Normandie*, did exceedingly vexe him. For they were rough against him, and would haue interdicted him, and his Dominions: but beeing fore-warned of their comming and intention, he appeales to the presence of the Pope, and so put off that trouble. Returning out of *Normandy*, into *England*, hee giues strict commandement, *That no brieife-carrier, of what condition or order soeuer, without giuing good security for his*

*behaviour to the King and Kingdome, bee suffered to passe the Seas.*

The Conquest of *Ireland*.—Notwithstanding all the vexation the Church put this King into, hee left nothing vndone that concerned the aduancement of his affaires, but as if now the rather, to shewe his power and greatnesse, takes this time for an expedition into *Ireland* (hauing commaunded a Nauie of foure hundred shippes to bee readie at *Milford Hauen* for the transportation of Men, Victuals, and Armour) and sets foorth in the beginning of *November*: an vnseasonable time, both for those Seas, and the inuasion of a Countrey not well knowne. But the businesse (it seemes) was well prepared for him, hauing had an intention thereof, euer since the second yeare of his Reigne, in which *Hee sent a solemn Ambassage to Pope Adrian the fourth, to craue leaue for the subdument of that Country, vnder pretence of reducing those rude people from their vicious fashions to the faith and way of truth.* Which the Pope willingly granted, and returnes the Ambassadors, with an aut[h]enticall concession thereof in writing, to this effect. *First, shewing how laudable a thing it was, and how fitting the magnificence of so mighty a King, to propagate his glorious name on earth, and heape up reward of eternall felicity in Heauen, by extending the bounds of the Church, reducing rude and vnlettered people from their vicious manners, to the verity of the Christian faith and ciuility. And then giues him power to inuade the same, and to exetute whatsoeuer should be to the Honor of God, and good of the Country, with reseruatiō of Church-rights, and Peter-pence (a penny of euery house yearely which hee had promised by his Ambassadors) and so concludes, with an exhortation to plant men of good and examplar life in the Clergy, &c.*

*Dermots* complaint against *O Conor* to King *Henry*.—But the King at that time, hauing other occasions, left off the purpose of this, which comes now of late to bee againe imbraced by this meanes: *Dermot Mac Murrgh* one of the fiue Kings

which then ruled that Island, comes vnto him into *Aquitaine* to craue his ayde against *Rodoricke* the Great, called *O Conor Dun*, King of *Connaught*, who contending for the Soueraigntie of the whole, had chaced him out of his Dominion of *Lemster*.

*Dermots* offences.—The King of *England* (glad to finde a doore thus opened to his intention, that might yeeld passage of it selfe without beeing broken vp) intertaynes this eielected King with promises of ayde; and though hee could not as then furnish him, beeing ingaged in other great affaires, hee yet permits such of his subiects as would, to aduenture their Fortunes with him. But the occasion of dissention, betweene these two Irish Kings was indeede foule on the part of *Dermot*, who had corrupted, and stolne away the wife of *Rodoricke*, and for that odious iniury, with his iniustice to his people (the common causes of ruining and transferring Kingdomes) hee was by strong hand chaced out of his Dominion of *Lemster*; and thereupon makes out for *Forraine* ayde. And (hauing thus delt with the King of *England*) he betakes him into *Wales*, where first he wrought one *Robert Fitz / Stephen*, a man of a desperate Fortune (yet able to draw many voluntaries) to contract with him; and afterward *Richard* (of the House of *Clare*) surnamed *Strong-bow*, Earle of *Pembrooke*, commonly called (of his chiefe seate in *Monmouth-shiere*) Earle of *Chepstow* or *Strigill*, a Lord of high courage and worthinesse, which made him well followed: and of great possessions both in *England* and *Normandy*, which gaue him meanes for his entertainments. *Fitz Stephen* was perswaded by promise of rich rewards: The Earle, of marriage with *Eua* the daughter of *Dermot*, and the succession of the kingdome of *Lemster*.

The Conquest of *Ireland*, the beginning of *May* 1170, *Anno Reg.* 16.—*Fitz Stephen* with *Maurice Fitz Gerard*, his halfe brother by the mother, passed ouer first with a small company and landed at the place called by the *Irish Bag-bun*, which in *English* signifies *Holy*, and therefore interpreted as presaging good successe, whereof this rime retaines yet the memory, *At*

*the head of Bagge and Bun, Ireland was lost and wonne.* And the next day after arriued at the same place, *Maurice de Prendergast*, with other men at armes (*Triginta Militibus*), and many Archers in two ships, parcel of *Fitz Stephens* forces, which from thence marched to the City of *Weishford*, with Banners displayed, in so strange a forme and order (though their number were not foure hundred) as the *Irish* vnacquainted with so vnusuall a face of Warre, were ouercome with feare, and rendred vp themselues to their mercy, with their City of *Weishford*, which with the Countrey about was giuen by *Dermot* to *Robert Fitz Stephen*, for an encouragement to him, and hope to others. And there was planted the first Colonie of the English, which euer since hath continued, retayning still in a sort our antient attire, and much of our language, properly to that City and Countrey about, and called by a distinct name, *Weishford speech*.

1171. *Anno Reg. 17.*—The next yeare are new supplies sent out of *Wales*, and after, vpon intelligence of good successe, the Earle of *Pembroke* arriues in the Bay of *Waterford* with two hundred men at armes, and a thousand other souldiers, takes the Towne, which was then called *Porthlarge*, puts the inhabitants to the sword (to giue terror to others, and make roome for his owne people) and there *Dermot* giues him his daughter in marriage, with the dowry of his Countrey, which, after his wickednesse had done, hee liued not to see more yeares (hauing had too many by this) and dyes miserably, leauing the Stile of *Ningal* (which signifies) *the strangers Friend*, added to his name in memory of his vnnaturall forsaking his owne Nation.

*Strong-bow*, after hauing secured the places gotten, marches (with those small forces he had) ouer the Island without resistance. *Rodoricke* the great (shewing himselfe but a little Prince) kept in the *Wildes* and fastnesses of *Connaught*, and neuer came to appeare before the enemy; who passing through the Country at his pleasure, takes what pledges hee would

the inhabitants to secure their obedience, and with as little labour possest himselfe of the City of *Dublin* the head of the Island.

Thus *Wales* got vs first the Realme of *Ireland*, and (which is most strange) without stroake of battaile: a thing scarce credible, that a Countrie so populous, a Nation of that disposition, should not lift vp a hand to defend it selfe, hauing, it seemes, eyther neglected the vse of armour, or else neuer beene acquainted with them (other then in a naked manner of domesticke fight one with another) whereby, the terror of strange and neuer before seene forces in order of Warre, layed them prostrate to the mercy of the *Ouer-runner*.

1172. *Anno Reg.* 18.—But the King of *England* aduertised of the prosperous successe of these Aduenturers and the estate of the Countrey grew in iealousie of them, thinking they presumed farther then their subiection would allow, and would make themselues that which they must be made by him, and takes away the glory of the worke that should be onely his; causes proclamation to be made: *That no vessell should carry any thing out of his Dominions into Ireland, and that all his subiects should returne from thence, and leaue off their attempts, otherwise to forfeit their Estates at home.* And withall sends ouer *William Fitz Adelm*, and *Robert Fitz Barnard* with some forces to prepare the way for him, who followed shortly after, and lands eight miles from *Waterford* the Eue of Saint *Luke*, *Anno* 1172. beeing the third yeare after the first *Inuasion* made by *Fitz Stephen*. |

The *Irish* kings submission.—At his first landing, a white *Hart* starting out of a Bush was taken, and presented to him, interpreted as a presage of a white Victory. The next day hee marches to *Waterford* where he staid fifteene daies; and thither came to him of their owne accord, the Kings of *Corke*, *Limricke*, *Oxery*, *Meth*, and all of any power in *Ireland* (except *Rodorick* King of *Connaught*, who still kept himselfe in the fastnesse of his Countrie) and submitted themselues with all the

*Clergy, taking their Oath of Fealty to him, and the yong King, and their Successors for euer ;* so these deuided Princes holding no common Councell for the publique safety : rather then to ioyne those hands that had so often scratched each other, fell all from themselues, and with the same emulation they had in liberty, stroue for their seruitude who would be first to receiue a forraine maister.

*Henries reformation of Ireland.*—From *Waterford* the King goes to *Dublin*, where, hee holds an Assembly of all these subiect Kings, with the Lords Spirituall and Temporall of *Ireland*, for the further ratification of their allegiance, and the ordering and reformation of the State. Which done hee causes the Bishops with the Clergie there to assemble at *Cassell*, and appoynts an especiall Chaplaine of his owne, with the Arch-deacon of *Landaffe* to bee assistants and aduisors vnto them for reformation of Church-businesses : which seemes to haue beene as disordred as the people. For though the Irish had beene long before Christians, it was after a wilde and mixt fashion, and therefore, according to his promise made to the late Pope, and to do a work pleasing to the present, it was decreed, *That all Church-lands should bee free from exaction of secular men ; and that from thenceforth, all Diuine things should be ordered, and vsed in euery part of Ireland according to the manner of the Church of England,* beeing fit (as sayth the Cannon) *that as Ireland hath by God's mercy obtained a Lord and King out of England, so from thence they should receiue a better forme of life, and manners, then heretofore they vsed.*

His *Christmasse* hee keepes at *Dublin*, where he royally feasts all Kings and great men of the Countrey ; the rest of his beeing there hee imployes in fortifying and planting Garrisons where most need required : he makes *Hugh Lacy* Iustice of all *Ireland*, giues him the keeping of *Dublin*, and besides confirmed vnto him and his heires, by his Charter, the Country of *Meth* to hold the same in Fee, for the seruice of a hundreth

Knights: hee bestowes on *Robert Fitz Bernard* the keeping of the Townes of *Waterford*, and *Weisford* (which he tooke from *Fitz Stephen* the first inuador) with charge to build Castles in them; and to humble the Earle *Strongbow*, and leuell him with the rest of his subiects, he takes from him all his dependants, and makes them his.

So was it but his winters worke to get a kingdome, which though thus easily won, it prooued more difficult and costly in the keeping, by reason the prosecution of a full establishment thereof was neyther by him or his successors (hauing other diuertments) euer throughly accomplished.

His purgation for *Beckets* murther. Both Kings sweare to these Articles.—On *Easter* monday hee sets out for *England*, where hee makes no stay, but takes the yong King along in his Company, and passes ouer into *Normandy* to meete other two Legates (*Theodinus* and *Albertus*) who were sent from Pope *Alexander* (but in milder fashion then the last) to examine the murther of the late Arch-bishop *Becket*. Foure moneths were spent in debating the matter, and in the end, the King by his Oath taken vpon the Reliques of Saints, and the Holy Euangelists, before the two Legates in the presence of King *Henry* the son, the Arch-bishop of *Rouen*, and all the Bishops, and Abbots of *Normandy* in the Citie of *Auranches* purged himselfe, of either commanding or consenting to the murther. Yet for that he doubted lest they who committed the same might be moued thereunto by seeing him disturbed, and in passion: hee tooke the same Oath; that in satisfaction thereof, hee would faithfully performe these Articles following: *First, neuer to forsake Pope Alexander, nor his Catholicke successors so long as they vsed him as a Catholick King. Secondly, that Appeales should freely be made to the Pope, in causes Ecclesiasticall.* Prouided, that if any were suspected, to worke euill to him, or his kingdome, they should then put in security before they departed. *Thirdly, that hee would (from Christmas next for three years to come) vndertake the Crosse, & the sommer*

following, in person go to Ierusalem, vnlesse he were staid by the Pope, or his successors, or imployed against the Sarasins in Spaine. Fourthly, that in the meane time, he should deliuer so much money into the Templars hands, as by their opinion would entertaine 200. souldiers in the holy War for one yeare. Fifthly, call home all such as had endured banishment for the Arch-bishop. Sixthly, restore his possessions. Seuently, and lastly, abolish all such customes as in his time had bene introduced to the preiudice of the Church. After himselfe had sworne, he caused King Henry his sonne to sweare to all these Articles, except such as concerned his owne person. And for a more Memory in the Roman Church, hee caused his Seale to bee set vnto them, with that of the two Cardinalls. So ended this tedious businesse, that made more noyse in the World, then any hee had, and bowed him more: beeing his ill Fortune, to grapple with a man of that free resolution as made his sufferings, his glory; had his ambition, beyond this World; set vp his rest, not to yeelde to a King; was onely ingaged to his cause; had opinion, and beleefe, to take his part: Which so much preuailed, as the King seeking to maister him, aduanced him; and now is hee faine to kneele, and pray to his Shrine, whom hee had disgraced in his person; and hauing had him aboue his will, whilst he liued, hath him now ouer his Faith beeing dead. And yet forty eight yeares after this, sayth the French Historj, it was disputed among the Doctors of *Paris*, whether hee were damned or saued: And one *Roger* a *Norman* maintayned, hee had iustly deserued death, for rebelling against his Soueraigne, the Minister of God.

Henry the son is againe crowned with *Margaret* his wife.— To make the better way to the ending of this businesse, and content the King of *France*; Henry the sonne is againe Crowned, and with him *Margaret* his Wife, with permission shortly after, to goe visite *Paris*; where, this young King, apt enough (though not to know himselfe) yet to know his State, receiued those instructions as made his ambition quite turne

off his Obedience, and conceiue, *How to be a King, was to be a power aboue, and vndeuideable.*

1173. *Anno Reg.* 19. The homage of *Raymond* Earle of Saint *Gyles* for the Earledome of *Tholouse*.—And to further the birth of this apprehension, fell out this occasion, The Father euer awake to aduance his greatnesse, takes a iourney in person into *Auernia*, and so to *Monferrato*; and there purchases a match for the price of fīue thousand Markes, for his yongest sonne *Iohn*, with *Alice* the eldest daughter of *Hubert*, Earle of *Mauriena* (then as it seemes) Lord of *Piemont* and *Sauoy*, with condition to haue with her, the inheritance of all those Countreyes, contayning many great Signories, Cities, and Castles, specified in *Roger Houeden*, with all the circumstances and couenants, very remarkeable, of the contract. So vnto greatnesse (that easier encreases then begins) is added more meanes, and euery way opens to this actiue, and powerfull King, aduantages of State, in so much, as the King of *France*, was euen surrounded with the power, and dependances of this mighty King of *England*, whose Fortunes most of all the neighbour Princes (which subsist by other then their owne power) now follow. And being returned from concluding this match in *Piemont*, there comes to him lying at *Limoges*, *Raymond* Earle of Saint *Gyles* (by whom was giuen the first affront hee had in *France*) now to doe homage vnto him from the Earledome of *Tholouse*: And there became the man of the King of *England*, and of his sonne *Richard* Earle of *Poictou*, to hold *Tholouse* from them (by hereditary right) for seruice of comming vnto them vppon their sommons, and remayning in their seruice forty dayes at his owne charge: And if they would entertayne him longer, to allow him reasonable expences. Besides, the Earle should pay yearly, for *Tholouse*, and the appertinances, a hundred markes of siluer, or ten Horses, worth ten Markes a peece.

*Henry* the son takes displeasure against his father.—About the same time also came the Earle *Hubert* to *Limoges* (to

know what Land the King of *England*, would assure his sonne *John*), who resolved to giue vnto him the Castles of *Chinon*, *Lodun* and *Mirable*. Wherewith King *Henry* the sonne grew much displeased, and heere moued his Father, eyther to resigne vnto him, the Dutchy of *Normandie*, the Earledome of *Aniou*, or the Kingdome of *England* for his maintenance : in which motion, hee was the more egar beeing incensed by the King of *France*, and the discontented Lords, both of *England*, and *Normandy*, who were many, and falne, or wrought from the Father, vpon new hopes, and the aduantage of a deuided Soueraignty.

And though there were many other occasions of this defection of the sonne, from the / Father ; yet, that this for these Castles should first be taken (may seeme to bee the VVorke of GODS especiall iudgement) beeing those peeces, which him-selfe had taken from his owne naturall brother *Geffery*, contrary to his Oath, made vnto his Father, as is before related : so (as if to tell iniustice, that it must bee duely repayed) the same Castles are made to bring mischief vppon him, and to giue a beginning to the foulest discorde that could bee : VVherein hee had not onely the Children of his owne body, but the VVife of his bed to conspire, and practise against him.

For, hereuppon the sonne suddainly breaking away from the Father came to *Paris*, where, the King of *France* (who had no other meanes to preuent the ouer-growing of a neighbour but to deuide him) sommons and solicites the Princes of *France*, and all the friends hee could make, to ayde King *Henry* the sonne against the father, and to take their Oath, *eyther to disposses him of his Estate, or bring him to their owne conditions*. The young King likewise swears vnto them, *Neuer to haue peace with his Father without their consents, and also swears to giue vnto Phillip Earle of Flanders, for his ayde, a thousand pounds English by the yeare, with the County of Kent, Douer and Rochester Castles : To Mathew Earle of Bologne brother to the sayd Earle, for his seruice, Kerton Soak in Lindsey, the*

*Earldome of Morton with the Honor of Heize: To Theobald Earle of Bloys, two hundred pounds by yeare in Aniou: the Castle of Amboys with all the right hee pretended in Tureine, &c.* And all these Donations with diuers others, hee confirmed by his *new Seale*, which the King of *France* caused to be made. Besides, by the same Seale, *He confirmed to the King of Scots, for his aide, all Northumberland vnto Tyne: and gaue to the brother of the same King, for his seruice, the Earledomes of Huntingdon and Cambridge. To the Earle Hugh Bigot the Castle of Norwich: other Earles of England, as Robert Earle of Leicester, Hugh Earle of Chester, Roger Mowbray, &c. had likewise their rewards and promises of the Lyons skin, that was yet aliue.*

Besides, they draw into their party *Richard and Geffery*, whose youths (apt to bee wrought on, for increase of their allowance) are easily intised; and with them their mother inraged with ieaousie, and disdaine for her husbands conceiued abuse of her bed. So that, this great King in the midst of his glory, about the twentieth yeare of his Reigne, comes suddainly forsaken of his owne people, and is driuen through distrust to hire, and entertayne strange forces; procuring twenty thousand *Brabansons* (which were certayne Mercenaries commonly called the Routs or Costerels) for the recouery and holding of his Estate. And some few faithfull Ministers hee had (notwithstanding this generall defection) who tooke firmly to him: as *William Earle Mandeuile, Hugh de Lacy, Hugh de Beauchamp, &c.*

But howsoever we haue seene the best of this Kings glory, and though hee had after this, good successes, hee had neuer happinesse; labour hee did by all meanes to haue qualified the heate of his distempered sonne, by many mediations of peace: offering all conuenient allowances for his Estate, but all would not preuaile: his sword is drawne, and with him the King of *France* with all his forces enters vpon his Territories on that side the Sea; on this the King of *Scots* seizes vpon *Northum-*

*berland*; and makes great spoyles. The olde King complains to the Emperour, and all the neighbour Princes his friends, of the vnnaturall courses of his sonne, and of his owne improuident aduancing him. *William* King of *Sicile* writes, and condoles his misfortunes, but lay too farre off to helpe him.

The King of *France* besieges *Vernoul*, a place of great strength and importance, which *Hugh de Lacy* and *Hugh de Beauchamp* valiantly defended, and after a monthes siege, they of the Towne (victualls fayling) obtayned truce of the King of *France*, and permission to send vnto their Soueraigne for succour, *Which if it came not within three dayes, they would render the Cittie, and in the meane time their Hostages.* The peremptorie day was the Eue of Saint *Lawrence*. The King of *France* with King *Henry* the sonne, and with diuers great Lords and Bishops swore, if they rendred the Cittie at the day appoynted, their hostages should bee re-delivered, and no damage done to the Cittie. /

King *Henry* the Father with all the forces he could make, came iust at the limited day; disposes his Armie to strike Battaile with his enemies; but the King of *France* to auoyde the same, sends the Arch-bishop of *Sens*, and the Earle of *Bloys* to mediate a parle, which was appoynted the morrow: this day lost, lost *Vernoul*. For, to the morrow Parle, the King of *France* neyther comes, nor sends; but had entrance into the Towne (according to couenants) which contrary to his Oath, hee sackes, takes with him the hostages, and spoyle thereof: remooues his Campe, and leaues the King of *England* disappoynted; who that night, after hauing persued the flying Army with some spoyle, enters into *Vernoul* and the morrow surprises *Danuile* a Castle of his enemies, with many Prisoners. Thence he goes to *Rouen*, whence, hee sent his *Brabansons* into *Brittaine* against *Hugh* Earle of *Chester*, and *Ralph Fulgiers*, who had possest themselues almost of the whole Country; but beeing not able to resist the Kings forces in the Field, they with all the great men in those parts, and that side

of *France*, recouered the Castle of *Dole*; where they Fortified and kept themselues, till King *Henry* the Father came in person, besieged and tooke it; and with them, about foure score Lords, men of name and action. Whereuppon all the rest of the Countrey yeelded themselues.

This ouerthrow beeing of such import, so terrified the Aduersaries, as they negotiate a Peace, and a Parle is appointed betweene *Gisors* and *Try*, wherein the King of *England*, (though he had the better of the day) condescended to make offer to his sonne *Of halfe the reuenues of the Crowne of England*, with foure conuenient Castles therein; or if hee had rather remayne in *Normandie*, halfe the reuenues thereof, and all the reuenues of the Earledome of *Aniou*, &c. To his sonne *Richard* he offers halfe the reuenues of *Aquitaine* and foure Castles in the same. To *Geffery*, the Land that should come vnto him by the daughter of the Earle *Conon*. Besides, he submitted himselfe to the arbitration of the Arch-bishop of *Tarento*, and the Popes Legates, to adde any allowance more as in their iudgments should bee held fit, reseruing vnto himselfe his Iustice and Royall power: which yeelding grants, shewed how much hee desired this peace.

But it was not in the purpose of the King of *France*, that the same should take effect: for such peruersnesse and indignitie, was offered to King *Henry* in this Treaty, as *Robert* Earle of *Leicester*, is sayde to haue reproached him to his face, and offered to draw his sword vpon him; so that, they brake off in turbulent manner, and their troupes fell presently to bickering betweene *Curteles* and *Gisors*, but the French had the worse.

The Earle of *Leicester* with an Army, makes ouer into *England*, is receyued by *Hugh Bigot*, into the Castle of *Fremingham*. *Richard de Lucy* Chiefe Iustice of *England*, and *Humphrey Bohun* the Kings Constable, being vpon the borders of *Scotland*, hearing thereof, makes truce with the King of Scots. And haste to *Saint Edmonsbury* where the Earles of

*Cornwall, Gloucester, and Arundell* ioyned with them: they encounter the Earle of *Leicester*, at a place called *Farnham*, ouerthrew his Army, slew tenne thousand Flemings; tooke him, his Wife, and diuers great Prisoners, which were sent vnto the King in *Normandy*, who, with his Army was not there idle, but daily got Castles, and Forts from his enemies, vntill Winter constraind both Kings to take truce till Easter following; and the like did the Bishop of *Duresme* with the king of *Scots*, for which hee gaue him three thousand markes of silver, to bee payed out of the Lands of the Barons of *Northumberland*.

The Spring came on, and the truce expired: King *Henry* the Sonne, and *Phillip* Earle of *Flaunders*, are ready at *Graueling*, with a great Army for *England*. The King of *Scots* is entered *Northumberland*, and sends his brother *David* with a power to succour the remnant of the forces, of the Earle of *Leicester*, which held the Towne of *Leicester*, but without successe: for *Richard Lucy*, and the Earle of *Cornwall* had before rased the City, and taken *Robert Mowbray*, comming likewise to ayde those of the Castle.

1174. *Anno Reg. 20.* *Henry* the fathers arriuall in *England*. King *Henry* visites *Beckets* Sepulcher.—King *Henry* the Father vpon his sonnes preparation for *England*, drawes his forces from his other imployments, and brings them downe to *Barb-fleet*, arriues at *Southampton* with / his Prisoners, Queene *Elionor*, *Margaret* the wife of his sonne *Henry*, the Earles of *Leicester* and *Chester*, and from thence goes to *Canterbury* to visit the Sepulcher of his owne Martyr, and performe his vowes for his Victories. And they write how comming within sight of the Church, *He alights, and went three miles on his bare feete, which with the hard stones were forced to yeeld bloody tokens of his deuotion on the way.* And as if to recompence (the merrit of this Worke) they note, *How the very day when hee departed from Canterbury, the King of Scots to be ouerthrowne and taken at Alnwick, by the Forces of the Knights of Yorke-shiere, which*

are named to be: *Robert de Stuteuile*, *Odonel de Humfreuile*, *William de Vescy*, *Ralph de Glanuile*, *Ralph de Tilly*, and *Bernard Baliol*.

The King of Scots his Prisoner.—*Lewis* King of *France*, hearing of King *Henries* passage into *England*, and the taking of the King of *Scots*, calls backe *Henry* the sonne, and the Earle of *Flaunders* from *Graelin*, where they stayed, expecting the Winde, and besieged *Roan* on all sides sauing that of the River. The whilst King *Henry* is quieting and settling the State of *England*, where hee had first the Castle of *Huntingdon* rendred vnto his mercy, sauing the liues, and members of the Defendants; then the Castles of *Fremingham* and *Bungaie*, which the Earle of *Bigot* helde by force of *Flemings*, for whom the Earles submission could hardly obtayne pardon, but in the ende they were sent home. From thence hee goes to *Northampton*; Where, hee receiues the King of *Scots* his prisoner, and the Castles of *Duresme*, *Norham*, and *Aluerton* rendred into his hands by the Bishop of *Duresme*; who, for all his seruice done in the North, stood not cleare in the Kings opinion. There came likewise thither *Roger de Mowbray* yeelding vp himselfe with his Castle of *Treske*: The Earle *Ferrers*, his Castles of *Tutsbury*, and *Duffield*: *Anketill*, *Mallory* and *William Diue*, Constables of the Earle of *Leicester*, the Castles of *Leicester*, *Montsorill* and *Groby*; so that within three weekes, all *England* was quieted, and all without drawing of sword, which in those manly dayes seemed onely reserued for the field.

King *Henry* fauours the *French* army.—This done, and supplied with one thousand Welshmen: King *Henry* with his Prisoners, the King of *Scots*, the Earles of *Leicester* and *Chester*, passes ouer into *Normandy*, to the reliefe of *Roan*: where those thousand Welshmen sent ouer the Riuer *Siene*, entred, and made way through the Campe of the King of *France*, slew a hundred of his men, and recouered a Woode without any losse of theirs. After which exployt, the King of *England*

(causing the gates of the City, to be set open, the Barracadoes taken away, the trenches they had made, betweene the French Campe and the City, to bee filled vp againe, with rubbish and timber) marched foorth with troupes, to prouoke the enemy, but without any answere at all. In the ende the King of *France*, sends away the weakest of his people before, and followed after with the rest, vppon sufferance of the King of *England*, by the mediation of the Arch-bishop of *Sens*, and the Earle of *Blois*, who vndertooke that hee should the next day come to a parle of peace ; which hee performed not.

The King and his sonnes reconciled as the Charter of Peace shewes.—But shortly after (seeing this action had so little aduantaged eyther him, or those for whom hee pretended to haue vndertaken it) hee imployes the former Agents againe to the King of *England*: and peace, with a reconciliation is concluded betweene him, and his sonnes. But with more reseruatiō on his part, then had beene by the former treaty offered, as hauing now, more of power, and the aduantage of Fortune ; and yet yeelding so much, as shewed, *The goodnesse of his Nature was not ouer-swayed by his ambition* ; all his proceeding in this Warre witnessing, that *necessity did euer worke more then his will.* (*Roger Houed.*)

And at the signing of the Charter of this Peace, when his sonne *Henry* would haue done him homage (which is personall seruice) hee refused to take it ; because hee was a King, but receiued it of *Richard*, and *Geffery*. Yet after this, *Henry* the sonne to free his Father of all scruple, became his Liege-man, and swore Fealty vnto him against all men, in the presence of the Arch-bishop of *Rouen*, the Bishop of *Bayeux*, the Earle *Mandeuille*, and a great Nobility.

At the Concluding of this same Peace, the Earle of *Flaunders* yeelded up to King *Henry* the Father, the Charter made vnto him by the sonne for the remuneration, and had another confirmed for the pension hee had yearely out of *England* before this War, which was 1000. *Markes out of the Exchequer,*

afterward granted vpon condition of *Homage*, and for finding the King of England yearly five hundred souldiers for the space of forty daies vpon summons giuen.

This same businesse ended, the Father, and the Sonne makes their Progresses into all their Prouinces on that side, to visite and reforme the disorders of Warre, and to settle their Affayres there. *Richard* is sent into *Aquitaine*: and *Gefferie* into *Brittaine*, vpon the same businesse, and there left with their Counsells to looke to their owne.

1175. *Anno Reg. 21.* All Vacancies supplied by the King.—The two Kings, Father and Sonne shortly after returne into *England*, where reformation in the Gouernment needed as much as in *France*; and heere had the Archbishop of *Canterbury* summoned a Councell of the Clergie, wherein were many enormities of the Church reformed, as may bee seene in the Canons of that Synod. The King supplies all Vacancies, and giues to *Iohn de Oxenford*, (that great Minister of his) the Bishopricke of *Norwich*: Then takes hee into his hands all the Castles he could seize vpon; amongst other the Tower of *Bristoll*, which was rendered by the Earle of *Glocester*, and was neuer in his hands before. Hee takes penalties both of Clerkes and Lay-men, who had trespassed his Forrests in time of Hostilitie: for which he is taxed of wrong, *Richard Lucy* Iustice of *England*, hauing warrant by the Kings precept to discharge them for the same. But the profit which they yeelded him, made him take the stricter regard therein. For after the death of *Alaine de Neuile* which had beene chiefe Iustice of all the Forrests of *England*, hee deuides them into diuers parts, appointing to euery part foure Iustices, whereof two to be Clerkes, and two Knights, and two Seruants of his Houshold, to be Keepers of the Game ouer all other Forresters, eyther of the Kings, Knights, or Barons whatsoeuer, and gaue them power to implea, according to the Assise of the Forrest.

1176. *Anno Reg. 22.*—The King being at *Yorke*, there came vnto him *William* King of *Scots*, with almost all the Bishops,

Abbots, and Nobility of *Scotland*, and confirmed the Peace, and finall concorde which had formerly beene, in the time of his imprisonment, at *Faleise* in *Normandy*, before all the greatest Estates of both Kingdomes; the Tenour whereof is to be seene in *Roger Houeden*.

After this, a Councell is called at *Windsor*, whether repayre certayne Bishops of *Ireland*, and the Chancelour of *Rodorick* King of *Connaught*, for whom a finall concord is concluded, vpon doing Homage, Fealty, and a Tribute to be payd, which was, *Of euery ten Beasts, one sufficient Hide, within his Kingdome, and those Prouinces that held thereof.*

The Kingdome deuided into sixe parts for Iustice.—VVithin a while after, a Councell or Parliament is assembled at *Nottingham*, and by aduice and consent thereof, the King caused *The Kingdome to bee deuided into sixe parts, and constitutes for euerie parte three Iustices itinerants, causing them to take an Oath vpon the Holy Euangelists, faithfully for themselues to obserue, and cause inuiolably to be obserued of all his Subiects of England, the Assises made at Claringdone, and renued at Northampton*, which Assises were chiefly for *Murther, Theft, Robbery, and their receiuers: for deceipts, and burning of Houses*, which facts if found by the *Verdict of twelue men, the accused* were to passe the tryall of *Water Ordeil*, whereby, if not acquitted, *their punishment, was losse of a leg, or Banishment*, that Age seemed to hold it a greater example of a Malefactor miserably liuing, then of one dead, for as yet they came *not so farre as blood*, in those cases.

And yet wee finde in the Reigne of this King, that one *Gilbert Plumton* Knight, accused for a Rape, before *Ranulph de Glanuille*, Chiefe Iustice of *England* (desirous, (sayth *Houeden*) by vniust sentence to condemne him) was adiudged, to bee hanged on a Gibbet; VVhereunto, when hee was brought, and in the hands of the Executioner, the people ranne out crying, *That an innocent and iust Person ought not so to suffer.* *Balduin* Bishop of *Worcester*, a religious man and fearing God,

hearing the clamor of the people, and the iniury done to this miserable Creature, came foorth, and / forbade them, *from the part of the Omnipotent God, and vnder paine of Excommunication, that they should not put him to death that day, being Holy, and the Feast of Saint Mary Magdalen*; whereupon the execution was put off till the morrow. That night meanes was wrought to the King, who commaunded *a stay to bee made till other order were taken*, being informed that for the enuy which *Glanuile* bare to this *Plumton*, hee was desirous to put him to death, in regard hee had married the daughter of *Roger Gulwast* an inheritrix, whom hee would haue had *Reiuer* his Shrieve of *Yorke-shiere* to haue had; which act leaues a foule stayne of Iniustice, vppon the memory of this Chiefe Iustice *Glanuile*: In the time of whose Office, a tract of the Lawes, and Customes of the Kingdome of *England* was composed; which now passes vnder his name.

1177. Anno Reg.<sup>1</sup> 13.—The charge giuen for businesses in these Assises, consisted but of very few poynts besides those felonies, and was especially *for taking Homage, and Ligeancy of all the Subiects of England: Demolishing of Castles, the Rights of the King, his Crowne and Exchequer*. The multitude of actions which followed in succeeding times, grew out of new transgressions, and the increase of Law and Litigation, which was then but in the Cradle.

*William* king of *Sicile* matches with *Ioan* the kings daughter. —*William* King of *Sicile* sends and craues to haue *Ioan* the Kings Daughter in marriage. Whereupon the King calls a Parliament, and by the Vniuersal Councell of the Kingdome, granted his daughter to the King of *Sicile*; to whom she was shortly after sent, and there honourably indowed with many Cities, and castles, as may appeare by the Charter of that King. (*Rog. Houed.*)

But the great Match that was prouided for Earle *Iohn* became frustrate by the death of *Alice*, daughter to the Earle of *Mauriana*, and he is married to the daughter of *William*

Earle of *Glocester*, by whom he was to haue that Earledome. This *William* was sonne to *Robert*, brother to *Maude* the Empresse.

The same yeare also, hee marries *Elioner*, another of his Daughters to *Alphonso*, King of *Castile*, and takes vp the controuersie betweene him, and his Vncle *Sanctio* King of *Nauarre*, about the detention of certayne bordering peeces, of each others Kingdome, both the Kings hauing referred the businesse to his arbitration.

1178. *Anno Reg.* 24.—Likewise, the Marriage which should haue beene betweene his sonne *Richard*, and *Alice* Daughter to the French King, (committed heeretofore to his custody and gouernment) was agayne treated on, and vrged hard, by the Popes Legate to bee consummated vppon payne of interdiction. But yet it was put off for that time, and both Kings notwithstanding concluded a perpetuall League and amity to ayde each other against all men, and to bee enemies to each others enemies. Besides, they both Vowed an expedition, to the Holy Land in person, which they liued not to performe.

The King of *France* vppon a dangerous sicknesse of his sonne *Phillip*, vowes a Visitation of the Sepulcher of *Thomas* the Martyre of *Canterbury*: And vppon Lycence and safe Conduct of the King of *England*, performes the same with great Deuotion, and rich Presents. First, *Offering vppon his Tombe, a massie Cup of Gold*, and after, *gaue and confirmed by his Charter three thousand, sixe hundred Sextaries of Wine*<sup>1</sup> for the Monkes, annually to be receiued at *Poissi*, at the charge of the King of *France*; and beside, freed them from all Tolle and Custome, for whatsoever they should buy in his Kingdome.

1179. *Anno Reg.* 25.—After hauing stayed there three dayes, hee returnes towards *France*, Conducted by the King of *England* to *Douer*. The Sonne recouers health, but the Father lost his

<sup>1</sup> A Sextary is eight English quarts, and 36. Sextaries is a Modius of Wine.—*Bud.*

in this iourney; for comming to Saint *Denis*, hee was taken with a Palsie, and liued not long after. The weaknesse of his Age, and disease mooued him presently to haue his sonne *Phillip* (beeing but fifteene yeares of Age) to bee Crowned King in his life time, which was done at *Reimes*, Anno 1179.

1180. Anno Reg. 26.—*Henry* Duke of *Saxony* (who had married *Maude* daughter to King *Henry*) was expelled his Dutchy, and banished by the Emperour *Frederick* the third, for seauen yeares, for / detayning the reuenues, which the Arch-bishop of *Cologne* had out of *Saxonie*; and refusing to come vnto tryall at the Imperiall Chamber, according to his Faith, and promise made to the Emperour. So that hee was driuen to come (for succour with his Wife and Children) to his Father in Law, into *England*. Where hee remayned three yeares, and vpon the comming of the Arch-bishop of *Cologne* to visit the Sepulcher of *Thomas* of *Canterbury*, meanes was wrought to restore him to his Dutchy: and a motion is made of marriage for *Richard* the King's sonne, with the daughter of the Emperour *Fredericke* (notwithstanding the contract made with *Alice* daughter to the King of *France* long before) but the last intention was made frustrate, by the death of the Emperours Daughter.

King *Henry* sends his sonne *John* to reside in *Ireland*, to the end (that the Maiesty of a Court, and the number of the attendants which the same would draw thither) might both awe, and ciuilise that Countrey: But hee beeing accompanied with many Gallants, young as himselfe, who scorning, and deriding the Irish (in regard of their rude habits and fashions) wrought an ill effect. For it turned out three of their greatest Kings (*Limmerick*, *Conact*, and *Corke*) into open act of rebellion: *Gens enim hæc, sicut & natio quæuis barbara, quanquam honorem nesciant, honorati tamen, supra modum affectant*, sayth *Giraldus Cambrensis*.

The King sends after monies giuen to pious vses by Testators of the Clergy.—Now this fayre time of peace, which King

*Henry* enjoyed, gaue him leasure to seeke out all meanes to supply his Coffers, wherein hee was very Vigilant: And hearing of the great summes (which *Roger* Arch-bishop of *Yorke*, had giuen by his Testament to godly vses) sends Commissioners to finde out, and to seize the same to his owne vses, alledging, *That the Arch-bishop had giuen Iudgement in his life time, that it was against Law, any Ecclesiasticall person should dispose any thing by will (vnlesse before hee were sicke,)* and that himselfe had done contrary to his owne Decree. The Commissioners hauing found out, that *Hugh* Bishop of *Durham* had receiued of the Arch-bishop three hundred Markes of siluer to bee bestowed in those vses, demaund the same for the King. The Bishop replies, *That hauing receiued it from the hands of the Arch-bishop, hee had according to his will, distributed the same amongst the Leprous, Blinde, and Lame; in repayring Churchs, Bridges, and Hospitalls: So that who would haue it, must gather it vp againe of them.* Which answere so displeased the King, as (besides the seizing vpon the Castle of *Duresme*) he wrought this Bishop much vexation.

The Vacancy of *Lincolne* held 18. yeares to the Kings vse.—His meanes certayne (besides the Reuenue of his Demesne, and the benefit of the Forrests) were not then great in *England*; which caused him oftentimes in his necessities to bee bold with the Church, and to hold their Benefices Vacant; as hee did the Bishopricke of *Lincolne* eightene yeares. Hee made a new Coyne in *England*, which was round, decryed the Olde, and put all the Coyners to great ransome for corrupting the Olde money. And besides to saue his purse (in regard euery continuall charge of Horse, and Armour was heauy vnto him,) hee caused euery mans Lands and substance to bee rated for the Furnishing thereof. And first beganne the same, in his Dominions beyond the Seas: Ordayning, *That whosoever had a hundred pounds Aniuin money in goods, and chattle, should finde a Horse, and all Millitary furniture thereunto; and whosoever had in chattle forty, thirty, or twenty pounds*

*Anioun money, should finde a Corslet, Head-peece, Launce and Sword: or Bow and Arrowes, with a strict prohibition, That no man should sell or pawne his Armour, but bee bound to leaue it when he dyed, to his next heire. And this Order afterward, hee established in England, by consent of the State. The King of France, and the Earle of Flanders by his example did the like in their Countries. (1181. Anno Reg. 27.)*

Great and manifold were the expences of this mighty King, in respect of his entertaynments, pensions, and rewards, hauing so wide an Estate, and so many euer in his worke, both of his owne, and others who must alwayes be fed. And besides, oftentimes he is faine to bribe the Popes Legates, in his businesse with the King of *France*, to haue them fauourable for his ends: to send many supplies, by their perswasions, and for his owne reputation, to the Holy Warre. /

1182. Anno Reg. 28. *Henry 2.* relieued Pope *Lucius* and the *Ierosolomitans* with great summes of gold and siluer.— Anno 1182. (sayth *Walsingham*) he relieued the necessity of the *Ierosolomitans*, with two and forty thousand Markes of siluer, and fiue hundred Markes of gold, which was in money, seauen and forty thousand, three hundred, thirty three pounds, sixe shilling eight pence. And when Pope *Lucius* distressed by the *Romans*, desired an ayde out of *England*, the King sent him a mighty summe of Gold and Siluer; in leauing whereof, the Clergie heere delt very circumspectly; for when the Popes *Nuncij* came to desire the same, they aduised the King, that according to his will, and honour, hee himselfe should supply the Popes occasion, as well for himselfe, as them: for that it was more tollerable, that their Lord and King, should receiue from them, the returne of that ayde, then that the Popes *Nuncij* should; which might bee taken for a custome to the detriment of the Kingdome.

Now (about eight yeares) had the peace continued betweene the two Kings, Father and the Sonne, when againe new flames of vnnaturall discord began to breake out; the occasion

whereof as farre as can be discovered (in the vncertaine passages of that time) wee finde to bee this.

1183: *Anno Reg.* 29. Great festiuals often-times break vp with great discontentments.—After a great Christmas kept at *Cane* in *Normandy*, with his Sonnes *Henry*, *Richard* and *Geffery*, the Duke of *Saxony* with his Wife and Children, besides a great Nobility of all parts: The King willed King *Henry* his sonne, to take the Homages of his brother *Richard* Earle of *Poictou*, and *Geffery* Earle of *Brittaine*. *Richard* refuses to doe it (but vppon perswasion) beeing afterwards content; his brother refuses to take the same. Whereuppon with great indignation *Richard* departs from his Fathers Court in *Poictou*; Mans and furnishes his Castles there. The King his brother followes by instigation of the Barons of *Poictou* and *Aquitaine*, who were false from *Richard*, and adhered to the young King (as men that vnderstood what would become of younger brothers estates in such Dominions, where the elder brothers birthright, and power, would carry all) and *Geffery* Earle of *Brittaine* takes the King his brothers part, comes with forces to ayde him.

*Henry* and his sonnes accorded.—*Richard* sends for succour to his Father, who with a powerfull Army (rather to constrayne them to a peace, then to make Warre) came downe into *Poictou*, where againe his three Sonnes after the debatement of their grieuances swore to obey, and serue their Father, and to hold perpetuall peace among themselues. And for the farther ratification of this Concord, they meete at *Mirabel*, where *Henry* the Sonne, desires, that the Barons of *Poictou* and *Aquitaine* (whom hee had sworne to defend against his brother *Richard*) might bee there at the concluding this peace, and to bee pardoned for any former act committed. Which request is granted, and *Geffery* Earle of *Brittaine* sent to bring the Barons thither. But the Barons (holding this peace, either not safe, or not profitable) so worke, as they win the messenger to take their part against the Father, and keepe him with them.

*Henry* the sonne notwithstanding, continues to mediate still for the Barons, and to get his Father, and brother *Richard* to receiue them into grace. And vndertaking to bring in both them, and his brother *Geffery*, is permitted by the Father to goe treat with them at *Limoges*; whether also, by another way, and with small Company, it was agreed the Father should come, which he did; but his approach was met with arrowes, so dangerously shot at his person, as the next man to him was slayne, and himselfe with his sonne *Richard* forced to retire from the place. And yet afterwards, desirous out of a Fatherly affection to haue conference with his sonnes for the quiet ending of this businesse, (vpon their assurance of his safety) hee enters into the City: When againe from the Castle is shot a barbed arrow, which had tooke him directly on the breast, had not his Horse by the suddaine lifting vp his head, receiued it in the fore-head. Which act his sonnes neuer sought to finde out and punish, but still vnder-hand held amity with the Barons. At length, notwithstanding King *Henry* the sonne comes to the Father, and protests, that vnlesse the Barons would come and yelde themselues at the Kings feete, hee would vtterly renounce them: And after, hauing againe (vppon his Fathers promise of pardon and peace) dealt with them: and finding as hee auowed their obstinacy, made shew to forsake their party, and returnes to his Father with great submission, deliuering / vp vnto him his Horse and Armour in assurance thereof.

The inconstancy of king *Henry* the sonne. His vowe.— But many dayes hee spent not with him, when againe (eyther for the intended reuenge hee found his Father meant to prosecute against the Barons) whose protection hauing vnder-taken, hee held himselfe in this honour, engaged to preserue: or by the working of some mutinous Ministers about him, whose element was not peace: he againe enters Oath and League with them. But therein finding his power short of his will, and desperate of all successe in his courses; hee

suddainly breakes out into an extreame passion before his Father, falls prostrate at the Shrine of Saint *Martial*, and vowes presently to take vpon him the Crosse, and to give ouer all worldly businesse beside.

His resolution.—With which strange and suddaine passion, the Father much mooued, besought his son with teares to alter that rash resolution, and to tell him truly, whether indignation or religion induced him thereunto. The sonne protests, that it was meerely for the remission of his sinnes, committed against his person. And vnlesse his Father would now giue him leaue (without which hee could not goe) he would there instantly kill himselfe in his presence. The Father (after hauing vsed all meanes to dissuade him, and finding him still obstinate) sayd vnto him, *Sonne, Gods will be done, and yours, for your furnishing, I will take such order as shall befit your Estate.*

His request for the Barons of *Aquitaine*. His Death.—The sonne (whilst the Fathers passion had made him tender) wrought thereuppon, and besought him, that he would deale mercifully with those of the Castles of *Limoges*, the Barons of *Aquitaine*, and pardon them. To which, the Father in the end (though vnwillingly) yeelds, so that they would put in their pledges for securing their fidelity, and the peace; which they seemed content to doe. But vpon the deliuary, and receiuing of these pledges, new ryots were committed, by such as could not endure the peace (which is neuer faithfull, but where men are voluntary pacified): and these young Princes againe take part with their Confederates, and are made the heads of rebellion, committing rapine, and sacriledge to supply their necessities, and feede their followers. And in the end, the young King hauing much struggled in vaine, through griefe and vexation of spirit (which caused the distemperature of body) fell into a burning feuer with the fluxe, whereof, within few dayes hee dyed. A Prince of excellent parts, who was first cast away by his Fathers indulgence, and after by his

rigor; not suffering him to be what himselfe had made him, neither got hee so much by his Coronation, as to haue a name in the Catalogue of the Kings of England.

The sorrow of the Father (although it be sayd to bee great) hindred not his reuenge vpon the Barons of *Aquitaine*; whom he now most eagerly persecuted, seized on their Castles, and raced to the ground that of *Lymoges*.

Earle *Gefferies* submission and death.—*Geffery* vpon his submission, is receiued into grace, and the yeare after dyed at *Paris*: hauing (in a conflict) beene troden vnder horses feete, and miserably crushed: so that halfe the male issue wherein this King was vnfortunate, hee saw extinct before him, and that by deaths as violent, as were their dispositions. The other two, who suruiued him, were no lesse miserable in their ends.

1184. *Anno Reg. 30.* Henry the second doth homage to *Philip* king of *France*. The Earle of *Flanders* compels the King of *France* to compound.—Now the young King of *France*, *Phillip* the second (in whose fate it was, to do more then euer his Father could effect, vpon the death of *Henry* the sonne) requires the deliuey of the Country of *Vexlin*, which was giuen in dowre with his Sister *Margaret*; but the King of *England*, (not apt to let goe any thing of what hee had in possession) was content to pay yearly to the Queene Dowager, 17050. pounds *Anioun*. And the more to hold faire with this young King, whose spirit, hee saw, grew great, and actiue, and with whom hee was like to haue much to doe, did homage vnto him, for all hee held in *France*, which hee neuer did to the Father, beeing the first descent of Maiesty, he euer made to any secular power. And beside, tooke his part against *Phillip* Earle of *Flanders*, who opposed against him, and was in those dayes a Prince of mighty power, and had euer stood fast vnto King *Lewis* the Father. But now *Phillip* the sonne otherwise led, or affectioned, quarrels with him, and demaunds the Country of *Vermemdois*, as appertayning to the Crowne of

*France*: and withall, vppon allegation of consanguinity, repudiates his wife, Neece to this Earle of *Flanders*, giuen vnto him by his Fathers choyce / a little before his death. The Earle followed by *Odo* Earle of *Burgogne*, the Earles of *Champaigne*, *Hainalt*, *Namur*, *Saint Pol*, and others, warres vpon the King of *France*, and commits great spoyles within his territories; so that hee was faine in the ende to compound with him to his disadvantage. After this, the Kings of *England*, and *France*, meete betweene *Gisors* and *Try*; where the King of *England* sweares to deliuer *Alice*, vnto *Richard* his sonne. And the King of *France* her brother grants her in Dowery, the Countrey of *Vexlin*, which *Margaret* his other Sister had before.

1185, *Anno Reg. 31*. The Kings of *England* and *France* accorded, and prepare for the Holy VVarre.—But these tyes held them not long together, for the young King of *France* so wrought with *Richard*, as hee drew him from his Fathers obedience, and they liued together in that amity, as one bed and boord is sayd to haue serued them, both which so eniealoused the old King, as hee called home his sonne, and before his Bishops and Nobility, caused him to sweare vppon the Euangelists, to obserue fealty vnto him, against all persons whatsoever; which hauing done, and ready to passe ouer into *England*, he is informed of the great preparation made by the King of *France*, who gaue out, that hee would spoyle and ransacke both *Normandy*, and the rest of the King of *Englands* territories in *France*; vnlesse hee would presently deliuer vp his sister *Alice* vnto *Richard*, or render *Gisors*, and the Countrey of *Vexlin* into his hands. VWhereuppon the King returnes backe, and comes againe to a parle betweene *Gisors* and *Try*. Where, the Arch-bishop of *Try* (sent from the East to call vp ayde for the Holy VVarre) did with that power of perswasion so vrge his message, as it let out all the humour of priuate rancor and contention, betweene these two great Kings, altered their whole Counsells, their pretensions, their designes: turned them wholly to vndertake in person this labourious action, and

resolute to leaue their Kingdomes, their pleasures, and all the things of glory they had at home, to prosecute the same, through all the distemperatures of climes, and difficulties of passages, whereunto that voyage was obnoxious: so that now, no other thing was thought or talked on, but onely preparations, and furnishments for this businesse.

And to distinguish their people, and followers (who all stroue which should bee most forward) it was ordered that they who followed the King of *England*, should weare a white Crosse; *France* a red; and *Flaunders* a Greene. And for a further ingagement in the businesse, the King of *England* writes to the Patriarch of *Antioch*, a most comfortable and pious Letter: in the end whereof he hath these words, *Amongst other Princes, I and my Sonne, reiecting the glory of this World, and despising all the pleasures thereof, in proper person, will, God willing visite you shortly.*

Then to rayse money to defray this great enterprize, it was ordayned by the two Kings their Arch-bishops, Bishops, Earles, and other in *France*, that all whosoeuer, as well Clerke as Lay (sauing such as went the Voyage) should pay the tenth of all their reuenues of that yeare, and the tenth of all their Moouables and Chattels; as well in gold as siluer. And many excellent orders were made for restraynt of licentiousnesse both in apparrell, and manners, as was fitting for the vnder-takers of so ciuill and deuout an action.

1186. *Anno Reg. 33.*—Prouision by King *Henry* in *England*. The King of *England* hauing layde this imposition vppon all his Dominions in *France*, comes ouer, calls a Councell of his Bishops, Abbots, Earles, Barrons, both of the Clergy, and Laiety at *Gaynington*, and by their consents imposes the same taxation vppon his Subiects of *England*. *Sub Eleemosinæ titulo vitium rapacitatis includens*, sayth *Walsingham*, and presently sends forth his Officers into euery Shiere, to Collect the same according as it was done in *France*. But of euery City in *England*, he caused a choyce to be made of the richest men:

as in *London* of two hundred, in *Yorke* a hundred, and so according to the proportion of the rest; and caused all these, at a certayne time and place to appeare before him; of whom hee tooke the tenth of all their Moooueables, by the estimation of credible men which knew their estates: such as refused hee imprisoned till they had payde it, of which example and exaction, wee must onely hold Piety guilty: otherwise those times had not yeilded it.

The King sends likewise *Hugh* Bishop of *Duresme*, with other Commissioners, to *William* / King of *Scots* to collect the tenthes in his Countrey, which hee would not permit, but offered to giue the King of *England* five thousand Markes of siluer for those tenthes, and the Castle which hee claymed but the King of *England* refused the same.

1187. *Anno Reg.* 33. A meane quarrell dashes and diuerts the great preparation for the Holy War, and layes it vppon the selfe kingdomes.—Whilst these preparations were in hand, and the money collecting, a quarrell arises betweene *Richard* Earle of *Poictou*, and *Raymond* Earle of *Tholouse*, vpon this occasion. The Earle of *Tholouse* by the perswasion of one *Peter Suillar*, had taken certaine Merchants of *Aquitaine*, and vsed them hardly. The Earle of *Poictou* surprizes this *Peter*, imprisons him, and would not suffer the Earle of *Tholouse* to redeeme him, vpon any condition. Whereupon the Earle imprisons two Gentlemen seruants of the King of *England*, *Robert* and *Ralph Poer*, traueilling through his Countrey (as Pilgrimes) from *Saint Iames de Compostella*; which Earle *Richard* tooke so ill, as he enters into the Earles Countrey with an Army (prepared for a better act), wastes it with fire and sword, besieges and takes his Castles about *Tholouse*. The King of *France* (vpon the lamentable complaynt of the *Tholousans*) sends to the King of *England* to vnderstand, whether his sonne *Richard* did these things by his will and Counsell. The King of *England* answeres, *That he neither willed nor Counsellled him thereunto, and that his son sent him.*

word, (by the Archbishop of Dublin) that he did nothing, but by the consent of the King of France. Who (not satisfied with this answer) enters presently into *Bery* with his Army, seizes vpon the Countrey; takes in diuers Castles of the King of *Englands*, who makes himselfe ready to recouer the same. And thus that great intended enterprise, vndertaken with such feruor, became dasht and ouerthrowne, at the very time, they appoynted to haue set forward.

1188. *Anno Reg.* 34. The King of *France* cuts downe the most eminent elme of Princely parley.—All the meanes the Pope could vse by his Legates, nor all the perswasions of other Princes might preuaile, to reconcile these two ingaged Kings: though diuerse interviewes were procured, diuerse ouertures propounded, yet none tooke effect; they euer depart more incensed then they met: in so much as at length, the King of *France*, in a rage, cut downe the great Elme (betweene *Gisors* and *Try*) vnder which, the Kings of *France*, and Dukes of *Normandy* were euer vsed to parle, and swore, *There should be no more meetings in that place*. But yet after this, they were brought to another parle elsewhere, and therein the Popes Legat threatned to interdict the King of *France*, vnlesse hee made peace with the King of *England*. The King of *France* told him, that he feared not his sentence, beeing grounded vpon no equity, and that it appertained not to the Church of *Rome*, by sentence, or otherwise, to chastise the Kingdome, or King of *France*, vndertaking to reuenge the demerits of the rebellious, that dishonoured his Crowne; and flatly told the Cardinall, *That he smelled of the Sterlings of England*.

Earle *Richard* (with the King of *France*) combine against his father King *Henry* 2.—This interview, wrought a worse effect then all the rest: for heere the King of *England* (absolutely) refuses to render *Alice* to his sonne *Richard*, but offered to the King of *France*, to giue her to his sonne *Iohn*, with larger conditions, then should be granted with the other: which so much alienated the heart of his sonne *Richard*, as he becomes

wholly Liege-man to the King of *France*, did homage vnto him for *Aquitaine*, and they both ioyned their forces against the Father.

And here now comes this mightie King of *England* (the greatest of all the Christian World in his time, or that the kingdome euer saw, to fall quite a sunder; forsaken both of his subiects, and himselfe letting downe his heart, to yeeld to any conditions whatsoever: he who neuer saw feare (but in the backe of his enemies) leaues now the defence of *Mans*, and flies away with seauen hundred men (hauing promised the City, neuer to giue it ouer, in regard his Father was there buried, and himselfe borne :) and afterward comes to this last parle, with the King of *France*, betweene *Turwin* and *Arras*: where at their first meeting (no man suspecting the wrath) a thunder-bolt, with so terrible a cracke lighted iust betweene them, as it parted their conference in a confused manner for that time.

1189. *Anno Reg.* 35.—Within a while after, they came together againe, when suddainly began as fearefull a thunder as the former, which so amazed the King of *England* (as he had falne off from his Horse) had he not beene supported by those about him. And in this sort, beganne the Proem of that Treaty, wherein, the King of *England* yeelds to whatsoever conditions, the King of *France* required, did him homage againe for all his dominions on that side (both Kings hauing at the beginning of this Warre, renounced their mutuall obligation in that kinde,) renders vp *Alice* for whom hee had beene so much loden with scandall and turmoyle, vpon condition, she should be giuen in marriage to his sonne *Richard* at his returne from the Holy Warre; and in the meane time to remayne in the custody of any one of five whom *Richard* should nominate: grants that fealty bee giuen vnto him of all his Dominions, and pardons all his partakers. Besides, couenants to pay the King of *France* 20000. markes of siluer for dammage done during these last Wars. And that if he should not performe these Articles, his Barons should sweare to

*renounce him, and betake them to the part of the King of France, and Earle Richard. And for more caution, he yeeldes to deliuer vp the Cities of Mans and Tureyn, with diuers Castles into their hands, &c.*

His Death.—And here was an end of this businesse ; and within three dayes after, of this Kings life : whose heart, not made of that temper to bow, burst with the weight of a declining fortune. Some few houres before he dyed, hee saw a list of their names who conspired with the King of *France*, and Earle *Richard* against him ; and finding therein his Sonne *John* to be the first, fals into a grieuous passion, both cursing his sonnes, and the day wherein himselfe was borne ; and in that distemperature departs the World, which so often himselfe had distempered ; hauing reigned thirty foure yeares, seauen moneths, and fve dayes.

1189. *Anno Reg. 35.*—His Sonne *Richard* approaching the Corpes, as it was carrying to bee interred (adorned according to the vsuall manner of Kings, with all royall Ornaments open faced,) the blood gushed out of the nostrills of the Dead (a signe, vsuall noted, of guiltinesse) as if Nature yet after Death, retayned some intelligence in the veines, to giue notice of wrong, and checke the malice of an vnnaturall Offender : at which sight, *Richard* surprized with horror, is sayd to haue burst out into extreame lamentations.

His Issue.—He had issue by his Wife *Elioner*, foure sonnes, *Henry*, *Richard*, *Geffery*, and *John* : besides two other, *William* the eldest, and *Phillip* the youngest but one, dyed young. Also three Daughters ; *Maude* married to *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* : *Elioner* the Wife of *Alfonso* the eighth of that name, King of *Castile* : *Ioan* giuen in marriage vnto *William* King of *Sicile*. Hee had also two naturall sonnes, by *Rosamond* daughter of *Walter* Lord *Clifford*, *William*, surnamed *Longespee*, in *English* *Long-sword*, and *Geffery* Arch-bishop of *Yorke*, who after fve yeares banishment in his brother King *Johns* time dyed, *Anno 1213.*—*Vide Io. Speed,*

The first sonne *William* surnamed *Longespee*, Earle of *Salisbury* (in right of *Ela* his Wife: daughter and heire of *William* Earle of that County, sonne of Earle *Patricke*) had issue *William* Earle of *Salisbury*, and *Stephen* Earle of *Vlster*: *Ela* Countesse of *Warwicke*: *Ida* Lady *Beauchampe* of *Bedford*, and *Isabell* Lady *Vescy*. His Sonne, Earle *William* the second, had Earle *William* the third, Father of *Margaret*, Wife of *Henry* Lacy Earle of *Lincolne*.

It is sayd, King *Henry* had also a third naturall sonne called *Morgan* (by the Wife of one *Rodulph Bloeth* or *Blewet* a Knight; he liued to be *Prouost* of *Beuerley*, and to be elected to the Bishopricke of *Duresme*; and comming to *Rome* for a dispensation (because his Bastardy made him otherwise vncapeable) the Pope willed him to professe him selfe *Blewets* lawfull sonne, and not the Kings Naturall, promising to Consecrate him on that condition; but he (vsing the aduice of one *William Lane* his Clerke) told the Pope that for no worldly promotion he would renounce his Father, or deny himselfe to be of Blood Royall.

*The end of the Life, and Reigne, of Henry the second. |*

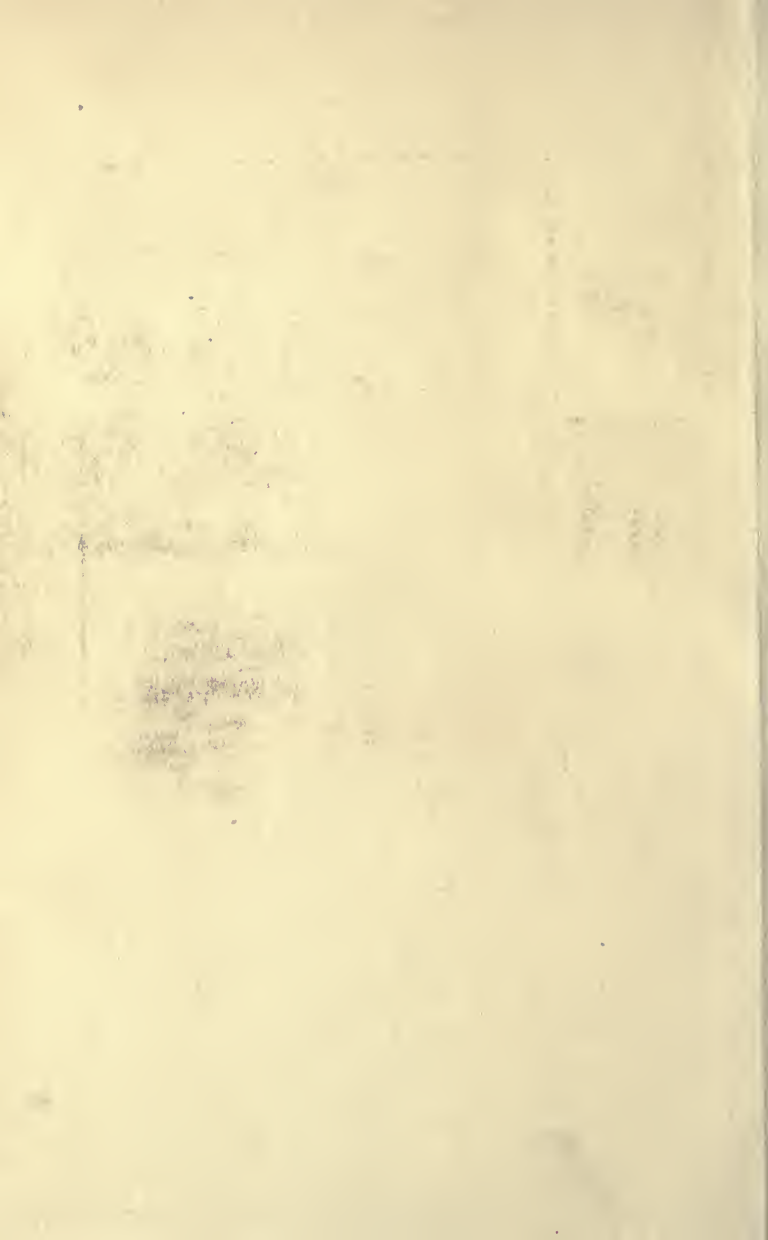
END OF VOL. IV,











PR  
2241  
A12  
v.4

Daniel, Samuel  
Complete works in verse  
and prose

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

EDINVALE COLLEGE LIBRARY

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

